



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### **Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### **About Google Book Search**

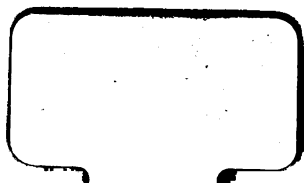
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



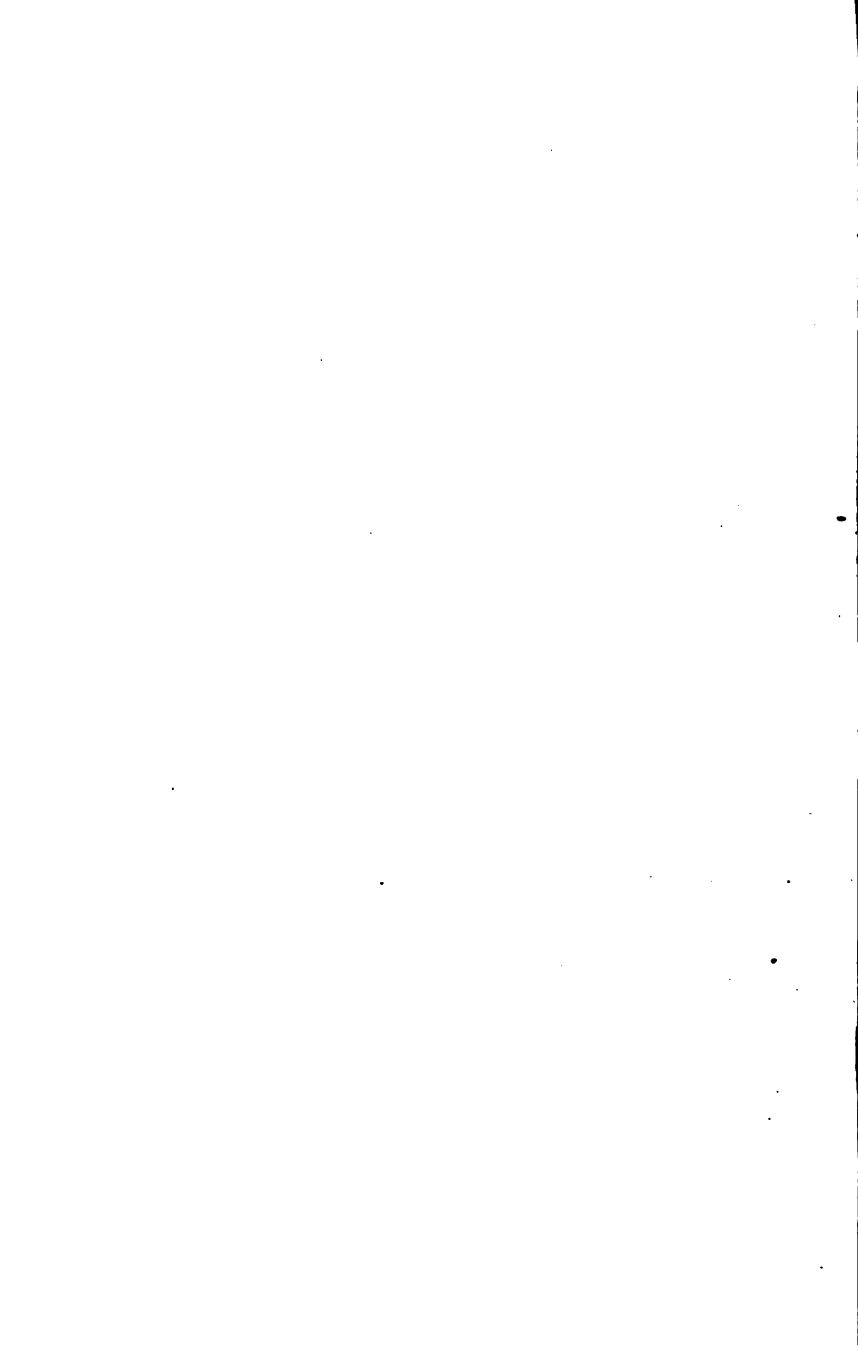


600062650P

305. c. 76.







**PRINCIPIA LATINA.—Part I.**

---

**A**

# **FIRST LATIN COURSE.**

**COMPREHENDING**

**GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, AND EXERCISE-BOOK,  
WITH VOCABULARIES.**

**For the Use of the Lower Forms in Public and Private Schools.**

**By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.,**

**EDITOR OF THE CLASSICAL AND LATIN DICTIONARIES.**

**EIGHTEENTH EDITION, THOROUGHLY REVISED,**

**WITH THE CASES ARRANGED BOTH AS IN THE ORDINARY GRAMMARS  
AND AS IN THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.**



**LONDON:**

**JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.**

**1875.**

*305. c. 76.*

## NOTICE TO THE EIGHTEENTH EDITION.

---

To meet the requirements of all Schools, the Cases of the Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, are arranged in this Edition both as in the ordinary Grammars and as in the Public School Latin Primer, together with the corresponding Exercises. The first thirty-six pages at the beginning of the book are therefore repeated, the only difference between them being the arrangement of the Cases. In this way the work can be used with equal advantage by those who prefer either the old or the modern arrangement.

The 'Smaller Latin Grammar' retains the ordinary arrangement of the Cases.

W. S.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE following work is the first of a short series which I have undertaken with the view of facilitating the study of the Latin language. It is the result of many years' practical teaching, and seeks to combine the advantages of the older and more modern methods of instruction. While boys are sometimes compelled to commit to memory all the grammatical forms and syntactical rules without having their knowledge tested by any practical application in the construction of sentences, so that they frequently forget the former part of the Grammar by the time they have finished the latter, they are in other cases burdened by a large number of explanations and cautions, and by complicated rules for the formation of cases and other inflectional forms. The latter error is almost as grave as the former in the case of young boys, as they are thus taught analytically what ought to be first learned synthetically.

The main object of this work is to enable a beginner to fix the Declensions and Conjugations thoroughly in his memory, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of useful words. It is divided into two parts:—

I. The first part contains the Grammatical forms, with exercises upon all the inflections, in which the simple rules of syntax are introduced, as they are required for the formation of sentences.

•

II. The second part contains an explanation of some of the more important idioms of the language, such as the construction of the Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood, of the Ablative Absolute, of the Gerund and Gerundive, &c., exemplified by Exercises upon each construction. The Vocabularies to both parts are printed at the end of the second, and Alphabetical Indices of the Latin and English words in the Vocabularies are appended to them.

The work thus contains Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise-book, with Vocabularies, and consequently presents in one book all that the pupil will require for some time in his study of the language. It is confidently believed, that a boy who has gone carefully through the work will have acquired a sound knowledge of the chief grammatical forms, and of the most important syntactical rules, and will thus be prepared to enter upon the systematic study of a larger Grammar with advantage and profit.

The last edition was thoroughly revised, and various improvements were introduced. The rules for the Pronunciation of Latin were drawn up by the Rev. Dr. Abbott, Head Master of the City of London School. In the revision I was indebted for much valuable assistance to Mr. T. D. Hall, the joint-author with me of the 'Student's Latin Grammar,' and of the 'English-Latin Dictionary.'

W. S.

# CONTENTS.

## PART I.

### GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

#### NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, NUMERALS, AND PRONOUNS.

|                                                                                                    | PAGE |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| The Cases as arranged in the ordinary Grammars, with the corresponding Exercises .. .. .           | 1-36 |
| The Cases as arranged in the Public School Latin Grammar, with the corresponding Exercises .. .. . | 1-36 |
| I. THE ALPHABET—PARTS OF SPEECH .. .. .                                                            | 1    |
| II. PRONUNCIATION .. .. .                                                                          | 2    |
| III. SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS .. .. .                                                                 | 3    |
| IV. THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION .. .. .                                                              | 3    |
| V. THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION .. .. .                                                              | 5    |
| VI. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS .. .. .                                         | 7    |
| VII. THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION .. .. .                                               | 11   |
| VIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION .. .. .                                                   | 18   |
| IX. THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION .. .. .                                                             | 20   |
| X. THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION .. .. .                                                               | 21   |
| XI. SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS .. .. .                                                                   | 22   |
| XII. SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES .. .. .                                                             | 23   |
| XIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .                                                             | 24   |
| XIV. THE NUMERALS .. .. .                                                                          | 26   |
| XV. THE VERB SUM .. .. .                                                                           | 29   |
| XVI. COMPOUNDS OF SUM .. .. .                                                                      | 31   |
| XVII. THE PRONOUNS .. .. .                                                                         | 32   |

#### VERBS.

|                                                     |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----|
| XVIII. THE VERB .. .. .                             | 37 |
| XIX. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE .. .. .    | 38 |
| XX. SECOND OR E .. .. .                             | 40 |
| XXI. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U .. .. .               | 42 |
| XXII. FOURTH OR I .. .. .                           | 44 |
| EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE .. .. .               | 46 |
| XXIII. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE .. .. . | 54 |
| XXIV. SECOND OR E .. .. .                           | 56 |
| XXV. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U .. .. .               | 58 |

|                                                     | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------|
| XXVI. FOURTH OR I .. .. .                           | 60   |
| EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE .. .. .              | 62   |
| XXVII. THIRD CONJUGATION (WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES) | 66   |
| XXVIII. DEPONENT VERBS .. .. .                      | 68   |
| XXIX. PREPOSITIONS .. .. .                          | 72   |
| XXX. ADVERBS .. .. .                                | 74   |
| XXXI. IRREGULAR VERBS :                             |      |
| 1. POSSUM .. .. .                                   | 76   |
| 2. VOLO .. .. .                                     | 77   |
| 3. NOLO .. .. .                                     | 77   |
| 4. MALO .. .. .                                     | 77   |
| 5. FERRO .. .. .                                    | 80   |
| 6. EO .. .. .                                       | 82   |
| 7. FIO .. .. .                                      | 84   |
| 8. NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS .. .. .                     | 85   |
| XXXII. IMPERSONAL VERBS .. .. .                     | 86   |

## PART II.

### SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

|                                                                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| XXXIII. THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE COMPARATIVE .. ..                                               | 88  |
| XXXIV. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE .. .. .                                                               | 89  |
| XXXV. THE ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING DURATION OR EX-<br>TENT OF TIME, DISTANCE, AND DIMENSION .. .. | 90  |
| XXXVI. CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS .. ..                                                | 91  |
| XXXVII. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE MOOD ..                                             | 92  |
| XXXVIII. DIRECT QUESTIONS .. .. .                                                              | 94  |
| XXXIX. INDIRECT QUESTIONS .. .. .                                                              | 95  |
| XL. ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD                                               | 97  |
| XLI. USE OF THE SUPINES .. .. .                                                                | 100 |
| XLII. USE OF THE GERUND .. .. .                                                                | 100 |
| XLIII. USE OF THE GERUNDIVE .. .. .                                                            | 101 |
| A SHORT SYNTAX .. .. .                                                                         | 104 |
| Appendix—A. GREEK NOUNS .. .. .                                                                | 109 |
| B. THE GENDERS OF NOUNS .. .. .                                                                | 110 |
| C. PERFECTS AND SUPINES .. .. .                                                                | 112 |
| D. DEFECTIVE VERBS .. .. .                                                                     | 123 |
| Vocabularies .. .. .                                                                           | 125 |
| INDEX I.—LATIN WORDS .. .. .                                                                   | 144 |
| INDEX II.—ENGLISH WORDS .. .. .                                                                | 156 |

THE CASES  
OF  
NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS,  
ARRANGED AS IN  
THE ORDINARY GRAMMARS.

---

I.—THE ALPHABET. PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. *Alphabet*.—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,  
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,

Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.  
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

The Diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use, and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

The diphthongs *ae, oe*, are pronounced as *ä*.

A Long Syllable has the mark (ˉ) over the vowel. A Short Syllable has the mark (˘) over the vowel.

2. *Parts of Speech*.—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language.

- |                             |             |                  |
|-----------------------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, or<br>Noun. | 3. Pronoun. | 6. Preposition.  |
| 2. Adjective.               | 4. Verb.    | 7. Conjunction.  |
|                             | 5. Adverb.  | 8. Interjection. |

There is no article in the Latin language: hence the Latin *mensā* means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.

## II.—PRONUNCIATION.

The letters in Latin were probably pronounced as follows:—

## VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

|       |           |   |         |                                                                                                             |
|-------|-----------|---|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Latin | <i>ā</i>  | = | English | <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> .                                                                                 |
| „     | <i>ǣ</i>  | = | „       | <i>first a</i> in <i>away</i> , or <i>a</i> in <i>villa</i> .                                               |
| „     | <i>ē</i>  | = | „       | <i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .                                                                                  |
| „     | <i>æ</i>  | = | „       | <i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .                                                                                  |
| „     | <i>œ</i>  | = | „       | <i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .                                                                                  |
| „     | <i>ě</i>  | = | „       | <i>e</i> in <i>men</i> .                                                                                    |
| „     | <i>ī</i>  | = | „       | <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .                                                                                |
| „     | <i>î</i>  | = | „       | <i>i</i> in <i>pity</i> .                                                                                   |
| „     | <i>ō</i>  | = | „       | <i>o</i> in <i>glory</i> .                                                                                  |
| „     | <i>ö</i>  | = | „       | <i>o</i> in <i>top</i> .                                                                                    |
| „     | <i>ū</i>  | = | „       | <i>u</i> in <i>rule</i> .                                                                                   |
| „     | <i>ü</i>  | = | „       | <i>u</i> in <i>full</i> .                                                                                   |
| „     | <i>au</i> | = | „       | <i>ow</i> in <i>power</i> .                                                                                 |
| „     | <i>eu</i> | = | „       | { Latin <i>ē</i> followed quickly by<br>Latin <i>ü</i> (differs little from<br>present pronunciation).      |
| „     | <i>ei</i> | = | „       | { Latin <i>ē</i> followed quickly by<br>Latin <i>i</i> (differs little from <i>ai</i><br>in <i>plain</i> ). |

## CONSONANTS.

|       |                           |   |         |                                                                     |
|-------|---------------------------|---|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Latin | <i>c, ch</i>              | = | English | <i>k</i> .                                                          |
| „     | <i>g</i>                  | = | „       | <i>g</i> in <i>get</i> .                                            |
| „     | <i>s</i>                  | = | „       | <i>s</i> in <i>sin</i> .                                            |
| „     | <i>t</i> ( <i>ratio</i> ) | = | {       | „ <i>t</i> in <i>cat</i> , not <i>sh</i> , as<br>in <i>nation</i> . |
| „     | <i>j</i>                  | = | „       | <i>y</i> in <i>yard</i> .                                           |
| „     | <i>v</i>                  | = | „       | <i>v</i> .                                                          |
| „     | <i>z, ph, th</i>          | = | „       | <i>z, ph, th</i> .                                                  |

Latin *s* between two vowels = (sometimes) English *s* in *rose*, *e.g.* 'rosa.'

## III.—SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

Nouns are declined by *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers : *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases : *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative*.

There are three Genders : *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*.

There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

|            | I.    | II.   | III.          | IV.  | V.    |
|------------|-------|-------|---------------|------|-------|
| Gen. Sing. | ae    | I     | Is            | ūs   | Ńi    |
| Gen. Plur. | Ā-rum | Ō-rum | {-um<br>I-um} | Ū-um | Ē-rum |

The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away.

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in—

| I. | II. | III.           | IV. | V. |
|----|-----|----------------|-----|----|
| A  | O   | consonant or I | U   | E  |

## IV.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the First Declension ends in *ā*.

|      | Sing.                              | Plur.                              |
|------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Nom. | Mens-ā (fem.) a table              | Mens-ae, tables                    |
| Gen. | Mens-ae, of a table                | Mens-Ārum, of tables               |
| Dat. | Mens-ae, to or for a table         | Mens-is, to or for tables          |
| Acc. | Mens-am, a table                   | Mens-ās, tables                    |
| Voc. | Mens-ā, O table                    | Mens-ae, O tables                  |
| Abl. | Mens-ā, by, with, or from a table. | Mens-is, by, with, or from tables. |

NOTE.—*Filā, a daughter; dēā, a goddess; ēquā, a mare; āsīnā, a she-ass*; and a few others, make the Dative and Ablative Plural in *ābūs*: *filābūs, dēābūs, ēquābūs, āsīnābūs*, etc.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: *as, nautā, a sailor*.

The Vocabularies begin on p. 125.

**RULE 1.**—The Nominative Case denotes the **SUBJECT**. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person : as, *puellā currīt, the girl runs* ; *puellae currunt, the girls run*.

**RULE 2.**—The Accusative Case denotes the **OBJECT**. Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case : as, *āquilā alās hābēt, the eagle has wings*. **NOTE.**—In Latin the verb is put last and the Accusative case before it.

Singular, 3 pers.

**Currīt,** (*he, she, it*) runs.

**Hābēt,** (*he, she, it*) has.

Plural, 3 pers.

**Currunt,** (*they*) run.

**Hābent,** (*they*) have.

### EXERCISE I.

1. *Filia currit.* 2. *Filiae currunt.* 3. *Regina coronam habet.*  
4. *Puella coronam habet.* 5. *Filia pecuniam habet.* 6. *Femina pecuniam habet.* 7. *Roma portas habet.* 8. *Coloniae portas habent.*  
9. *Puellae rosas habent.* 10. *Feminae rosas habent.* 11. *Columbae alas habent.* 12. *Insulae oras habent.*

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

**RULE 3.**—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb “To be,” they are put in the same case : as, *Britanniā est insulā, Britain is an island*. Use the Nominative case after the verb “To be.”

**RULE 4.**—The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive case when the one is dependent upon the other : as, *Britanniā est insulā Eurōpae, Britain is an island of Europe*.

**Est,** (*he*) is.

**Sunt,** (*they*) are.

### EXERCISE II.

1. *Sicilia est insula.* 2. *Sicilia est insula Europae.* 3. *Roma est regina Italiae.* 4. *Incolae Italiae sunt poetae.* 5. *Incolae insularum sunt nautae.* 6. *Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae.* 7. *Insula est patria nautarum.* 8. *Graecia est patria poetarum.* 9. *Amicitia est gloria vitae.* 10. *Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.*

1. Britain is the queen of islands. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. Britain is the native-land of glory. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

## V.—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension ends in ūs and ĕr, and of Neuter Nouns in um.

## A. Masculine.

| Sing. |                                        | 1.            | Plur.                      |
|-------|----------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| Nom.  | Dōmīn-ūs, a lord                       | Dōmīn-I,      | lords                      |
| Gen.  | Dōmīn-I, of a lord                     | Dōmīn-ōrum,   | of lords                   |
| Dat.  | Dōmīn-ō, to or for a lord              | Dōmīn-īs,     | to or for lords            |
| Acc.  | Dōmīn-um, a lord                       | Dōmīn-ōs,     | lords                      |
| Voc.  | Dōmīn-ē, O lord                        | Dōmīn-I,      | O lords                    |
| Abl.  | Dōmīn-ō, by, with, or from a lord.     | Dōmīn-īs,     | by, with, or from lords.   |
| 2.    |                                        |               |                            |
| Nom.  | Māgistr-ē, a master                    | Māgistr-I,    | masters                    |
| Gen.  | Māgistr-I, of a master                 | Māgistr-ōrum, | of masters                 |
| Dat.  | Māgistr-ō, to or for a master          | Māgistr-īs,   | to or for masters          |
| Acc.  | Māgistr-um, a master                   | Māgistr-ōs,   | masters                    |
| Voc.  | Māgistr-ē, O master                    | Māgistr-I,    | O masters                  |
| Abl.  | Māgistr-ō, by, with, or from a master. | Māgistr-īs,   | by, with, or from masters. |
| 3.    |                                        |               |                            |
| Nom.  | Puēr, a boy                            | Puēr-I,       | boys                       |
| Gen.  | Puēr-I, of a boy                       | Puēr-ōrum,    | of boys                    |
| Dat.  | Puēr-ō, to or for a boy                | Puēr-īs,      | to or for boys             |
| Acc.  | Puēr-um, a boy                         | Puēr-ōs,      | boys                       |
| Voc.  | Puēr, O boy                            | Puēr-I,       | O boys                     |
| Abl.  | Puēr-ō, by, with, or from a boy.       | Puēr-īs,      | by, with, or from boys.    |

NOTE.—Proper Names in ūs make ī in the Vocative, as, Mercūriūs, *Mercury*, Voc. Mercūri. Also the Vocative Singular of filiūs, *a son*, is fili, and of gēniūs, *a guardian deity*, is gēni.

There is one Noun of the Second Declension ending in ĩr, namely, vir, *a man* (as distinguished from *a woman*). It is declined like puēr :

| Sing. |                                 | 4.        | Plur.                  |
|-------|---------------------------------|-----------|------------------------|
| Nom.  | Vir, a man,                     | Vir-I,    | men                    |
| Gen.  | Vir-I, of a man                 | Vir-ōrum, | of men                 |
| Dat.  | Vir-ō, to or for a man          | Vir-īs,   | to or for men          |
| Acc.  | Vir-um, a man                   | Vir-ōs,   | men                    |
| Voc.  | Vir, O man                      | Vir-I,    | O men                  |
| Abl.  | Vir-ō, by, with, or from a man. | Vir-īs,   | by, with, or from men. |

B. *Neuter.*

|      | Sing.                                        | Plur.                                        |
|------|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Nom. | <b>Regn-um</b> , a kingdom                   | <b>Regn-a</b> , kingdoms                     |
| Gen. | <b>Regn-i</b> , of a kingdom                 | <b>Regn-um</b> , of kingdoms                 |
| Dat. | <b>Regn-o</b> , to or for a kingdom          | <b>Regn-is</b> , to or for kingdoms          |
| Acc. | <b>Regn-um</b> , a kingdom                   | <b>Regn-a</b> , kingdoms                     |
| Voc. | <b>Regn-um</b> , O kingdom                   | <b>Regn-a</b> , O kingdoms                   |
| Adv. | <b>Regn-o</b> , by, with, or from a kingdom. | <b>Regn-is</b> , by, with, or from kingdoms. |

**NOTE.**—The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of all *Neuter* Nouns are the same.

Three Nouns of the Second Declension ending in *-us* are *Neuter*: *vitula, pecunia; vulgus, the mult tude; pelagus, the (open) sea.* They are used only in the Singular. (N.B. *Vulgus* is sometimes Masculine.)

**EXCEPTION.**—Most Nouns in *-us* are Masculine, but names of trees are *Neuter*; as, *mālas, an apple-tree.*

**ET. END.**

## EXERCISE III.

*Masculine Nouns in -us.*

1. *Filius currit.* 2. *Servi currunt.* 3. *Dominus servos habet.*  
4. *Filius domini servos habet.* 5. *Dominus servos et equos habet.*  
6. *Fili domitorum equos et tauros habent.* 7. *Avus servos et equos habet.* 8. *Filius amici hortum habet.* 9. *Fili inimicorum gladium habent.* 10. *Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae.* 11. *Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Galliae.* 12. *Hortus rosas habet.*

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhone and the Rhine are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

**RULE 5.**—The Dative Case indicates the person who gains or receives anything: as, *Magister columbam puero dāt, the master gives a dove to the boy.*

*Dāt, (he, she, it) gives.*

*Dant, (they) give.*

## EXERCISE IV.

*Masculine Nouns in -er.*

1. *Puer librum habet.* 2. *Magister librum puero dat.* 3. *Filius libros habet.* 4. *Dominus servos et ministros habet.* 5. *Dominus agrum ministro dat.* 6. *Socer agros et ministros habet.* 7. *Socer agrum genero dat.* 8. *Magistri libros pueris dant.* 9. *Gener servum puero dat.* 10. *Puer librum ministro dat.*

*The boys have books.* 2. The lord gives a field to the boys.

3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends have books. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law.

## EXERCISE V.

## Neuter Nouns.

1. Amici sunt donum coeli. 2. Amicitia est donum Dei. 3. Dona avi sunt præmia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa morborum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Tempa sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. Friends are the gift of God. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

## VI.—ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Adjectives in *ūs, ā, um, or ĕr, (ē)rā, (ē)rum*, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension: *as, bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum, good; nīgēr, nigrā, nigrum, black; tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērum, tender.*

|      | Sing.  |        |        | 1.       | Plur.    |          |  |
|------|--------|--------|--------|----------|----------|----------|--|
|      | M.     | F.     | N.     | M.       | F.       | N.       |  |
| Nom. | Bōn-ūs | bōn-ā  | bōn-um | Bōn-ī    | bōn-ae   | bōn-ā    |  |
| Gen. | Bōn-ī  | bōn-ae | bōn-ī  | Bōn-ōrum | bōn-ārum | bōn-ōrum |  |
| Dat. | Bōn-ō  | bōn-ae | bōn-ō  | Bōn-īs   | bōn-īs   | bōn-īs   |  |
| Acc. | Bōn-um | bōn-am | bōn-um | Bōn-ōs   | bōn-ās   | bōn-ā    |  |
| Voc. | Bōn-ē  | bōn-ā  | bōn-um | Bōn-ī    | bōn-ae   | bōn-ā    |  |
| Abi. | Bōn-ō  | bōn-ā  | bōn-ō  | Bōn-īs   | bōn-īs   | bōn-īs   |  |

|      | 2.      |         |         |           |           |           |  |
|------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--|
|      | M.      | F.      | N.      | M.        | F.        | N.        |  |
| Nom. | Nigr-ēr | nigr-ā  | nigr-um | Nigr-ī    | nigr-ae   | nigr-ā    |  |
| Gen. | Nigr-ī  | nigr-ae | nigr-ī  | Nigr-ōrum | nigr-ārum | nigr-ōrum |  |
| Dat. | Nigr-ō  | nigr-ae | nigr-ō  | Nigr-īs   | nigr-īs   | nigr-īs   |  |
| Acc. | Nigr-um | nigr-am | nigr-um | Nigr-ōs   | nigr-ās   | nigr-ā    |  |
| Voc. | Nigr-ēr | nigr-ā  | nigr-um | Nigr-ī    | nigr-ae   | nigr-ā    |  |
| Abi. | Nigr-ō  | nigr-ā  | nigr-ō  | Nigr-īs   | nigr-īs   | nigr-īs   |  |

|      | Sing.    | Pl.      | Sing.    | Pl.                   | Sing.               | Pl.                   |
|------|----------|----------|----------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| N. 1 | Tānēr    | tānēr-ā  | tānēr-um | tānēr-i               | tānēr-ae            | tānēr-ē               |
| 2    | Tānēr-i  | tānēr-ae | tānēr-i  | <del>Tānēr-ōrum</del> | <del>tānēr-ae</del> | <del>tānēr-ōrum</del> |
| 3    | Tānēr-ā  | tānēr-ae | tānēr-ō  | Tānēr-is              | tānēr-is            | tānēr-is              |
| 4    | Tānēr-um | tānēr-um | tānēr-um | Tānēr-ō               | tānēr-ō             | tānēr-ō               |
| 5    | Tānēr    | tānēr-ā  | tānēr-um | Tānēr-i               | tānēr-ae            | tānēr-ē               |
| 6    | Tānēr-ā  | tānēr-ā  | tānēr-ō  | Tānēr-is              | tānēr-is            | tānēr-is              |

## 4.

FEMININE ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH FEMININE NOUN, BOTH IN FIRST DECLENSION.

## Sing.

|      |              |                                    |
|------|--------------|------------------------------------|
| N. 1 | Parvā mensā. | small table                        |
| 2    | Parvā mensā. | 1 small table                      |
| 3    | Parvā mensā. | 2 or 3 small tables                |
| 4    | Parvā mensā. | small table                        |
| 5    | Parvā mensā. | 1 small table                      |
| 6    | Parvā mensā. | 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 small tables. |

## Plur.

|      |                    |                                    |
|------|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| N. 1 | Parvā mensā.       | small tables                       |
| 2    | Parvārum mensārum. | 1 small table                      |
| 3    | Parvā mensā.       | 2 or 3 small tables                |
| 4    | Parvā mensā.       | small tables                       |
| 5    | Parvā mensā.       | 1 small table                      |
| 6    | Parvā mensā.       | 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 small tables. |

## 5.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVES DECLINED ALONG WITH MASCULINE NOUNS, BOTH IN SECOND DECLENSION.

## A.

## Sing.

|      |              |                                   |
|------|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| N. 1 | Albū dōmīnū. | white lord                        |
| 2    | Albū dōmīnū. | 1 white lord                      |
| 3    | Albū dōmīnū. | 2 or 3 white lords                |
| 4    | Albū dōmīnū. | white lord                        |
| 5    | Albū dōmīnū. | 1 white lord                      |
| 6    | Albū dōmīnū. | 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 white lords. |

## Plur.

|      |                    |                                   |
|------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| N. 1 | Albū dōmīnū.       | white lords                       |
| 2    | Albōrum dōmīnōrum. | 1 white lord                      |
| 3    | Albū dōmīnū.       | 2 or 3 white lords                |
| 4    | Albū dōmīnū.       | white lords                       |
| 5    | Albū dōmīnū.       | 1 white lord                      |
| 6    | Albū dōmīnū.       | 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 white lords. |

## B.

## Sing.

|      |             |                                  |
|------|-------------|----------------------------------|
| N. 1 | Bōnū pīlēr. | 1 white dog                      |
| 2    | Bōnū pīlēr. | 1 white dog                      |
| 3    | Bōnū pīlēr. | 2 or 3 white dogs                |
| 4    | Bōnū pīlēr. | 1 white dog                      |
| 5    | Bōnū pīlēr. | 1 white dog                      |
| 6    | Bōnū pīlēr. | 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 white dogs. |

|             |                          |                                     |
|-------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Bōni pūēri,</i>       | <i>good boys</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Bōnōrum pūērōrum,</i> | <i>of good boys</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Bōnis pūēris,</i>     | <i>to or for good boys</i>          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Bōnōs pūērōs,</i>     | <i>good boys</i>                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Bōni pūēri,</i>       | <i>O good boys</i>                  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Bōnis pūēris,</i>     | <i>by, with, or from good boys.</i> |

6.

NEUTER ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH NEUTER NOUN,  
BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

|             |                       |                                           |
|-------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Magnum regnum,</i> | <i>a great kingdom</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Magni regni,</i>   | <i>of a great kingdom</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Magnō regnō,</i>   | <i>to or for a great kingdom</i>          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Magnum regnum,</i> | <i>a great kingdom</i>                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Magnum regnum,</i> | <i>O great kingdom</i>                    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Magnō regnō,</i>   | <i>by, with, or from a great kingdom.</i> |

Plur.

|             |                           |                                          |
|-------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Magnā regnā,</i>       | <i>great kingdoms</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Magnōrum regnōrum,</i> | <i>of great kingdoms</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Magnis regnis,</i>     | <i>to or for great kingdoms</i>          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Magnā regnā,</i>       | <i>great kingdoms</i>                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Magnā regnā,</i>       | <i>O great kingdoms</i>                  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Magnis regnis,</i>     | <i>by, with, or from great kingdoms.</i> |

(B.)

Sing. only.

|             |                        |                                         |
|-------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Magnum pēlāgūs,</i> | <i>the great sea</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Magni pēlāgi,</i>   | <i>of the great sea</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Magnō pēlāgō,</i>   | <i>to or for the great sea</i>          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Magnum pēlāgūs,</i> | <i>the great sea</i>                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Magnum pēlāgūs,</i> | <i>the great sea</i>                    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Magnō pēlāgō,</i>   | <i>by, with, or from the great sea.</i> |

7.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVE OF SECOND DECLENSION DECLINED WITH  
MASCULINE NOUN OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

|             |                       |                                           |
|-------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Clārus nautā,</i>  | <i>a famous sailor</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Clārī nautae,</i>  | <i>of a famous sailor</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Clārō nautae,</i>  | <i>to or for a famous sailor</i>          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Clārum nautam,</i> | <i>a famous sailor.</i>                   |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Clārē nautā,</i>   | <i>O famous sailor</i>                    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Clārō nautā,</i>   | <i>by, with, or from a famous sailor.</i> |

Plur.

|             |                           |                                          |
|-------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Clārī nautae,</i>      | <i>famous sailors</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Clārōrum nautārum,</i> | <i>of famous sailors</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Clāris nautis,</i>     | <i>to or for famous sailors</i>          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Clārōs nautās,</i>     | <i>famous sailors</i>                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Clārī nautae,</i>      | <i>O famous sailors</i>                  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Clāris nautis,</i>     | <i>by, with, or from famous sailors.</i> |

**RULE 6.**—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Note that the Adjective in Latin is sometimes placed after the Noun.

### EXERCISE VI.

**A.**—1. *Servus est timidus.* 2. *Columba est timida.* 3. *Gaudium est magnum.* 4. *Servi sunt mali.* 5. *Insulae sunt magnae.* 6. *Oppida sunt parva.* 7. *Muri sunt alti.* 8. *Puellae sunt bonae.* 9. *Horti sunt lati.* 10. *Alae sunt albae.*

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

**B.**—1. *Columba albas alas habet.* 2. *Multae columbae albas alas habent.* 3. *Graecia multa templa habet.* 4. *Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae.* 5. *Bellicosa regina multas terras habet.* 6. *Oppidum magnum multas portas habet.* 7. *Magister librum bono puero dat.* 8. *Avus praemium bonae puellae dat.* 9. *Pericula nautarum sunt magna.* 10. *Dominus acutos gladios habet.*

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword. 7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhone is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhine is a rapid river.

**C.**—1. *Puer est aeger.* 2. *Puella est aegra.* 3. *Aurum templi est sacrum.* 4. *Regina est pulchra.* 5. *Filiae sunt tenerae.* 6. *Filii sunt miseri.* 7. *Morbus molestus est tenero filio.* 8. *Exemplum servi noxium puero est.* 9. *Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis.* 10. *Magnus est numerus puerorum.*

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black slaves are troublesome to the lord. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of the slaves is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

---

## VII.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

### A. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

#### I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

1. Nouns the stems of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p, b, m*.

|      | Sing.                        | 1.         | Plur.                    |
|------|------------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| Nom. | Trāb-s ( <i>f.</i> ), a beam | Trāb-ēs,   | beams                    |
| Gen. | Trāb-is,                     | Trāb-um,   | of beams                 |
| Dat. | Trāb-i,                      | Trāb-ibūs, | to or for beams          |
| Acc. | Trāb-em,                     | Trāb-ēs,   | beams                    |
| Voc. | Trāb-s,                      | Trāb-ēs,   | O beams                  |
| Abl. | Trāb-ē,                      | Trāb-ibūs, | by, with, or from beams. |

|      | 2.                               |               |
|------|----------------------------------|---------------|
| Nom. | Princēp-s ( <i>c.</i> ), a chief | Princēp-ēs,   |
| Gen. | Princēp-is,                      | Princēp-um,   |
| Dat. | Princēp-i,                       | Princēp-ibūs, |
| Acc. | Princēp-em,                      | Princēp-ēs,   |
| Voc. | Princēp-s,                       | Princēp-ēs,   |
| Abl. | Princēp-ē,                       | Princēp-ibūs, |

chiefs  
of chiefs;  
to or for chiefs  
chiefs  
O chiefs  
by, with, or from chiefs.

|      | 3.                           |            |
|------|------------------------------|------------|
| Nom. | Hlēm-s ( <i>f.</i> ), winter | Hlēm-ēs,   |
| Gen. | Hlēm-is,                     | Hlēm-um,   |
| Dat. | Hlēm-i,                      | Hlēm-ibūs, |
| Acc. | Hlēm-em,                     | Hlēm-ēs,   |
| Voc. | Hlēm-s,                      | Hlēm-ēs,   |
| Abl. | Hlēm-ē,                      | Hlēm-ibūs, |

winters  
of winters  
to or for winters  
winters  
O winters  
by, with, or from winters.

2. Nouns the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters *c, g*. NOTE.—In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *cs, gs* are contracted into *x*.

|      | Sing.                       | 1.        | Plur.                      |
|------|-----------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| Nom. | Dux ( <i>c.</i> ), a leader | Dūc-ēs,   | leaders                    |
| Gen. | Dūc-is,                     | Dūc-um,   | of leaders                 |
| Dat. | Dūc-i,                      | Dūc-ibūs, | to or for leaders          |
| Acc. | Dūc-em,                     | Dūc-ēs,   | leaders                    |
| Voc. | Dux,                        | Dūc-ēs,   | O leaders                  |
| Abl. | Dūc-ē,                      | Dūc-ibūs, | by, with, or from leaders. |

|      | Sing.                  | 2.               | Plur.                          |
|------|------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| Nom. | <i>Lex (f.), a law</i> | <i>Lēg-ēs,</i>   | <i>laws</i>                    |
| Gen. | <i>Lēg-is,</i>         | <i>Lēg-um,</i>   | <i>of laws</i>                 |
| Dat. | <i>Lēg-i,</i>          | <i>Lēg-ibūs,</i> | <i>to or for laws</i>          |
| Acc. | <i>Lēg-em,</i>         | <i>Lēg-ēs,</i>   | <i>laws</i>                    |
| Voc. | <i>Lex,</i>            | <i>Lēg-ēs,</i>   | <i>O laws</i>                  |
| Abl. | <i>Lēg-ē,</i>          | <i>Lēg-ibūs,</i> | <i>by, with, or from laws.</i> |

|      | Sing.                      | 3.                 | Plur.                            |
|------|----------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Nom. | <i>Jūdex (c.), a judge</i> | <i>Jūdio-ēs,</i>   | <i>judges</i>                    |
| Gen. | <i>Jūdio-is,</i>           | <i>Jūdio-um,</i>   | <i>of judges</i>                 |
| Dat. | <i>Jūdio-i,</i>            | <i>Jūdio-ibūs,</i> | <i>to or for judges</i>          |
| Acc. | <i>Jūdio-em,</i>           | <i>Jūdio-ēs,</i>   | <i>judges</i>                    |
| Voc. | <i>Jūdex,</i>              | <i>Jūdio-ēs,</i>   | <i>O judges</i>                  |
| Abl. | <i>Jūdio-ē,</i>            | <i>Jūdio-ibūs,</i> | <i>by, with, or from judges.</i> |

*Ērāt, (he, she, it) was.*

*Ērant, (they) were.*

### EXERCISE VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justī. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Arx urbis est firma. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Nouns the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t, d*.

|      | Sing.                      | 1.                 | Plur.                          |
|------|----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| Nom. | <i>Aetā-s (f.), an age</i> | <i>Aetāt-ēs,</i>   | <i>ages</i>                    |
| Gen. | <i>Aetāt-is,</i>           | <i>Aetāt-um,</i>   | <i>of ages</i>                 |
| Dat. | <i>Aetāt-i,</i>            | <i>Aetāt-ibūs,</i> | <i>to or for ages</i>          |
| Acc. | <i>Aetāt-em,</i>           | <i>Aetāt-ēs,</i>   | <i>ages</i>                    |
| Voc. | <i>Aetā-s,</i>             | <i>Aetāt-ēs,</i>   | <i>O ages</i>                  |
| Abl. | <i>Aetāt-ē,</i>            | <i>Aetāt-ibūs,</i> | <i>by, with, or from ages.</i> |

|      | Sing.                      | 2.                 | Plur.                            |
|------|----------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Nom. | <i>Lāpis (m.), a stone</i> | <i>Lāpid-ēs,</i>   | <i>stones</i>                    |
| Gen. | <i>Lāpid-is,</i>           | <i>Lāpid-um,</i>   | <i>of stones</i>                 |
| Dat. | <i>Lāpid-i,</i>            | <i>Lāpid-ibūs,</i> | <i>to or for stones</i>          |
| Acc. | <i>Lāpid-em,</i>           | <i>Lāpid-ēs,</i>   | <i>stones</i>                    |
| Voc. | <i>Lāpis,</i>              | <i>Lāpid-ēs,</i>   | <i>O stones</i>                  |
| Abl. | <i>Lāpid-ē,</i>            | <i>Lāpid-ibūs,</i> | <i>by, with, or from stones.</i> |

## 3.

|                   |                                 |             |                                |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| Nom. MILĕ-s (c.), | a soldier                       | MILĭt-ēs,   | soldiers                       |
| Gen. MILĭt-is,    | of a soldier                    | MILĭt-um,   | of soldiers                    |
| Dat. MILĭt-I,     | to or for a soldier             | MILĭt-ībūs, | to or for soldiers             |
| Acc. MILĭt-em,    | a soldier                       | MILĭt-ēs,   | soldiers                       |
| Voc. MILĕ-s,      | O soldier                       | MILĭt-ēs,   | O soldiers                     |
| Abl. MILĭt-ē,     | by, with, or from<br>a soldier. | MILĭt-ībūs, | by, with, or from<br>soldiers. |

RULE 7.—The Ablative case indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: as, *dōmīnūs hastā servum occidit, the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: as, *nōctēs hīēmē longae sunt, the nights are long in winter.*

*Occidit, (he, she, it) kills.*

*Occidunt, (they) kill.*

## EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas iudicis justa est. 10. Milites iudices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Nouns the stems of which end in the liquids *l, r,* and the sibilant *s.*

## Sing.

## 1.

## Plur.

|                   |                                |              |                               |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| Nom. Consŭl (m.), | a consul                       | Consŭl-ēs,   | consuls                       |
| Gen. Consŭl-is,   | of a consul                    | Consŭl-um,   | of consuls                    |
| Dat. Consŭl-I,    | to or for a consul             | Consŭl-ībūs, | to or for consuls             |
| Acc. Consŭl-em,   | a consul                       | Consŭl-ēs,   | consuls                       |
| Voc. Consŭl,      | O consul                       | Consŭl-ēs,   | O consuls                     |
| Abl. Consŭl-ē,    | by, with, or from<br>a consul. | Consŭl-ībūs, | by, with, or from<br>consuls. |

## 2.

|                   |                               |              |                              |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| Nom. Clāmōr (m.), | a shout                       | Clāmōr-ēs,   | shouts                       |
| Gen. Clāmōr-is,   | of a shout                    | Clāmōr-um,   | of shouts                    |
| Dat. Clāmōr-I,    | to or for a shout             | Clāmōr-ībūs, | to or for shouts             |
| Acc. Clāmōr-em,   | a shout                       | Clāmōr-ēs,   | shouts                       |
| Voc. Clāmōr,      | O shout                       | Clāmōr-ēs,   | O shouts                     |
| Abl. Clāmōr-ē,    | by, with, or from<br>a shout. | Clāmōr-ībūs, | by, with, or from<br>shouts. |

|      | Sing.                                     | 3.                                         | Plur. |
|------|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------|
| Nom. | <b>Anŕ</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), a goose         | <b>Anŕ-ŕa</b> , geese                      |       |
| Gen. | <b>Anŕ-la</b> , of a goose                | <b>Anŕ-um</b> , of geese                   |       |
| Dat. | <b>Anŕ-l</b> , to or for a goose          | <b>Anŕ-lbŕa</b> , to or for geese          |       |
| Acc. | <b>Anŕ-em</b> , a goose                   | <b>Anŕ-ŕa</b> , geese                      |       |
| Voc. | <b>Anŕ</b> , O goose                      | <b>Anŕ-ŕa</b> , O geese                    |       |
| Abl. | <b>Anŕ-ŕ</b> , by, with, or from a goose. | <b>Anŕ-lbŕa</b> , by, with, or from geese. |       |

|      |                                             | 4.                                            |  |
|------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--|
| Nom. | <b>Pŕŕ</b> , a father                       | <b>Patr-ŕa</b> , fathers                      |  |
| Gen. | <b>Patr-la</b> , of a father                | <b>Patr-um</b> , of fathers                   |  |
| Dat. | <b>Patr-l</b> , to or for a father          | <b>Patr-lbŕa</b> , to or for fathers          |  |
| Acc. | <b>Patr-em</b> , a father                   | <b>Patr-ŕa</b> , fathers                      |  |
| Voc. | <b>Pŕŕ</b> , O father                       | <b>Patr-ŕa</b> , O fathers                    |  |
| Abl. | <b>Patr-ŕ</b> , by, with, or from a father. | <b>Patr-lbŕa</b> , by, with, or from fathers. |  |

|      |                                            | 5.                                           |  |
|------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--|
| Nom. | <b>Flŕa</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), a flower        | <b>Flŕ-ŕa</b> , flowers                      |  |
| Gen. | <b>Flŕ-la</b> , of a flower                | <b>Flŕ-um</b> , of flowers                   |  |
| Dat. | <b>Flŕ-l</b> , to or for a flower          | <b>Flŕ-lbŕa</b> , to or for flowers          |  |
| Acc. | <b>Flŕ-em</b> , a flower                   | <b>Flŕ-ŕa</b> , flowers                      |  |
| Voc. | <b>Flŕa</b> , O flower                     | <b>Flŕ-ŕa</b> , O flowers                    |  |
| Abl. | <b>Flŕ-ŕ</b> , by, with, or from a flower. | <b>Flŕ-lbŕa</b> , by, with, or from flowers. |  |

## EXERCISE IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Odores florum sunt varii. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. The colours of the flowers are various. 5. The brother gives a flower to (his) sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Nouns the stems of which end in *ŕn* or *ŕn* (*in*).

|      | Sing.                                    | 1.                                         | Plur. |
|------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------|
| Nom. | <b>Lŕŕ</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), a lion         | <b>Lŕŕ-ŕa</b> , lions                      |       |
| Gen. | <b>Lŕŕ-la</b> , of a lion                | <b>Lŕŕ-um</b> , of lions                   |       |
| Dat. | <b>Lŕŕ-l</b> , to or for a lion          | <b>Lŕŕ-lbŕa</b> , to or for lions          |       |
| Acc. | <b>Lŕŕ-em</b> , a lion                   | <b>Lŕŕ-ŕa</b> , lions                      |       |
| Voc. | <b>Lŕŕ</b> , O lion                      | <b>Lŕŕ-ŕa</b> , O lions                    |       |
| Abl. | <b>Lŕŕ-ŕ</b> , by, with, or from a lion. | <b>Lŕŕ-lbŕa</b> , by, with, or from lions. |       |

|      | Sing.                                          | 2.                    | Plur.                      |
|------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Nom. | Virgo (f.), a maiden                           | Virgīn- <i>īs</i> ,   | maidens                    |
| Gen. | Virgīn- <i>is</i> , of a maiden                | Virgīn- <i>um</i> ,   | of maidens                 |
| Dat. | Virgīn- <i>i</i> , to or for a maiden          | Virgīn- <i>ibūs</i> , | to or for maidens          |
| Acc. | Virgīn- <i>em</i> , a maiden                   | Virgīn- <i>īs</i> ,   | maidens                    |
| Voc. | Virgo, O maiden                                | Virgīn- <i>īs</i> ,   | O maidens                  |
| Abi. | Virgīn- <i>ē</i> , by, with, or from a maiden. | Virgīn- <i>ibūs</i> , | by, with, or from maidens. |

## EXERCISE X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolas sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

## II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

|      | Sing.                                        | 1.                  | Plur.                      |
|------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|
| Nom. | Host- <i>is</i> (c.), an enemy               | Host- <i>īs</i> ,   | enemies                    |
| Gen. | Host- <i>is</i> , of an enemy                | Host- <i>ium</i> ,  | of enemies                 |
| Dat. | Host- <i>i</i> , to or for an enemy          | Host- <i>ibūs</i> , | to or for enemies          |
| Acc. | Host- <i>em</i> , an enemy                   | Host- <i>īs</i> ,   | enemies                    |
| Voc. | Host- <i>is</i> , O enemy                    | Host- <i>īs</i> ,   | O enemies                  |
| Abi. | Host- <i>ē</i> , by, with, or from an enemy. | Host- <i>ibūs</i> , | by, with, or from enemies. |

Some stems in *i* have the Nominative in *e* and are thus declined:—

|      | 2.                                         |                    |
|------|--------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Nom. | Nūb- <i>īs</i> (f.), a cloud               | Nūb- <i>īs</i> ,   |
| Gen. | Nūb- <i>is</i> , of a cloud                | Nūb- <i>ium</i> ,  |
| Dat. | Nūb- <i>i</i> , to or for a cloud          | Nūb- <i>ibūs</i> , |
| Acc. | Nūb- <i>em</i> , a cloud                   | Nūb- <i>īs</i> ,   |
| Voc. | Nūb- <i>īs</i> , O cloud                   | Nūb- <i>īs</i> ,   |
| Abi. | Nūb- <i>ē</i> , by, with, or from a cloud. | Nūb- <i>ibūs</i> , |
|      |                                            | clouds.            |

## EXERCISE XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus præmia dat. 3. Nubes atræ sunt causa tempestatum. 4. Rupes sunt duræ. 5. Urbs turres altas habet. 6. Clades hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notæ erant. 9. Græcia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skilful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skilful.

### B. Neuter Nouns.

#### I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

Nouns the stems of which end in *n, r, s, t*.

| Sing. |                                        | 1.           | Plur.                         |
|-------|----------------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| Nom.  | Nōmēn, a name                          | Nōmīn-ā,     | names                         |
| Gen.  | Nōmīn-is, of a name                    | Nōmīn-um,    | of names                      |
| Dat.  | Nōmīn-i, to or for a name              | Nōmīn-ibūs,  | to or for names               |
| Acc.  | Nōmēn, a name                          | Nōmīn-ā,     | names                         |
| Voc.  | Nōmēn, O name                          | Nōmīn-ā,     | O names                       |
| Abl.  | Nōmīn-ē, by, with, or from a name.     | Nōmīn-ibūs,  | by, with, or from names.      |
| 2.    |                                        |              |                               |
| Nom.  | Fulgūr, lightning                      | Fulgūr-ā,    | lightnings                    |
| Gen.  | Fulgūr-is, of lightning                | Fulgūr-um,   | of lightnings                 |
| Dat.  | Fulgūr-i, to or for lightning          | Fulgūr-ibūs, | to or for lightnings          |
| Acc.  | Fulgūr, lightning                      | Fulgūr-ā,    | lightnings                    |
| Voc.  | Fulgūr, O lightning                    | Fulgūr-ā,    | O lightnings                  |
| Abl.  | Fulgūr-ē, by, with, or from lightning. | Fulgūr-ibūs, | by, with, or from lightnings. |
| 3.    |                                        |              |                               |
| Nom.  | Crūs, a leg                            | Crūr-ā,      | legs                          |
| Gen.  | Crūr-is, of a leg                      | Crūr-um,     | of legs                       |
| Dat.  | Crūr-i, to or for a leg                | Crūr-ibūs,   | to or for legs                |
| Acc.  | Crūs, a leg                            | Crūr-ā,      | legs                          |
| Voc.  | Crūs, O leg                            | Crūr-ā,      | O legs                        |
| Abl.  | Crūr-ē, by, with, or from a leg.       | Crūr-ibūs,   | by, with, or from legs.       |
| 4.    |                                        |              |                               |
| Nom.  | Ōpūs, a work                           | Ōpēr-ā,      | works                         |
| Gen.  | Ōpēr-is, of a work                     | Ōpēr-um,     | of works                      |
| Dat.  | Ōpēr-i, to or for a work               | Ōpēr-ibūs,   | to or for works               |
| Acc.  | Ōpūs, a work                           | Ōpēr-ā,      | works                         |
| Voc.  | Ōpūs, O work                           | Ōpēr-ā,      | O works                       |
| Abl.  | Ōpēr-ē, by, with, or from a work.      | Ōpēr-ibūs,   | by, with, or from works.      |
| 5.    |                                        |              |                               |
| Nom.  | Corpūs, a body                         | Corpōr-ā,    | bodies                        |
| Gen.  | Corpōr-is, of a body                   | Corpōr-um,   | of bodies                     |
| Dat.  | Corpōr-i, to or for a body             | Corpōr-ibūs, | to or for bodies              |
| Acc.  | Corpūs, a body                         | Corpōr-ā,    | bodies                        |
| Voc.  | Corpūs, O body                         | Corpōr-ā,    | O bodies                      |
| Abl.  | Corpōr-ē, by, with, or from a body.    | Corpōr-ibūs, | by, with, or from bodies.     |

|      | Sing.                              | 6.          | Plur.                    |
|------|------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| Nom. | Cēpūt, a head                      | Cēpūt-ē,    | heads                    |
| Gen. | Cēpūt-is, of a head                | Cēpūt-um,   | of heads                 |
| Dat. | Cēpūt-i, to or for a head          | Cēpūt-ibūs, | to or for heads          |
| Acc. | Cēpūt, a head                      | Cēpūt-ē,    | heads                    |
| Voc. | Cēpūt, O head                      | Cēpūt-ē,    | O heads                  |
| Abl. | Cēpūt-ē, by, with, or from a head. | Cēpūt-ibūs, | by, with, or from heads. |

## II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

The Nominative in ē, āl, ār.

|      | Sing.                             | 1.        | Plur.                   |
|------|-----------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| Nom. | Mār-ē, the sea                    | Mār-ī,    | seas                    |
| Gen. | Mār-is, of the sea                | Mār-ium,  | of seas                 |
| Dat. | Mār-i, to or for the sea          | Mār-ibūs, | to or for seas          |
| Acc. | Mār-ē, the sea                    | Mār-ī,    | seas                    |
| Voc. | Mār-ē, O sea                      | Mār-ī,    | O seas                  |
| Abl. | Mār-i, by, with, or from the sea. | Mār-ibūs, | by, with, or from seas. |

|      |                                        | 2.           |                            |
|------|----------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|
| Nom. | Ānimāl, an animal                      | Ānimāl-ī,    | animals                    |
| Gen. | Ānimāl-is, of an animal                | Ānimāl-ium,  | of animals                 |
| Dat. | Ānimāl-i, to or for an animal          | Ānimāl-ibūs, | to or for animals          |
| Acc. | Ānimāl, an animal                      | Ānimāl-ī,    | animals                    |
| Voc. | Ānimāl, O animal                       | Ānimāl-ī,    | O animals                  |
| Abl. | Ānimāl-i, by, with, or from an animal. | Ānimāl-ibūs, | by, with, or from animals. |

|      |                                     | 3.           |                          |
|------|-------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| Nom. | Calcār, a spur                      | Calcār-ī,    | spurs                    |
| Gen. | Calcār-is, of a spur                | Calcār-ium,  | of spurs                 |
| Dat. | Calcār-i, to or for a spur          | Calcār-ibūs, | to or for spurs          |
| Acc. | Calcār, a spur                      | Calcār-ī,    | spurs                    |
| Voc. | Calcār, O spur                      | Calcār-ī,    | O spurs                  |
| Abl. | Calcār-i, by, with, or from a spur. | Calcār-ibūs, | by, with, or from spurs. |

## EXERCISE XII.

A.—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephantis magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are small. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

B.—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent,

5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are high. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are golden. 5. The king gives golden nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS, DECLINED TOGETHER.

1. *Magnus Dux*,—a great leader.

| Sing.                    | Plur.                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Nom. <i>Magnus dux</i>   | <i>Magni dūces</i>      |
| Gen. <i>Magni dūcis</i>  | <i>Magnorum dūcum</i>   |
| Dat. <i>Magnō dūci</i>   | <i>Magnis dūcibus</i>   |
| Acc. <i>Magnum dūcem</i> | <i>Magnos dūces</i>     |
| Voc. <i>Magnē dux</i>    | <i>Magni dūces</i>      |
| Abl. <i>Magnō dūce</i>   | <i>Magnis dūcibus</i> . |

2. *Bona Mater*,—a good mother.

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Nom. <i>Bona mātēr</i>    | <i>Bonae matrēs</i>      |
| Gen. <i>Bonae mātēris</i> | <i>Bonarum matrum</i>    |
| Dat. <i>Bonae mātēri</i>  | <i>Bonis mātēribus</i>   |
| Acc. <i>Bonam matrem</i>  | <i>Bonas matrēs</i>      |
| Voc. <i>Bonā mātēr</i>    | <i>Bonae matrēs</i>      |
| Abl. <i>Bonā matrē</i>    | <i>Bonis mātēribus</i> . |

3. *Rapidum Flumen*,—a rapid river.

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Nom. <i>Rapidum flūmēn</i>  | <i>Rapidē flūminā</i>       |
| Gen. <i>Rapidī flūminis</i> | <i>Rapidōrum flūminum</i>   |
| Dat. <i>Rapidō flūminī</i>  | <i>Rapidis flūminibus</i>   |
| Acc. <i>Rapidum flūmēn</i>  | <i>Rapidē flūminā</i>       |
| Voc. <i>Rapidū flūmēn</i>   | <i>Rapidē flūminā</i>       |
| Abl. <i>Rapidō flūminē</i>  | <i>Rapidis flūminibus</i> . |

VIII.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS end in *ēr*, *rīs*, *rē*, and are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: as, *acer*, *aceris*, *acerē*, *sharp*; *celer*, *celeris*, *celerē*, *swift*.

|      | Sing.         | N.               |              | Plur.           | N.               |
|------|---------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Nom. | <i>Ācēr</i>   | <i>āceris</i>    | <i>ācerē</i> | <i>Ācerēs</i>   | <i>ācerī</i>     |
| Gen. | <i>Āceris</i> | (of all genders) |              | <i>Ācerum</i>   | (of all genders) |
| Dat. | <i>Ācerī</i>  | (of all genders) |              | <i>Āceribus</i> | (of all genders) |
| Acc. | <i>Ācerem</i> | <i>ācerē</i>     |              | <i>Ācerēs</i>   | <i>ācerī</i>     |
| Voc. | <i>Ācēr</i>   | <i>āceris</i>    | <i>ācerē</i> | <i>Ācerēs</i>   | <i>ācerī</i>     |
| Abl. | <i>Ācerī</i>  | (of all genders) |              | <i>Āceribus</i> | (of all genders) |

II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have two termina-

tions in the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative only. They include—

1. Adjectives ending in *is*: *as*, *tristis* (*masc. and fem.*), *tristē* (*neut.*), *sad*.
2. Comparatives, ending in *ior*, *ius*: *as*, *mélior* (*masc. and fem.*), *mélius* (*neut.*), *better*.

| Sing.                                   |                  | 1. | Plur.              |                  |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------|----|--------------------|------------------|
| M. and F.                               | N.               |    | M. and F.          | N.               |
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>Trist-is</i>             | <i>trist-ē</i>   |    | <i>Trist-ēs</i>    | <i>trist-īā</i>  |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>Trist-is</i>             | (of all genders) |    | <i>Trist-ium</i>   | (of all genders) |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>Trist-i</i>              | (of all genders) |    | <i>Trist-ibūs</i>  | (of all genders) |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>Trist-em</i>             | <i>trist-ē</i>   |    | <i>Trist-ēs</i>    | <i>trist-īā</i>  |
| <i>Voc.</i> <i>Trist-is</i>             | <i>trist-ē</i>   |    | <i>Trist-ēs</i>    | <i>trist-īā</i>  |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>Trist-i</i>              | (of all genders) |    | <i>Trist-ibūs</i>  | (of all genders) |
|                                         |                  | 2. |                    |                  |
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>Mélior</i>               | <i>méliūs</i>    |    | <i>Mélior-ēs</i>   | <i>mélior-ā</i>  |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>Mélior-is</i>            | (of all genders) |    | <i>Mélior-um</i>   | (of all genders) |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>Mélior-i</i>             | (of all genders) |    | <i>Mélior-ibūs</i> | (of all genders) |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>Mélior-em</i>            | <i>méliūs</i>    |    | <i>Mélior-ēs</i>   | <i>mélior-ā</i>  |
| <i>Voc.</i> <i>Mélior</i>               | <i>méliūs</i>    |    | <i>Mélior-ēs</i>   | <i>mélior-ā</i>  |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>Mélior-ē</i> or <i>i</i> | (of all genders) |    | <i>Mélior-ibūs</i> | (of all genders) |

III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are of various endings and declined like Nouns of the Third Declension: *as*, *fēlix*, *fortunate*; *prūdēns*, *prudent*.

| Sing.                                  |                  | 1. | Plur.              |                  |
|----------------------------------------|------------------|----|--------------------|------------------|
| M. and F.                              | N.               |    | M. and F.          | N.               |
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>Fēlix</i>               | <i>fēlix</i>     |    | <i>Fēlix-ēs</i>    | <i>fēlix-īā</i>  |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>Fēlix-is</i>            | (of all genders) |    | <i>Fēlix-ium</i>   | (of all genders) |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>Fēlix-i</i>             | (of all genders) |    | <i>Fēlix-ibūs</i>  | (of all genders) |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>Fēlix-em</i>            | <i>fēlix</i>     |    | <i>Fēlix-ēs</i>    | <i>fēlix-īā</i>  |
| <i>Voc.</i> <i>Fēlix</i>               | <i>fēlix</i>     |    | <i>Fēlix-ēs</i>    | <i>fēlix-īā</i>  |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>Fēlix-i</i> or <i>ē</i> | (of all genders) |    | <i>Fēlix-ibūs</i>  | (of all genders) |
|                                        |                  | 2. |                    |                  |
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>Prūdēns</i>             | <i>prūdēns</i>   |    | <i>Prūdēt-ēs</i>   | <i>prūdēt-īā</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>Prūdēt-is</i>           | (of all genders) |    | <i>Prūdēt-ium</i>  | (of all genders) |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>Prūdēt-i</i>            | (of all genders) |    | <i>Prūdēt-ibūs</i> | (of all genders) |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>Prūdēt-em</i>           | <i>prūdēns</i>   |    | <i>Prūdēt-ēs</i>   | <i>prūdēt-īā</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> <i>Prūdēns</i>             | <i>prūdēns</i>   |    | <i>Prūdēt-ēs</i>   | <i>prūdēt-īā</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>Prūdēt-iorē</i>         | (of all genders) |    | <i>Prūdēt-ibūs</i> | (of all genders) |

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION, DECLINED WITH NOUNS OF FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.

1. *Cēlērīs sāgittā*,—*a swift arrow*.

| Sing.                               | Plur.                     |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>Cēlērīs sāgittā</i>  | <i>Cēlērēs sāgittae</i>   |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>Cēlērīs sāgittae</i> | <i>Cēlērū sāgittārum</i>  |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>Cēlērī sāgittae</i>  | <i>Cēlērībūs sāgittis</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>Cēlērem sāgittam</i> | <i>Cēlērēs sāgittas</i>   |
| <i>Voc.</i> <i>Cēlērīs sāgittā</i>  | <i>Cēlērēs sāgittae</i>   |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>Cēlērī sāgittā</i>   | <i>Cēlērībūs sāgittis</i> |

2. *Tristē Proellum*,—a sad battle.

|      | Sing.           |  | Plur.               |
|------|-----------------|--|---------------------|
| Nom. | Tristē proellum |  | Tristia proella     |
| Gen. | Tristis proelli |  | Tristium proellorum |
| Dat. | Tristi proellō  |  | Tristibus proellis  |
| Acc. | Tristē proellum |  | Tristia proella     |
| Voc. | Tristē proellum |  | Tristia proella     |
| Abi. | Tristi proellō  |  | Tristibus proellis  |

3. *Felix Hōmo*,—a happy man.

| Nom. | Felix hōmo         |  | Felix hōmō          |
|------|--------------------|--|---------------------|
| Gen. | Felix hōmīnis      |  | Felix hōmīnū        |
| Dat. | Felici hōmīni      |  | Felicibus hōmīnibus |
| Acc. | Felicem hōmīnem    |  | Felix hōmīnē        |
| Voc. | Felix hōmo         |  | Felix hōmō          |
| Abi. | Felici or ē hōmīnē |  | Felicibus hōmīnibus |

## EXERCISE XIII.

**A.**—1. Ira furor brevis est. 2. Ira militum erat aeris. 3. Via est facilis. 4. Omne initium est difficile. 5. Leges hominibus utiles sunt. 6. Vulnus militis est leve. 7. Carmen est dulce. 8. Naves hostium sunt celeres. 9. Tempus humanae vitae breve est. 10. Rex cives fideles habet.

1. The soldiers have sharp arms. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labour is easy in the winter. 4. Labour is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

**B.**—1. Consilium ducis audax est. 2. Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt. 3. Tempus praesens felix est. 4. Regnum Persarum erat potens. 5. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia. 6. Vetus vinum est bonum. 7. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet. 8. Leges Romanorum erant praestantes. 9. Praemia equitum ingentia erant. 10. Agricola vinum vetus habet.

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

## IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in ūs, and of Neuter Nouns in u,

|      | Sing.                |                              | 1.         |  | Plur.                       |
|------|----------------------|------------------------------|------------|--|-----------------------------|
| Nom. | Grād-ūs (m.), a step |                              | Grād-ūs,   |  | steps                       |
| Gen. | Grād-ūs,             |                              | Grād-ūum,  |  | of steps                    |
| Dat. | Grād-ūi,             |                              | Grād-ībūs, |  | to or for steps             |
| Acc. | Grād-um,             |                              | Grād-ūs,   |  | steps                       |
| Voc. | Grād-ūs,             |                              | Grād-ūs,   |  | O steps                     |
| Abl. | Grād-ū,              | by, with, or from<br>a step. | Grād-ībūs, |  | by, with, or from<br>steps. |
| 2.   |                      |                              |            |  |                             |
| Nom. | Gēn-u (n.), a knee   |                              | Gēn-ū,     |  | knees                       |
| Gen. | Gēn-ūs,              |                              | Gēn-ūum,   |  | of knees                    |
| Dat. | Gēn-ū,               |                              | Gēn-ībūs,  |  | to or for knees             |
| Acc. | Gēn-u,               |                              | Gēn-ū,     |  | knees                       |
| Voc. | Gēn-u,               |                              | Gēn-ū,     |  | O knees                     |
| Abl. | Gēn-ū,               | by, with, or from<br>a knee. | Gēn-ībūs,  |  | by, with, or from<br>knees. |

NOTE.—Some nouns of the Fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in -ībūs: as, acībūs, arcībūs, portībūs, vēribūs, with a few others. Also, the Dative Singular ūi is sometimes contracted into ū: as, grādūi, grādū.

## EXERCISE XIV.

**A.**—1. Quercus sunt altæ. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus coelestis varios colores habet. 9. Fructus ficis erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbours. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbours of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbours is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

**B.**—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magnifica habet. 6. Duces exercitus audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque\* habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visus. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditus.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbours. 7. Every (omne) animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Sharp needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

\* Quæ, and (placed after the word which it unites to the preceding).

## X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

|      | Sing.                                 | Plur.                                   |
|------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Nom. | <i>Dī-ēs, a day</i>                   | <i>Dī-ēs, days</i>                      |
| Gen. | <i>Dī-ēī, of a day</i>                | <i>Dī-ērum, of days</i>                 |
| Dat. | <i>Dī-ēī, to or for a day</i>         | <i>Dī-ēbūs, to or for days</i>          |
| Acc. | <i>Dī-em, a day</i>                   | <i>Dī-ēs, days</i>                      |
| Voc. | <i>Dī-ēe, O day</i>                   | <i>Dī-ēs, O days</i>                    |
| Abl. | <i>Dī-ē, by, with, or from a day.</i> | <i>Dī-ēbūs, by, with, or from days.</i> |

NOTE.—In Nouns like *rēs*, where *ēs* is preceded by a Consonant, the *e* becomes short in Gen. and Dat. Singular : *as, rēī, spēī*.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dīs*, which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural ; and *mēridīs*, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

RULE 8.—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *īn*, *in* : *as, hostēs īn plānitīē ērant, the enemies were in the plain*. See Rule 7, p. 13.

## EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magna planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnitias.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

## XI.—SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS.

The following words are thus declined :—

|      | <i>Dēūs, God. (2 Decl.)</i> |                           |  | <i>Dōmūs, f., a house. (2 and 4 Decl.)</i> |                             |
|------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
|      | Sing.                       | Plur.                     |  | Sing.                                      | Plur.                       |
| Nom. | <i>Dēūs</i>                 | <i>Dēī, Dēī, or Dēī</i>   |  | <i>Dōmūs</i>                               | <i>Dōmūs</i>                |
| Gen. | <i>Dēī</i>                  | <i>Dēōrum, or Dēām</i>    |  | <i>Dōmūs</i>                               | <i>Dōmūm, or dōmōrum</i>    |
| Dat. | <i>Dēō</i>                  | <i>Dēīs, Dēīs, or Dīs</i> |  | <i>Dōmūī</i>                               | <i>Dōmībūs</i>              |
| Acc. | <i>Dēum</i>                 | <i>Dēōs</i>               |  | <i>Dōmum</i>                               | <i>Dōmōs (rarely dōmūs)</i> |
| Voc. | <i>Dēūs</i>                 | <i>Dēī, Dēī, or Dēī</i>   |  | <i>Dōmūs</i>                               | <i>Dōmūs</i>                |
| Abl. | <i>Dēō</i>                  | <i>Dēīs, Dēīs, or Dīs</i> |  | <i>Dōmō</i>                                | <i>Dōmībūs</i>              |

N.B.—The form *dōmī* is used only in the sense of *at home*.

**Bōs, an ox or cow. (3 Decl.)**

|             | Sing. | Plur.           |
|-------------|-------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Bōs   | Bōvēs           |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Bōvis | Bōvum, or bōum  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Bōvi  | Bōbūs, or bībūs |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Bōvem | Bōvēs           |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Bōs   | Bōvēs           |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Bōvē  | Bōbūs, or bībūs |

**Vis, f., strength. (3 Decl.)**

|             | Sing.   | Plur.   |
|-------------|---------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Vis     | Virēs   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | wanting | Virium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | wanting | Viribūs |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Vim     | Virēs   |
| <i>Voc.</i> | wanting | Virēs   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Vi      | Viribūs |

**Jusjūrandum, n., an oath** (properly two words, Jūs, 3 Decl., and jūrandum, 2 Decl.).

|             | Sing.        |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Jusjūrandum  |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Jūriajūrandi |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Jūrijūrandō  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Jusjūrandum  |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Jusjūrandum  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Jūrejūrandō  |

**Sēnex, an old man. (3 Decl.)**

|             | Sing. | Plur.   |
|-------------|-------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Sēnax | Sēnēs   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Sēnis | Sēnum   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Sēni  | Sēnibūs |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Sēnem | Sēnēs   |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Sēnex | Sēnēs   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Sēnē  | Sēnibūs |

**Jūpītēr** (= Jōv-pītēr, i. e. pātēr), (3 Decl.) *the god.*

|             | Sing.   |
|-------------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Jūpītēr |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Jōvis   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Jōvi    |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Jōvem   |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Jūpītēr |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Jōvē    |

**Respublica, f., a commonwealth, a republic** (properly two words, Rēs, 5 Decl., and publicā, 1 Decl.).

|             | Sing.       |
|-------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Respublicā  |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Rēipublicae |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Rēipublicae |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Rempublicam |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Respublicā  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Rēpublicā   |

**EXERCISE XVI.**

**A.—1.** Di sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods is immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (*pl.*).

**B.—1.** Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Civis jusjurandum judici dat.\* 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (*pl.*) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old-men are feeble and sick. 4. The old-man gives gold and silver to the young-man. 5. The

\* Jusjurandum dat, in English, *takes the oath.*

house of the old-man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many brave citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. The grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sweet to Jupiter.

## XII. - SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following words have in the Genitive Sing. *iūs* (gen. *iūs*) and in the Dative *i* :—

|                        |                       |                                      |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| solus, sola, soli      | one, alone.           | alter, altera, alterum, one of two ; |
| alter, altera, alterum | the other.            | alter . . . . alter, the one . . . . |
| alius, alius, aliud    | one of any number ;   | alius, alia, aliud, one of any       |
| alius, alius, aliud    | one . . . . another ; | alius . . . . aliud,                 |
| alius, alius, aliud    | one . . . . another ; | one . . . . another ; in pl. some,   |
| alius, alius, aliud    | others.               | others.                              |

|  |  |  |  |  | Plur.            |       |
|--|--|--|--|--|------------------|-------|
|  |  |  |  |  | F.               | N.    |
|  |  |  |  |  | in-as            | in-a  |
|  |  |  |  |  | in-um            | in-um |
|  |  |  |  |  | (of all genders) |       |
|  |  |  |  |  | in-is            | in-a  |
|  |  |  |  |  | (of all genders) |       |

For the plural of *alius* see p. 27.

For the plural of *alius* and of *alius* is *alii*.

## EXERCISES XII.

1. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem? Neutri. 4. Alii divitiarum sunt. 5. Alii sunt qui laudem dant. 6. Alii sunt qui laudem dant. 7. Toti vita est. 8. Alii sunt qui laudem dant. 9. Alii sunt qui laudem dant. 10. Neutra civitas laudem dant.

1. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem. 2. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem. 3. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem. 4. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem. 5. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem. 6. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem. 7. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem. 8. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem. 9. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem. 10. Cives Ciceroni uni dant laudem.

## XIII. - COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative: as,

| Positive.   | Comparative.    | Superlative.                                 |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Alti, high. | Altius, higher. | Altissimè, highest, most high, or very high. |

The Comparative is formed by adding *iōr* and the Superlative by adding *issimūs* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular : *as*,

| Nom.    | Posit. | Gen.       |            | Comp.       | Sup.            |
|---------|--------|------------|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| Altūs,  |        | Alt-i,     | high,      | Alt-iōr,    | Alt-issimūs.    |
| Lēvis,  |        | Lēv-is,    | light,     | Lēv-iōr,    | Lēv-issimūs.    |
| Felix,  |        | Felix-is,  | fortunate, | Felix-iōr,  | Felix-issimūs.  |
| Prūdēs, |        | Prūdēt-is, | prudent,   | Prūdēt-iōr, | Prūdēt-issimūs. |

The Comparative is declined on p. 19 (*mēl-iōr*).

The Superlative is declined like *bōnus*, *bōna*, *bōnum*.

### EXCEPTIONS.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rimus* : *as*,

| Nom.    | Posit. | Gen.      |            | Comp.       | Sup.          |
|---------|--------|-----------|------------|-------------|---------------|
| pulchr- |        | pulchr-i, | beautiful, | pulchr-iōr, | pulchr-rimūs. |
| libēr-  |        | libēr-i,  | free,      | libēr-iōr,  | libēr-rimūs.  |
| acr-    |        | acr-is,   | sharp,     | acr-iōr,    | acr-rimūs.    |
| cēlēr-  |        | cēlēr-is, | swift,     | cēlēr-iōr,  | cēlēr-rimūs.  |

Also *vētās* (*Gen. vētēr-is*), *old*, has a Superlative, *vētēr-rimūs*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *limus* : *as*,

| Posit.      |            | Comp.         | Sup.            |
|-------------|------------|---------------|-----------------|
| fācilis,    | easy,      | fācil-iōr,    | fācil-limūs.    |
| difficilis, | difficult, | difficil-iōr, | difficil-limūs. |
| sīmilis,    | like,      | sīmil-iōr,    | sīmil-limūs.    |
| dissīmilis, | unlike,    | dissīmil-iōr, | dissīmil-limūs. |
| grācilis,   | thin,      | grācil-iōr,   | grācil-limūs.   |
| hūmilis,    | low,       | hūmil-iōr,    | hūmil-limūs.    |

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

| Posit.                          |            | Comp.                         | Sup.                                          |
|---------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| bōnus,                          | good,      | mēlior,                       | optimūs.                                      |
| mālus,                          | bad,       | pējor,                        | pessimūs.                                     |
| magnus,                         | great,     | mājor,                        | maximūs.                                      |
| parvus,                         | small,     | mīnor,                        | mīnimūs.                                      |
| multus,                         | much,      | plūs ( <i>neuter</i> ),       | plūrimūs.                                     |
| nēquam ( <i>not declined</i> ), | worthless, | nēquior,                      | nēquissimūs.                                  |
| dīves,                          | rich,      | dītior,                       | dītissimūs.                                   |
| sēnex,                          | old,       | sēnior [ <i>nātū mājor</i> ], | [ <i>maximūs nātū</i> ].                      |
| jūvēnis,                        | young,     | jūnior [ <i>nātū mīnor</i> ], | [ <i>mīnimūs nātū</i> ].                      |
| sūpērūs,                        | upper,     | sūpērior,                     | sūpērūs, summtis.                             |
| infērūs,                        | lower,     | infērior,                     | infimūs, imus.                                |
| extērūs,                        | outside,   | extērior,                     | extrēmūs.                                     |
| intērūs,                        | inside,    | intērior,                     | intimūs.                                      |
| postērūs,                       | behind,    | postērior,                    | postrēmūs.                                    |
| —                               | —          | prior ( <i>former</i> ),      | primūs ( <i>first</i> ). [ <i>next</i> ].     |
| —                               | —          | prōpior ( <i>nearer</i> ),    | proximūs ( <i>nearest</i> ,                   |
| —                               | —          | ultērior ( <i>further</i> ),  | ultimūs ( <i>furthest</i> ,<br><i>last</i> ). |

Declension of *Fīla*.

|             | Singular.<br>Neut. only. | Masc. and Fem.   | Plural.<br>Neut. |
|-------------|--------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Fīla</i>              | <i>Fīlās</i>     | <i>Fīlā</i>      |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Fīlās</i>             | <i>Fīlārūm</i>   | (of all genders) |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Fīlā</i>              | <i>Fīlāribus</i> | (of all genders) |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Fīla</i>              | <i>Fīlās</i>     | <i>Fīlā</i>      |
| <i>Abi.</i> | <i>Fīlā</i>              | <i>Fīlāribus</i> | (of all genders) |

**RULE 9.**—The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin *quam* (indeclinable).

## EXERCISE XVIII.

**A.**—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiore sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhine is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

**B.**—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Veterrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos habent oculos. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperissimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In summer the sun is more powerful than in winter.

**C.**—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Romanae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men).

5. No state was ever more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honour to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many islands are larger than Sicily. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

#### XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

*Cardinal Numerals* denote number simply or absolutely: as, ūnūs, *one*; dūō, *two*; trēs, *three*. They are given on the next page.

The declension of ūnūs is given on p. 24.

*Obs.* *Unus* is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have a singular meaning: as, ūnā castrā, *one camp*; ūnæ aedēs, *one house*; ūnæ littærae, *one letter*.

Dūō, *two*, trēs, *three*, and milliā, *thousands*, are declined as follows:—

|             | M.               | F.      | N.      | M. and F.               | N.   | N.       |
|-------------|------------------|---------|---------|-------------------------|------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Dū-ō             | dū-æ    | dū-ō    | Trēs                    | triā | milliā   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Dū-ōrum          | dū-ārum | dū-ōrum | Triūm (of all genders)  |      | milliūm  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Dū-ōbūs          | dū-ābūs | dū-ōbūs | Tribūs (of all genders) |      | millibūs |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Dū-ōs or<br>dū-ō | dū-ās   | dū-ō    | Trēs or triā            | triā | milliā   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Dū-ōbūs          | dū-ābūs | dū-ōbūs | Tribūs (of all genders) |      | millibūs |

*Obs.* Ambō, *both*, is declined like duo.

Millē, *a thousand*, in the singular, is an indeclinable adjective; but milliā, *thousands*, in the plural, is a Substantive: as, millē hōmīnēs, *a thousand men*; but dūō milliā hōmīnum, *two thousand men*, literally, *two thousands of men*.

The Cardinal Numerals from quattuōr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable. They are given on the next page.

Dūcenti, *ae, ā, two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

*Ordinal Numerals* denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series: as, primūs, *first*; sēcundūs, or altēr, *second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives.

#### EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puero tres libros dat. 3. Sunt (*there are*) sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim milliā Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum

| ARABIC<br>FIGURES. | ROMAN<br>SYMBOLS.    | ARABIC<br>WORDS.                   | NUMERALS.                                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1                  | I                    | unus                               | primus.                                        |
| 2                  | II                   | duo                                | secundus or alter.                             |
| 3                  | III                  | tres                               | tertius.                                       |
| 4                  | IV                   | quatuor or quattuor                | quartus.                                       |
| 5                  | V                    | quinque                            | quintus.                                       |
| 6                  | VI                   | sex                                | sextus.                                        |
| 7                  | VII                  | septem                             | septimus.                                      |
| 8                  | VIII                 | octo                               | octavus.                                       |
| 9                  | IX                   | novem                              | nonus.                                         |
| 10                 | X                    | decem                              | decimus.                                       |
| 11                 | XI                   | undecim                            | undecimus.                                     |
| 12                 | XII                  | duodecim                           | duodecimus.                                    |
| 13                 | XIII                 | tredecim                           | tertius-decimus.                               |
| 14                 | XIV                  | quatuordecim                       | quartus-decimus.                               |
| 15                 | XV                   | quindecim                          | quintus-decimus.                               |
| 16                 | XVI                  | sedecim                            | sextus-decimus.                                |
| 17                 | XVII                 | septendecim                        | septimus-decimus.                              |
| 18                 | XVIII                | indéviginti                        | indéviceſimus.                                 |
| 19                 | XIX                  | undéviginti                        | undéviceſimus.                                 |
| 20                 | XX                   | viginti                            | viceſimus.                                     |
| 21                 | XXI                  | unus et viginti or<br>viginti unus | primus et viceſimus, or<br>viceſimus primus.   |
| 22                 | XXII                 | duo et viginti or<br>viginti duo   | alter et viceſimus, or<br>viceſimus alter.     |
| 23                 | XXIII                | tres et viginti or<br>viginti tres | tertius et viceſimus, or<br>viceſimus tertius. |
| 24                 | XXIV                 | duodeſciginti                      | duodeſcigintiſimus.                            |
| 25                 | XXV                  | undéſciginti                       | undéſcigintiſimus.                             |
| 30                 | XXX                  | triginti                           | trigeſimus.                                    |
| 40                 | XL                   | quadraginti                        | quadrageſimus.                                 |
| 50                 | L                    | quingſciginti                      | quingſcigintiſimus.                            |
| 60                 | LX                   | ſexaginti                          | ſexageſimus.                                   |
| 70                 | LXX                  | ſeptuaginti                        | ſeptuageſimus.                                 |
| 80                 | LXXX                 | octoginti                          | octogeſimus.                                   |
| 90                 | LXXX                 | nonaginti                          | nonageſimus.                                   |
| 100                | C                    | centum                             | centeſimus.                                    |
| 200                | CC                   | ducenti, ae, a                     | ducenteſimus.                                  |
| 300                | CCC                  | trecenti, ae, a                    | trecenteſimus.                                 |
| 400                | CCCC                 | quadringenti, ae, a                | quadringenteſimus.                             |
| 500                | D or C <sup>o</sup>  | quingenti, ae, a                   | quingenteſimus.                                |
| 600                | DC                   | ſexcenti, ae, a                    | ſexcenteſimus.                                 |
| 700                | DCC                  | ſeptingenti, ae, a                 | ſeptingenteſimus.                              |
| 800                | DCCC                 | octingenti, ae, a                  | octingenteſimus.                               |
| 900                | DCCCC                | nongenti, ae, a                    | nongenteſimus.                                 |
| 1,000              | M or C <sup>o</sup>  | mille                              | milleſimus.                                    |
| 2,000              | MM                   | duo milia                          | bis milleſimus.                                |
| 100,000            | CCC <sup>o</sup> 000 | centum milia                       | centie milleſimus.                             |

navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani; primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus octavus est anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat trigesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. In a Roman legion (there) were ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (there) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.\*

\* The number of soldiers in a legion varied considerably at different periods.

## XV.—THE VERB SUM, I am.

*Sum, fui, futurus, esse,—to be.*

### VERB FINITE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                          |                 |                            |                  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Sum,</b> | <i>I am</i>     | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Sumus,</b> | <i>We are</i>    |
| <b>Es,</b>               | <i>thou art</i> | <b>Estis,</b>              | <i>ye are</i>    |
| <b>Est,</b>              | <i>he is.</i>   | <b>Sunt,</b>               | <i>they are.</i> |

##### 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

|                          |                     |                             |                      |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Ero,</b> | <i>I shall be</i>   | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Erimus,</b> | <i>We shall be</i>   |
| <b>Eris,</b>             | <i>thou wilt be</i> | <b>Eritis,</b>              | <i>ye will be</i>    |
| <b>Erit,</b>             | <i>he will be.</i>  | <b>Erant,</b>               | <i>they will be.</i> |

##### 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                           |                  |                             |                   |
|---------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Ēram,</b> | <i>I was</i>     | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Ēramus,</b> | <i>We were</i>    |
| <b>Ēras,</b>              | <i>thou wast</i> | <b>Ēratis,</b>              | <i>ye were</i>    |
| <b>Ērit,</b>              | <i>he was.</i>   | <b>Ērant,</b>               | <i>they were.</i> |

##### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                          |                           |                             |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Fui,</b> | <i>I have been, or</i>    | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuimus,</b> | <i>We have been, or</i>   |
|                          | <i>I was</i>              |                             | <i>we were</i>            |
| <b>Fuisti,</b>           | <i>thou hast been, or</i> | <b>Fuistis,</b>             | <i>ye have been, or</i>   |
|                          | <i>thou wast</i>          |                             | <i>ye were</i>            |
| <b>Fuit,</b>             | <i>he has been, or</i>    | <b>Fuerunt</b>              | <i>they have been, or</i> |
|                          | <i>he was.</i>            | <i>or fuerē</i>             | <i>they were.</i>         |

##### 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                            |                            |                               |                             |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuero,</b> | <i>I shall have been</i>   | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuerimus,</b> | <i>We shall have been</i>   |
| <b>Fueris,</b>             | <i>thou wilt have been</i> | <b>Fueritis,</b>              | <i>ye will have been</i>    |
| <b>Fuerit,</b>             | <i>he will have been.</i>  | <b>Fuerint,</b>               | <i>they will have been.</i> |

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                                                |                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuāram</b> , <i>I had been</i> | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuārimūs</b> , <i>We had been</i> |
| <b>Fuārā</b> , <i>thou hadst been</i>          | <b>Fuārātis</b> , <i>ye had been</i>              |
| <b>Fuārit</b> , <i>he had been.</i>            | <b>Fuārant</b> , <i>they had been.</i>            |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                                          |                                          |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Es</b> , <i>Be thou.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Estē</b> , <i>Be ye.</i> |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|

## 2. FUTURE TENSE.

|                                                      |                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Estō</b> , <i>Thou shalt or must</i> | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Estōtē</b> , <i>Ye shall or must</i> |
| <b>Estō</b> , <i>be</i>                              | <b>Suntō</b> , <i>be</i>                             |
| <b>Estō</b> , <i>he shall or must be.</i>            | <b>Suntō</b> , <i>they shall or must be.</i>         |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                                           |                                              |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Sim</b> , <i>I may be</i> | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Simūs</b> , <i>We may be</i> |
| <b>Sis</b> , <i>thou mayst be</i>         | <b>Sitis</b> , <i>ye may be</i>              |
| <b>Sit</b> , <i>he may be.</i>            | <b>Sint</b> , <i>they may be.</i>            |

*Obs.* The first and third Persons singular and plural of the Present Subjunctive are often used as Imperatives: as, *sint cives justī*, *let the citizens be just.*

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                                                               |                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Essem</b> or <b>fōrem</b> , <i>I might be</i> | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Essemūs</b> or <b>fōremūs</b> , <i>We might be</i> |
| <b>Esēs</b> or <b>fōrēs</b> , <i>thou mightst be</i>          | <b>Esētis</b> or <b>fōrētis</b> , <i>ye might be</i>               |
| <b>Esset</b> or <b>fōrēt</b> , <i>he might be.</i>            | <b>Esset</b> or <b>fōrent</b> , <i>they might be.</i>              |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                                                     |                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuārim</b> , <i>I may have been</i> | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuārimūs</b> , <i>We may have been</i> |
| <b>Fuāris</b> , <i>thou mayst have been</i>         | <b>Fuāritis</b> , <i>ye may have been</i>              |
| <b>Fuārit</b> , <i>he may have been.</i>            | <b>Fuārint</b> , <i>they may have been.</i>            |

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                                               |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuissēm</b> , <i>I should</i> | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuissēmūs</b> , <i>We should</i> |
| <b>Fuissēs</b> , <i>thou wouldst</i>          | <b>Fuissētis</b> , <i>ye would</i>               |
| <b>Fuisset</b> , <i>he would</i>              | <b>Fuissent</b> , <i>they would</i>              |

## VERB INFINITE.

|                                     |                                        |                           |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| INFINITIVE PRESENT, and IMPERFECT,  | <b>Essē</b> ,                          | <i>to be.</i>             |
| INFINITIVE PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT, | <b>Fuisse</b> ,                        | <i>to have been.</i>      |
| INFINITIVE FUTURE,                  | <b>Fūtūrūs essē</b> , or <b>fōrē</b> , | <i>to be about to be.</i> |
| PARTICIPLE FUTURE,                  | <b>Fūtūrūs</b> , -a, -um,              | <i>about to be.</i>       |

**NOTE.**—A vowel before another vowel is usually short, and will therefore in future not be marked.

*Obs.* **Fūtūrūs** may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: as, *fūtūrūs sum*, *I am about to be*; *fūtūrūs eram*, *I was about to be*, &c.

*The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.*

## EXERCISE XX.

**A.**—1. Sum laetus. 2. Es tristis. 3. Non diligens fuisti, Tite. 4. Probi filii gaudium patris erunt. 5. Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia. 6. Dux vester ero: victores erimus. 7. Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis. 8. Multi erunt pauperes, qui (*who*) divites fuerant. 9. Cives urbis liberae sumus. 10. Custodes miserae puellae fuistis.

1. We are joyful. 2. Ye are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen. 4. The contented (*pl.*) are always joyful; the rich (*pl.*) are often sad. 5. If ye are good, ye are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. Ye will be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

*Imperative Mood.*

**B.**—1. Judex custos severus juris esto. 2. Probi esto, pueri, et felices eritis. 3. Discipuli suntō attenti. 4. Judices justī suntō. 5. Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto. 6. Amici fideles suntō. 7. Reges patres patriae suntō. 8. Attenti este, discipuli. 9. Contenti estote sorte vestra. 10. Praeceptorum memores este.

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Praise shall be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends! 4. The judge must be just. 5. They are contented; they shall be rich. 6. There must be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be upright; thou wilt be successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be (*sint*) free, let them be happy! 10. The city shall be the booty of the soldiers.

## XVI.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

|                  |                                                |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Absum,</b>    | <i>I am absent.</i>                            |
| <b>Adsum,</b>    | <i>I am present, stand by, side with.</i>      |
| <b>Dēsum,</b>    | <i>I am wanting.</i>                           |
| <b>Insum,</b>    | <i>I am in.</i>                                |
| <b>Intersum,</b> | <i>I am among.</i>                             |
| <b>Obsum,</b>    | <i>I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.</i> |

|                  |                                        |
|------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>Praesum,</b>  | <i>I am before, am at the head of.</i> |
| <b>Prōsum,</b>   | <i>I am serviceable, do good to.</i>   |
| <b>Subsum,</b>   | <i>I am under, or amongst.</i>         |
| <b>Sūpersum,</b> | <i>I remain over, survive.</i>         |

All these compounds of Sum are followed by the Dative Case. They are conjugated like Sum, but Prōsuma takes *d* before *e*: as,

## INDICATIVE.

|              | <i>Present.</i> |            | <i>Future.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> |
|--------------|-----------------|------------|----------------|-------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | Prō-sum         | Prō-sūmīs  | Prōd-ēro       | Prōd-ēram         |
|              | Prōd-ēs         | Prōd-estis | &c.            | &c.               |
|              | Prōd-est.       | Prōd-sunt. |                |                   |

INFINITIVE—*Present.*—Prōd-esse.

## EXERCISE XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praefuerunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variæ cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deerat animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. He was not serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides-with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was amongst his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

## XVII.—THE PRONOUNS.

## 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## 1. Pronoun of the First Person.

|                   | Sing.                        | Plur.                                      |
|-------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Nom. <b>Ēgō,</b>  | <i>I</i>                     | <b>Nōs,</b> <i>we</i>                      |
| Gen. <b>Mēi,</b>  | <i>of me</i>                 | <b>Nostrī or nostrum,</b> <i>of us</i>     |
| Dat. <b>Mihī,</b> | <i>to or for me</i>          | <b>Nōbīs,</b> <i>to or for us</i>          |
| Acc. <b>Mē,</b>   | <i>me</i>                    | <b>Nōs,</b> <i>us</i>                      |
| Abl. <b>Mē,</b>   | <i>by, with, or from me.</i> | <b>Nōbīs,</b> <i>by, with, or from us.</i> |

## 2. Pronoun of the Second Person.

|                   | Sing.                          | Plur.                                       |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Nom. <b>Tū,</b>   | <i>thou</i>                    | <b>Vōs,</b> <i>ye</i>                       |
| Gen. <b>Tui,</b>  | <i>of thee</i>                 | <b>Vestri or vestrum,</b> <i>of you</i>     |
| Dat. <b>Tibi,</b> | <i>to or for thee</i>          | <b>Vōbīs,</b> <i>to or for you</i>          |
| Acc. <b>Tē,</b>   | <i>thee</i>                    | <b>Vōs,</b> <i>you</i>                      |
| Voc. <b>Tū,</b>   | <i>O thou</i>                  | <b>Vōs,</b> <i>O ye</i>                     |
| Abl. <b>Tē,</b>   | <i>by, with, or from thee.</i> | <b>Vōbīs,</b> <i>by, with, or from you.</i> |

## 3. Pronoun of the Third Person.

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it, is,   , id* is usually employed. (See p. 35.)

## II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.

The Reflective Pronoun refers to the Subject of the sentence, and cannot therefore have a Nominative case.

Sing. and Plur.

|                 |                                                            |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Gen. Sui,       | <i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>         |
| Dat. Sibi,      | <i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>  |
| Acc. Sē or sēs, | <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>            |
| Abl. Sē or sēs, | <i>by or from himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i> |

There are no distinct reflective forms in the 1st and 2nd persons; the different cases of *ego* and *tu* being used reflectively: as, *mēi, of myself; tibi, to thyself*, etc.

## III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined as adjectives:

| M.      | F.      | N.       |                              |
|---------|---------|----------|------------------------------|
| Mūs,    | mēa,    | mēm,     | <i>my or mine.</i>           |
| Tūs,    | tūa,    | tūm,     | <i>thy or thine.</i>         |
| Noster, | nostra, | nostrum, | <i>our, ours.</i>            |
| Vester, | vestra, | vostrum, | <i>your, yours.</i>          |
| Sūs,    | sūa,    | sūm,     | <i>his, her, its, their.</i> |

## EXERCISE XXII.

1. Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis. 2. Pater mihi librum dat utilem. 3. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis. 4. Patria mihi carior est quam vita. 5. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt. 6. Parentes vobis cari sunt. 7. Memores sumus tui. 8. Amicus memor est vestri. 9. Memoria vestri nobis grata est. 10. Mihi mea vita, tibi tua (vita) cara est.

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me. 2. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, citizens! 3. In thee is all our hope and safety. 4. Thy native-land must be ever most dear to thee. 5. Thine indolence is-in-the-way, Titus! 6. A true friend will be with thee in the time of danger. 7. The memory of our works survives us. 8. In neither battle was the general amongst his soldiers. 9. He was serviceable to his friends; he was hurtful to his enemies. 10. To us the victory is joyful, to you it is most-sad.

## IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this (near me)*; pl. *these*.

|      | M.   | Sing.<br>F. | N.  |  | M.    | Plur.<br>F. | N.    |
|------|------|-------------|-----|--|-------|-------------|-------|
| Nom. | Hic  | haec        | hoc |  | Hi    | hae         | haec  |
| Gen. | Hic  |             |     |  | Horum | harum       | horum |
| Dat. | Hic  |             |     |  | His   |             |       |
| Acc. | Hunc | hanc        | hoc |  | Hos   | has         | haec  |
| Abl. | Hoc  | hac         | hoc |  | His   |             |       |

2. Istē, istā, istud, *that (near you), that of yours*; pl. *those*.

|      | M.     | Sing.<br>F. | N.    |  | M.      | Plur.<br>F. | N.      |
|------|--------|-------------|-------|--|---------|-------------|---------|
| Nom. | Istē   | istā        | istud |  | Isti    | istae       | istā    |
| Gen. | Istius |             |       |  | Istorum | istarum     | istorum |
| Dat. | Isti   |             |       |  | Istis   |             |         |
| Acc. | Istum  | istam       | istud |  | Istos   | istas       | istā    |
| Abl. | Istō   | istā        | istō  |  | Istis   |             |         |

3. Illē, illā, illud, *that, that yonder*; pl. *those*.

|      | M.     | Sing.<br>F. | N.    |  | M.      | Plur.<br>F. | N.      |
|------|--------|-------------|-------|--|---------|-------------|---------|
| Nom. | Illē   | illā        | illud |  | Illi    | illae       | illā    |
| Gen. | Illius |             |       |  | Illorum | illarum     | illorum |
| Dat. | Illi   |             |       |  | Illis   |             |         |
| Acc. | Illum  | illam       | illud |  | Illos   | illas       | illā    |
| Abl. | Illō   | illā        | illō  |  | Illis   |             |         |

## EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. 2. Hi montes altissimi sunt. 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt. 4. Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. 6. Demosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; ille erat Graecus, hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste amicus vir est optimus. 8. Ista auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poetae clarissimum est.

1. These mountains are very high and very rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you (*sing.*), Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this mortal body. 4. That one man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (*illa*) is immortal. 9. Those hands (of yours) are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

# V. DETERMINATE, RELATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *Īs, eā, id, he, she, it, that*, referring to the former part of a sentence.

|      | M.   | Sing.<br>F. | N. |  | M.        | Plur.<br>F. | N.    |
|------|------|-------------|----|--|-----------|-------------|-------|
| Nom. | Īs   | eā          | id |  | Ī         | eae         | eā    |
| Gen. | Ējus |             |    |  | Ēorum     | eārum       | eōrum |
| Dat. | Ēi   |             |    |  | Īs or eīs |             |       |
| Acc. | Ēum  | eam         | id |  | Ēōs       | eās         | eā    |
| Abl. | Ēō   | eā          | eō |  | Īs or eīs |             |       |

2. *Īdem, eādem, idem, the same.*

|      |         |        |       |               |          |          |
|------|---------|--------|-------|---------------|----------|----------|
| Nom. | Īdem    | eādem  | idem  | Īdem          | eādem    | eādem    |
| Gen. | Ējusdem |        |       | Ēōrundem      | eārundem | eōrundem |
| Dat. | Īdem    |        |       | Īdem or eīdem |          |          |
| Acc. | Ēndem   | eandem | idem  | Ēōdem         | eādem    | eādem    |
| Abl. | Ēōdem   | eādem  | eōdem | Īdem or eīdem |          |          |

3. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself.*

|      |        |       |       |         |         |         |
|------|--------|-------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| Nom. | Ipsē   | ipsā  | ipsum | Ipsī    | ipseae  | ipsā    |
| Gen. | Ipsius |       |       | Ipsōrum | ipsārum | ipsōrum |
| Dat. | Ipsī   |       |       | Ipsīs   |         |         |
| Acc. | Ipsum  | ipsam | ipsum | Ipsōs   | ipsās   | ipsā    |
| Abl. | Ipsō   | ipsā  | ipsō  | Ipsīs   |         |         |

4. Relative—*Qui, quae, quōd, who or which.*

|      |       |      |      |                |        |        |
|------|-------|------|------|----------------|--------|--------|
| Nom. | Qui   | quae | quōd | Qui            | quae   | quae   |
| Gen. | Cūjus |      |      | Quōrum         | quārum | quōrum |
| Dat. | Cui   |      |      | Quībus or quīs |        |        |
| Acc. | Quem  | quam | quōd | Quōs           | quās   | quae   |
| Abl. | Quō   | quā  | quō  | Quībus or quīs |        |        |

5. Interrogative—*Quīs or qui, quae, quīd or quōd, who? which? what?*

|      |             |      |              |                |        |        |
|------|-------------|------|--------------|----------------|--------|--------|
| Nom. | Quīs or qui | quae | quīd or quōd | Qui            | quae   | quae   |
| Gen. | Cūjus       |      |              | Quōrum         | quārum | quōrum |
| Dat. | Cui         |      |              | Quībus or quīs |        |        |
| Acc. | Quem        | quam | quīd or quōd | Quōs           | quās   | quae   |
| Abl. | Quō         | quā  | quō          | Quībus or quīs |        |        |

The forms *quīs* and *quīd* are used by themselves, without a Noun: as, *Quīs ēs? who art thou? Quīd est? what is it?* The forms *qui* and *quōd* are used interrogatively with a Noun: as, *Qui hōmo ēs? what man art thou? Quōd mārē, what sea?*

**RULE 10.**—The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case :  
as, *Felix est rex quem omnes cives laudant, Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

*Lēgit, (he, she, it) reads.*

*Lēgunt, (they) read.*

#### EXERCISE XXIV.

**A.**—1. Amicum fidum habet; ei addictus est. 2. Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ille ejus libros legit. 3. Qui amico in periculis adest, is verus amicus est.\* 4. Ii sunt cives boni, qui reipublicae prosunt. 5. Ipse labor nobis jucundus est. 6. Fons omnium voluptatum in nobis ipsis est. 7. Melior pars tui ipsius immortalis est. 8. Non minor pugna erat cum mulieribus Cimbrorum quam cum Cimbris ipsis. 9. Idem dies erit initium vitae aeternae. 10. Non omnibus hominibus eadem prosunt.

\* In translating this sentence, begin with *is verus amicus est*.

1. He has a faithful friend; he will never injure him. 2. My brother himself is a most elegant writer. 3. (He) who gives honours to the bad is hurtful to the state.\* 4. The wives of the Cimbrians were themselves brave. 5. The same (things) injure some, do good to others. 6. (He) who is hurtful to the commonwealth is hurtful to himself.\* 7. The same (things) are not pleasing to all (men). 8. Demosthenes himself was not always pleasing to his (fellow) citizens. 9. Cicero is a faithful friend; I am devoted to him. 10. Cicero is a most elegant writer; they read his books.

\* In sentences 3 and 6 begin with *qui*, and afterwards use *is*: see Latin sentences No. 2.

**B.**—1. Quis habet exercitum? Quis est dux? 2. Cujus est equus? Cujus sunt arma? 3. Quae civitas habet optimas leges? 4. Quod animal est maximum et validissimum? 5. Quorum animalium sunt vires maximae? 6. Qui color pulcherrimus est? 7. Qui orator optimus et dulcissimus est? 8. Quorum arma sunt optima? 9. Cui dat (*does he give*) coronam? 10. Quod tempus felicius est quam praesens?

1. Which constellation is the most beautiful? 2. Which poet is the sweetest? 3. Who is he? what has he? 4. Who gives the book to thee? 5. To whom does he give the greatest praise? 6. Whose (*gen. sing.*) is the victory? Whose (*gen. pl.*) is the booty? 7. Which tax is the greatest? 8. Which king has the greatest taxes? 9. What animal is more sagacious (prudent) than the elephant? 10. What animal is more rapacious than the lion?

The Pupil is to pass over the next 36 pages, and proceed with the Verb on p. 37.

# PART I.

## GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

### I.—THE ALPHABET. PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. *Alphabet*.—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,  
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,

Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

The Diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use, and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

The diphthongs *ae, oe*, are pronounced as *ē*.

A Long Syllable has the mark (ˉ) over the vowel. A Short Syllable has the mark (˘) over the vowel.

2. *Parts of Speech*.—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language.

- |                          |                  |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, or Noun. | 5. Adverb.       |
| 2. Adjective.            | 6. Preposition.  |
| 3. Pronoun.              | 7. Conjunction.  |
| 4. Verb.                 | 8. Interjection. |

There is no article in the Latin language? hence the Latin *mensā* means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.

## II.—PRONUNCIATION.

The letters in Latin were probably pronounced as follows:—

## VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

|       |           |   |         |                                                                                                        |
|-------|-----------|---|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Latin | <i>ā</i>  | = | English | <i>a</i> in father.                                                                                    |
| „     | <i>ǣ</i>  | = | „       | <i>first a</i> in away, or <i>a</i> in villa.                                                          |
| „     | <i>ē</i>  | = | „       | <i>ai</i> in pain.                                                                                     |
| „     | <i>æ</i>  | = | „       | <i>ai</i> in pain.                                                                                     |
| „     | <i>œ</i>  | = | „       | <i>ai</i> in pain.                                                                                     |
| „     | <i>ē</i>  | = | „       | <i>e</i> in men.                                                                                       |
| „     | <i>ī</i>  | = | „       | <i>i</i> in machine.                                                                                   |
| „     | <i>ī</i>  | = | „       | <i>i</i> in pity.                                                                                      |
| „     | <i>ō</i>  | = | „       | <i>o</i> in glory.                                                                                     |
| „     | <i>ō</i>  | = | „       | <i>o</i> in top.                                                                                       |
| „     | <i>ū</i>  | = | „       | <i>u</i> in rule.                                                                                      |
| „     | <i>ū</i>  | = | „       | <i>u</i> in full.                                                                                      |
| „     | <i>au</i> | = | „       | <i>ow</i> in power.                                                                                    |
| „     | <i>eu</i> | = | „       | { Latin <i>ē</i> followed quickly by<br>Latin <i>ū</i> (differs little from<br>present pronunciation). |
| „     | <i>ei</i> | = | „       |                                                                                                        |
|       |           |   |         | { Latin <i>ē</i> followed quickly by<br>Latin <i>i</i> (differs little from <i>ai</i><br>in plain).    |

## CONSONANTS.

|       |                  |   |         |                                                   |
|-------|------------------|---|---------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Latin | <i>c, ch</i>     | = | English | <i>k</i> .                                        |
| „     | <i>g</i>         | = | „       | <i>g</i> in get.                                  |
| „     | <i>s</i>         | = | „       | <i>s</i> in sin.                                  |
| „     | <i>t (ratio)</i> | = | {       | <i>t</i> in cat, not <i>sh</i> , as<br>in nation. |
| „     | <i>j</i>         | = | „       | <i>y</i> in yard.                                 |
| „     | <i>v</i>         | = | „       | <i>v</i> .                                        |
| „     | <i>z, ph, th</i> | = | „       | <i>z, ph, th</i> .                                |

Latin *s* between two vowels = (sometimes) English *s* in rose, e.g. 'rosa.'

## III.—SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

Nouns are declined by *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers: *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases: *Nominative*, *Vocative*, *Accusative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Ablative*.

There are three Genders: *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*.

There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

|            | I.    | II.   | III.            | IV.   | V.    |
|------------|-------|-------|-----------------|-------|-------|
| Gen. Sing. | ae    | i     | is              | is    | ei    |
| Gen. Plur. | Ā-rum | Ō-rum | { -um<br>I-um } | Ū-rum | Ē-rum |

The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away.

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the *Stem* is in—

| I. | II. | III.           | IV. | V. |
|----|-----|----------------|-----|----|
| A  | O   | consonant or I | U   | E  |

## IV.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the First Declension ends in *ā*.

|      | Sing.                              | Plur.                              |
|------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Nom. | Mens-ā (fem.) a table              | Mens-ae, tables                    |
| Voc. | Mens-ā, O table                    | Mens-ae, O tables                  |
| Acc. | Mens-am, a table                   | Mens-as, tables                    |
| Gen. | Mens-ae, of a table                | Mens-Ārum, of tables               |
| Dat. | Mens-ae, to or for a table         | Mens-Is, to or for tables          |
| Abl. | Mens-ā, by, with, or from a table. | Mens-Is, by, with, or from tables. |

NOTE.—*Filiā*, a daughter; *dēā*, a goddess; *ēquā*, a mare; *āsīnā*, a she-ass; and a few others, make the Dative and Ablative Plural in *ābūs*: *filiābūs*, *dēābūs*, *ēquābūs*, *āsīnābūs*, etc.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, *nautā*, a sailor.

**RULE 1.**—The Nominative Case denotes the SUBJECT. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person: as, *puellā currit, the girl runs; puellae currunt, the girls run.*

**RULE 2.**—The Accusative Case denotes the OBJECT. Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case: as, *āquilā alās hābēt, the eagle has wings.* NOTE.—In Latin the verb is put last and the Accusative case before it.

Singular, 3 pers.

*Currit, (he, she, it) runs.*

*Hābēt, (he, she, it) has.*

Plural, 3 pers.

*Currunt, (they) run.*

*Hābent, (they) have.*

### EXERCISE I.

1. *Filia currit.* 2. *Filiae currunt.* 3. *Regina coronam habet.*  
4. *Puella coronam habet.* 5. *Filia pecuniam habet.* 6. *Femina pecuniam habet.* 7. *Roma portas habet.* 8. *Coloniae portas habent.*  
9. *Puellae rosas habent.* 10. *Feminae rosas habent.* 11. *Columbae alas habent.* 12. *Insulae oras habent.*

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

**RULE 3.**—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb “To be,” they are put in the same case: as, *Britanniā est insulā, Britain is an island.* Use the Nominative case after the verb “To be.”

**RULE 4.**—The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive case when the one is dependent upon the other: as, *Britanniā est insulā Eurōpae, Britain is an island of Europe.*

*Est, (he) is.*

*Sunt, (they) are.*

### EXERCISE II.

1. *Sicilia est insula.* 2. *Sicilia est insula Europae.* 3. *Roma est regina Italiae.* 4. *Incolae Italiae sunt poetae.* 5. *Incolae insularum sunt nautae.* 6. *Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae.* 7. *Insula est patria nautarum.* 8. *Graecia est patria poetarum.* 9. *Amicitia est gloria vitae.* 10. *Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.*

1. Britain is the queen of islands. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. Britain is the native-land of glory. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

## V.—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension ends in ūs and ěr, and of Neuter Nouns in um.

## Ā. Masculine.

| Sing.                                   | 1.          | Plur.                    |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| Nom. Dōmīn-ūs, a lord                   | Dōmīn-I,    | lords                    |
| Voc. Dōmīn-ē, O lord                    | Dōmīn-I,    | O lords                  |
| Acc. Dōmīn-um, a lord                   | Dōmīn-ōs,   | lords                    |
| Gen. Dōmīn-I, of a lord                 | Dōmīn-ōrum, | of lords                 |
| Dat. Dōmīn-ē, to or for a lord          | Dōmīn-Is,   | to or for lords          |
| Abl. Dōmīn-ē, by, with, or from a lord. | Dōmīn-Is,   | by, with, or from lords. |

## 2.

|             |                    |                                        |
|-------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <b>Māgistr̃,</b>   | <i>a master</i>                        |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <b>Māgistr̃,</b>   | <i>O master</i>                        |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <b>Māgistr-um,</b> | <i>a master</i>                        |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <b>Māgistr-I,</b>  | <i>of a master</i>                     |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <b>Māgistr-ē,</b>  | <i>to or for a master</i>              |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <b>Māgistr-ē,</b>  | <i>by, with, or from<br/>a master.</i> |

|                      |                                       |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Māgistr-I,</b>    | <i>masters</i>                        |
| <b>Māgistr-I,</b>    | <i>O masters</i>                      |
| <b>Māgistr-ōs,</b>   | <i>masters</i>                        |
| <b>Māgistr-ōrum,</b> | <i>of masters</i>                     |
| <b>Māgistr-Is,</b>   | <i>to or for masters</i>              |
| <b>Māgistr-Is,</b>   | <i>by, with, or from<br/>masters.</i> |

### 3.

|             |                 |                                     |
|-------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <b>Puēr,</b>    | <i>a boy</i>                        |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <b>Puēr,</b>    | <i>O boy</i>                        |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <b>Puēr-um,</b> | <i>a boy</i>                        |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <b>Puēr-ī,</b>  | <i>of a boy</i>                     |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <b>Puēr-ō,</b>  | <i>to or for a boy</i>              |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <b>Puēr-ō,</b>  | <i>by, with, or from<br/>a boy.</i> |

|                   |                                |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>Puēr-ī,</b>    | <i>boys</i>                    |
| <b>Puēr-ī,</b>    | <i>O boys</i>                  |
| <b>Puēr-ōs,</b>   | <i>boys</i>                    |
| <b>Puēr-ōrum,</b> | <i>of boys</i>                 |
| <b>Puēr-īs,</b>   | <i>to or for boys</i>          |
| <b>Puēr-īs,</b>   | <i>by, with, or from boys.</i> |

NOTE.—Proper Names in ūs make ī in the Vocative, as, Mer-cūrīūs, *Mercury*, Voc. Mer-cūrī. Also the Vocative Singular of filiūs, a son, is fili, and of gēnīūs, a guardian deity, is gēnī.

There is one Noun of the Second Declension ending in ěr, namely, vĭr, a man (as distinguished from a woman). It is declined like puēr:

| Sing.                                | 4.        | Plur.                  |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|------------------------|
| Nom. Vĭr, a man                      | Vĭr-I,    | men                    |
| Voc. Vĭr, O man                      | Vĭr-I,    | O men                  |
| Acc. Vĭr-um, a man                   | Vĭr-ōs,   | men                    |
| Gen. Vĭr-I, of a man                 | Vĭr-ōrum, | of men                 |
| Dat. Vĭr-ē, to or for a man          | Vĭr-Is,   | to or for men          |
| Abl. Vĭr-ē, by, with, or from a man. | Vĭr-Is,   | by, with, or from men. |

## B. Neuter.

|        | Sing.                                |            | Plur.                       |
|--------|--------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| N.V.A. | Regn-um, a kingdom, or O kingdom     | Regn-ā,    | kingdoms, or O kingdoms     |
| Gen.   | Regn-I, of a kingdom                 | Regn-ōrum, | of kingdoms                 |
| Dat.   | Regn-ō, to or for a kingdom          | Regn-is,   | to or for kingdoms          |
| Abl.   | Regn-ō, by, with, or from a kingdom. | Regn-is,   | by, with, or from kingdoms. |

NOTE.—The Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative of all Neuter Nouns are the same.

Three Nouns of the Second Declension ending in *ūs* are Neuter : *virtūs*, *poison* ; *vulgūs*, *the multitude* ; *pēlāgūs*, *the (open) sea*. They are used only in the Singular. (N.B. *Vulgus* is sometimes Masculine.)

- GENDER.—Most Nouns in *ūs* are Masculine, but names of trees are Feminine ; as, *mālūs*, *an apple-tree*.

Et, and.

## EXERCISE III.

Masculine Nouns in *ūs*.

1. Filius currit. 2. Servi currunt. 3. Dominus servos habet. 4. Filius domini servos habet. 5. Dominus servos et equos habet. 6. Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent. 7. Avus servos et equos habet. 8. Filius amici hortum habet. 9. Filii inimicorum gladios habent. 10. Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae. 11. Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Galliae. 12. Hortus rosas habet.

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhone and the Rhine are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person who gains or receives anything : as, *Māgister cōlumbam pūērō dāt*, *the master gives a dove to the boy*.

*Dāt*, (he, she, it) gives.

*Dant*, (they) give.

## EXERCISE IV.

Masculine Nouns in *ēr*.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Magister librum puero dat. 3. Filius libros habet. 4. Dominus servos et ministros habet. 5. Dominus agrum ministro dat. 6. Socr agros et ministros habet. 7. Socr agrum genero dat. 8. Magistri libros pueris dant. 9. Gener servum puero dat. 10. Puer librum ministro dat.

1. The boys have books. 2. The lord gives a field to the boys.

3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends have books. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law.

## EXERCISE V.

## Neuter Nouns.

1. Amici sunt donum coeli. 2. Amicitia est donum Dei. 3. Dona avi sunt praeemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa morborum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Tempa sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. Friends are the gift of God. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

## VI.—ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Adjectives in ūs, ā, um, or ĕr, (ē)rā, (ē)rum, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension: as, bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum, *good*; nīgēr, nigrā, nigrum, *black*; tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērum, *tender*.

| Sing.       |        |        | 1.       | Plur.    |          |  |
|-------------|--------|--------|----------|----------|----------|--|
| M.          | F.     | N.     | M.       | F.       | N.       |  |
| Nom. Bōn-ūs | bōn-ā  | bōn-um | Bōn-ī    | bōn-ae   | bōn-ā    |  |
| Voc. Bōn-ē  | bōn-ā  | bōn-um | Bōn-ī    | bōn-ae   | bōn-ā    |  |
| Acc. Bōn-um | bōn-am | bōn-um | Bōn-ōs   | bōn-ās   | bōn-ā    |  |
| Gen. Bōn-ī  | bōn-ae | bōn-ī  | Bōn-ōrum | bōn-ārum | bōn-ōrum |  |
| Dat. Bōn-ō  | bōn-ae | bōn-ō  | Bōn-īs   | bōn-īs   | bōn-īs   |  |
| Abl. Bōn-ō  | bōn-ā  | bōn-ō  | Bōn-īs   | bōn-īs   | bōn-īs   |  |

| Sing.        |         |         | 2.        | Plur.     |           |  |
|--------------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--|
| M.           | F.      | N.      | M.        | F.        | N.        |  |
| N. V. Nīgēr  | nigr-ā  | nigr-um | Nigr-ī    | nigr-ae   | nigr-ā    |  |
| Acc. Nigr-um | nigr-am | nigr-um | Nigr-ōs   | nigr-ās   | nigr-ā    |  |
| Gen. Nigr-ī  | nigr-ae | nigr-ī  | Nigr-ōrum | nigr-ārum | nigr-ōrum |  |
| Dat. Nigr-ō  | nigr-ae | nigr-ō  | Nigr-īs   | nigr-īs   | nigr-īs   |  |
| Abl. Nigr-ō  | nigr-ā  | nigr-ō  | Nigr-īs   | nigr-īs   | nigr-īs   |  |

|      | Sing.    |          | 3.       |            | Plur.      |            |
|------|----------|----------|----------|------------|------------|------------|
|      | M.       | F.       | N.       | M.         | F.         | N.         |
| N.V. | Těněr    | těněr-ě  | těněr-um | Těněr-I    | těněr-ae   | těněr-ě    |
| Acc. | Těněr-um | těněr-am | těněr-um | Těněr-ōs   | těněr-ās   | těněr-ě    |
| Gen. | Těněr-I  | těněr-ae | těněr-I  | Těněr-ōrum | těněr-ārum | těněr-ōrum |
| Dat. | Těněr-ō  | těněr-ae | těněr-ō  | Těněr-Is   | těněr-Is   | těněr-Is   |
| Abl. | Těněr-ō  | těněr-ě  | těněr-ō  | Těněr-Is   | těněr-Is   | těněr-Is   |

## 4.

FEMININE ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH FEMININE NOUN, BOTH OF FIRST DECLENSION.

|      | Sing.          |                                   |
|------|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| N.V. | Parvě mensě,   | a small table, or O small table ; |
| Acc. | Parvam mensam, | a small table                     |
| Gen. | Parvae mensae, | of a small table                  |
| Dat. | Parvae mensae, | to or for a small table           |
| Abl. | Parvě mensě,   | by, with, or from a small table.  |

## Plur.

|      |                    |                                 |
|------|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| N.V. | Parvae mensae,     | small tables, or O small tables |
| Acc. | Parvās mensās,     | small tables                    |
| Gen. | Parvārum mensārum, | of small tables                 |
| Dat. | Parvis mensis,     | to or for small tables          |
| Abl. | Parvis mensis,     | by, with, or from small tables. |

## 5.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVES DECLINED ALONG WITH MASCULINE NOUNS, BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

## (A.)

|      | Sing.          |                                |
|------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| Nom. | Bōnūs dōmīnūs, | a good lord                    |
| Voc. | Bōnē dōmīnē,   | O good lord                    |
| Acc. | Bōnum dōmīnum, | a good lord                    |
| Gen. | Bōnī dōmīnī,   | of a good lord                 |
| Dat. | Bōnō dōmīnō,   | to or for a good lord          |
| Abl. | Bōnō dōmīnō,   | by, with, or from a good lord. |

## Plur.

|      |                    |                               |
|------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| N.V. | Bōnī dōmīnī,       | good lords, or O good lords   |
| Acc. | Bōnōs dōmīnōs,     | good lords                    |
| Gen. | Bōnōrum dōmīnōrum, | of good lords                 |
| Dat. | Bōnis dōmīnīs,     | to or for good lords          |
| Abl. | Bōnis dōmīnīs,     | by, with, or from good lords. |

## (B.)

|      | Sing.         |                               |
|------|---------------|-------------------------------|
| Nom. | Bōnūs pūēr,   | a good boy                    |
| Voc. | Bōnē pūēr,    | O good boy                    |
| Acc. | Bōnum pūērum, | a good boy                    |
| Gen. | Bōnī pūērī,   | of a good boy                 |
| Dat. | Bōnō pūērō,   | to or for a good boy          |
| Abl. | Bōnō pūērō,   | by, with, or from a good boy. |

Plur.

|                               |                                     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>N.V.</i> Bōni pūēri,       | <i>good boys, or O good boys</i>    |
| <i>Acc.</i> Bōnōs pūērōs,     | <i>good boys</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> Bōnōrum pūērōrum, | <i>of good boys</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> Bōnīs pūērīs,     | <i>to or for good boys</i>          |
| <i>Abl.</i> Bōnīs pūērīs,     | <i>by, with, or from good boys.</i> |

6.

NEUTER ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH NEUTER NOUN,  
BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

|                              |                                            |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>N.V.A.</i> Magnum regnum, | <i>a great kingdom, or O great kingdom</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> Magnī regnī,     | <i>of a great kingdom</i>                  |
| <i>Dat.</i> Magnō regnō,     | <i>to or for a great kingdom</i>           |
| <i>Abl.</i> Magnō regnō,     | <i>by, with, or from a great kingdom.</i>  |

Plur.

|                                |                                            |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>N.V.A.</i> Magnā regnā,     | <i>great kingdoms, or O great kingdoms</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> Magnōrum regnōrum, | <i>of great kingdoms</i>                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> Magnīs regnīs,     | <i>to or for great kingdoms</i>            |
| <i>Abl.</i> Magnīs regnīs,     | <i>by, with, or from great kingdoms.</i>   |

(B.)

Sing. only.

|                               |                                         |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>N.V.A.</i> Magnum pēlāgūs, | <i>the great sea</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> Magnī pēlāgī,     | <i>of the great sea</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> Magnō pēlāgō,     | <i>to or for the great sea</i>          |
| <i>Abl.</i> Magnō pēlāgō,     | <i>by, with, or from the great sea.</i> |

7.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVE OF SECOND DECLENSION DECLINED WITH  
MASCULINE NOUN OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

|                            |                                           |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Clārūs nautā,  | <i>a famous sailor</i>                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> Clārē nautā,   | <i>O famous sailor</i>                    |
| <i>Acc.</i> Clārum nautam, | <i>a famous sailor</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> Clārī nautae,  | <i>of a famous sailor</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> Clārō nautae,  | <i>to or for a famous sailor</i>          |
| <i>Abl.</i> Clārō nautā,   | <i>by, with, or from a famous sailor.</i> |

Plur.

|                                |                                            |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>N.V.</i> Clārī nautae,      | <i>famous sailors, or O famous sailors</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> Clārōs nautās,     | <i>famous sailors</i>                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> Clārōrum nautārum, | <i>of famous sailors</i>                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> Clārīs nautīs,     | <i>to or for famous sailors</i>            |
| <i>Abl.</i> Clārīs nautīs,     | <i>by, with, or from famous sailors.</i>   |

**Rule 5.**—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Note that the Adjective in Latin is sometimes placed after the Noun.

### EXERCISE VI.

**A.**—1. Servus est timidus. 2. Columba est timida. 3. Gaudium est magnum. 4. Servi sunt mali. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Oppida sunt parva. 7. Muri sunt alti. 8. Puellae sunt bonae. 9. Horti sunt laeti. 10. Alae sunt albae.

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

**B.**—1. Columba albas alas habet. 2. Multae columbae albas alas habent. 3. Graecia multa templa habet. 4. Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 5. Bellicosa regina multas terras habet. 6. Oppidum magnum multas portas habet. 7. Magister librum bono puero dat. 8. Avus praemium bonae puellae dat. 9. Pericula nautarum sunt magna. 10. Dominus acutos gladios habet.

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword. 7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhone is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhine is a rapid river.

**C.**—1. Puer est aeger. 2. Puella est aegra. 3. Aurum templi est sacrum. 4. Regina est pulchra. 5. Filiae sunt tenerae. 6. Filii sunt miseri. 7. Morbus molestus est tenero filio. 8. Exemplum servi noxium puero est. 9. Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis. 10. Magnus est numerus puerorum.

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black slaves are troublesome to the lord. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of the slaves is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

---

## VII.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

### A. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

#### I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

1. Nouns the stems of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p*, *b*, *m*.

| Sing.                                         | 1.         | Plur.                    |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| N. V. Trāb-s ( <i>f.</i> ), a beam, or O beam | Trāb-ēs,   | beams, or O beams        |
| Acc. Trāb-em, a beam                          | Trāb-ēs,   | beams                    |
| Gen. Trāb-is, of a beam                       | Trāb-um,   | of beams                 |
| Dat. Trāb-i, to or for a beam                 | Trāb-ībūs, | to or for beams          |
| Abl. Trāb-ē, by, with, or from a beam.        | Trāb-ībūs, | by, with, or from beams. |

2.

|                                                            |                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>N. V.</i> Princēp-s ( <i>c.</i> ), a chief, or <i>O</i> | Princēp-ēs, chiefs, or <i>O</i> chiefs  |
| <i>Acc.</i> Princēp-em, a chief [ <i>chief</i>             | Princēp-ēs, chiefs                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> Princēp-is, of a chief                         | Princēp-um, of chiefs                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> Princēp-i, to or for a chief                   | Princēp-ībūs, to or for chiefs          |
| <i>Abl.</i> Princēp-ē, by, with, or from a chief.          | Princēp-ībūs, by, with, or from chiefs. |

3.

|                                          |                                       |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| N. V. Hlēm-s ( <i>f.</i> ), winter, or O | Hlēm-ēs, winters, or O winters        |
| Acc. Hlēm-em, winter [winter             | Hlēm-ēs, winters                      |
| Gen. Hlēm-is, of winter                  | Hlēm-um, of winters                   |
| Dat. Hlēm-i, to or for winter            | Hlēm-ībūs, to or for winters          |
| Abl. Hlēm-ē, by, with, or from winter.   | Hlēm-ībūs, by, with, or from winters. |

2. Nouns the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters *c*, *g*. NOTE.—In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *cs*, *gs* are contracted into *x*.

| Sing.                                          | 1.        | Plur.                      |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| N. V. Dux ( <i>c.</i> ), a leader, or O leader | Dūc-ēs,   | leaders, or O leaders      |
| Acc. Dūc-em, a leader                          | Dūc-ēs,   | leaders                    |
| Gen. Dūc-is, of a leader                       | Dūc-um,   | of leaders                 |
| Dat. Dūc-i, to or for a leader                 | Dūc-ībūs, | to or for leaders          |
| Abl. Dūc-ē, by, with, or from a leader.        | Dūc-ībūs, | by, with, or from leaders. |

| Sing.                                       | 2.                                       | Plur. |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>N.V. Lex (f.), a law, or O law</i>       | <i>Lēg-ēs, laws, or O laws</i>           |       |
| <i>Acc. Lēg-em, a law</i>                   | <i>Lēg-ēs, laws</i>                      |       |
| <i>Gen. Lēg-is, of a law</i>                | <i>Lēg-um, of laws</i>                   |       |
| <i>Dat. Lēg-i, to or for a law</i>          | <i>Lēg-ibūs, to or for laws</i>          |       |
| <i>Abl. Lēg-ē, by, with, or from a law.</i> | <i>Lēg-ibūs, by, with, or from laws.</i> |       |

| Sing.                                           | 2.                                           | Plur. |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>N.V. Jūdex (c.), a judge, or O judge</i>     | <i>Jūdic-ēs, judges, or O judges</i>         |       |
| <i>Acc. Jūdic-em, a judge</i>                   | <i>Jūdic-ēs, judges</i>                      |       |
| <i>Gen. Jūdic-is, of a judge</i>                | <i>Jūdic-um, of judges</i>                   |       |
| <i>Dat. Jūdic-i, to or for a judge</i>          | <i>Jūdic-ibūs, to or for judges</i>          |       |
| <i>Abl. Jūdic-ē, by, with, or from a judge.</i> | <i>Jūdic-ibūs, by, with, or from judges.</i> |       |

*Erāt, (he, she, it) was*

*Erant, (they) were.*

### EXERCISE VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justī. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Arx urbis est firma. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Nouns the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t, d*.

| Sing.                                          | 1.                                         | Plur. |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>N.V. Aetā-s (f.), an age, or O age</i>      | <i>Aetāt-ēs, ages, or O ages</i>           |       |
| <i>Acc. Aetāt-em, an age</i>                   | <i>Aetāt-ēs, ages</i>                      |       |
| <i>Gen. Aetāt-is, of an age</i>                | <i>Aetāt-um, of ages</i>                   |       |
| <i>Dat. Aetāt-i, to or for an age</i>          | <i>Aetāt-ibūs, to or for ages</i>          |       |
| <i>Abl. Aetāt-ē, by, with, or from an age.</i> | <i>Aetāt-ibūs, by, with, or from ages.</i> |       |

| Sing.                                           | 2.                                           | Plur. |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>N.V. Lāpis (m.), a stone, or O stone</i>     | <i>Lāpid-ēs, stones, or O stones</i>         |       |
| <i>Acc. Lāpid-em, a stone</i>                   | <i>Lāpid-ēs, stones</i>                      |       |
| <i>Gen. Lāpid-is, of a stone</i>                | <i>Lāpid-um, of stones</i>                   |       |
| <i>Dat. Lāpid-i, to or for a stone</i>          | <i>Lāpid-ibūs, to or for stones</i>          |       |
| <i>Abl. Lāpid-ē, by, with, or from a stone.</i> | <i>Lāpid-ibūs, by, with, or from stones.</i> |       |

## 3.

|                                                                 |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>N.V.</i> <b>Milē-s</b> ( <i>a.</i> ), a soldier, or <i>O</i> | <b>Milit-ēs</b> , soldiers, or <i>O</i> soldiers |
| <i>Acc.</i> <b>Milit-em</b> , a soldier [soldier]               | <b>Milit-ēs</b> , soldiers                       |
| <i>Gen.</i> <b>Milit-is</b> , of a soldier                      | <b>Milit-um</b> , of soldiers                    |
| <i>Dat.</i> <b>Milit-i</b> , to or for a soldier                | <b>Milit-ibūs</b> , to or for soldiers           |
| <i>Abl.</i> <b>Milit-ē</b> , by, with, or from a soldier.       | <b>Milit-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from soldiers.  |

**RULE 7.**—The Ablative case indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: *as, dōminūs hastā servum occidit, the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: *as, noctēs hīemē longae sunt, the nights are long in winter.*

**Occidit**, (*he, she, it*) kills.

**Occidunt**, (*they*) kill.

## EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas iudicis justa est. 10. Milites iudices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Nouns the stems of which end in the liquids *l*, *r*, and the sibilant *s*.

## Sing.

## 1.

## Plur.

|                                                                |                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>N.V.</i> <b>Consul</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), a consul, or <i>O</i> | <b>Consul-ēs</b> , consuls, or <i>O</i> consuls |
| <i>Acc.</i> <b>Consul-em</b> , a consul [consul]               | <b>Consul-ēs</b> , consuls                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> <b>Consul-is</b> , of a consul                     | <b>Consul-um</b> , of consuls                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> <b>Consul-i</b> , to or for a consul               | <b>Consul-ibūs</b> , to or for consuls          |
| <i>Abl.</i> <b>Consul-ē</b> , by, with, or from a consul.      | <b>Consul-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from consuls. |

## 2.

|                                                               |                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>N.V.</i> <b>Clāmōr</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), a shout, or <i>O</i> | <b>Clāmōr-ēs</b> , shouts, or <i>O</i> shouts  |
| <i>Acc.</i> <b>Clāmōr-em</b> , a shout [shout]                | <b>Clāmōr-ēs</b> , shouts                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> <b>Clāmōr-is</b> , of a shout                     | <b>Clāmōr-um</b> , of shouts                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> <b>Clāmōr-i</b> , to or for a shout               | <b>Clāmōr-ibūs</b> , to or for shouts          |
| <i>Abl.</i> <b>Clāmōr-ē</b> , by, with, or from a shout.      | <b>Clāmōr-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from shouts. |

| Sing.                                           | 3.                                           | Plur. |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>N.V. Ansēr (m.), a goose, or O goose</i>     | <i>Ansēr-ēs, geese, or O geese</i>           |       |
| <i>Acc. Ansēr-em, a goose</i>                   | <i>Ansēr-ēs, geese</i>                       |       |
| <i>Gen. Ansēr-is, of a goose</i>                | <i>Ansēr-um, of geese</i>                    |       |
| <i>Dat. Ansēr-i, to or for a goose</i>          | <i>Ansēr-ibūs, to or for geese</i>           |       |
| <i>Abl. Ansēr-ē, by, with, or from a goose.</i> | <i>Ansēr-ibūs, by, with, or from geese.</i>  |       |
| 4.                                              |                                              |       |
| <i>N.V. Pātēr, a father, or O father</i>        | <i>Patr-ēs, fathers, or O fathers</i>        |       |
| <i>Acc. Patr-em, a father</i>                   | <i>Patr-ēs, fathers</i>                      |       |
| <i>Gen. Patr-is, of a father</i>                | <i>Patr-um, of fathers</i>                   |       |
| <i>Dat. Patr-i, to or for a father</i>          | <i>Patr-ibūs, to or for fathers</i>          |       |
| <i>Abl. Patr-ē, by, with, or from a father.</i> | <i>Patr-ibūs, by, with, or from fathers.</i> |       |
| 5.                                              |                                              |       |
| <i>N.V. Flōs (m.), a flower, or O flower</i>    | <i>Flōr-ēs, flowers, or O flowers</i>        |       |
| <i>Acc. Flōr-em, a flower</i>                   | <i>Flōr-ēs, flowers</i>                      |       |
| <i>Gen. Flōr-is, of a flower</i>                | <i>Flōr-um, of flowers</i>                   |       |
| <i>Dat. Flōr-i, to or for a flower</i>          | <i>Flōr-ibūs, to or for flowers</i>          |       |
| <i>Abl. Flōr-ē, by, with, or from a flower.</i> | <i>Flōr-ibūs, by, with, or from flowers.</i> |       |

## EXERCISE IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Odores florum sunt varii. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. The colours of the flowers are various. 5. The brother gives a flower to (his) sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Nouns the stems of which end in *ōn* or *ōn* (*in*).

| Sing.                                             | 1.                                             | Plur. |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>N.V. Lēo (m.), a lion, or O lion</i>           | <i>Lēōn-ēs, lions, or O lions</i>              |       |
| <i>Acc. Lēōn-em, a lion</i>                       | <i>Lēōn-ēs, lions</i>                          |       |
| <i>Gen. Lēōn-is, of a lion</i>                    | <i>Lēōn-um, of lions</i>                       |       |
| <i>Dat. Lēōn-i, to or for a lion</i>              | <i>Lēōn-ibūs, to or for lions</i>              |       |
| <i>Abl. Lēōn-ē, by, with, or from a lion.</i>     | <i>Lēōn-ibūs, by, with, or from lions.</i>     |       |
| 2.                                                |                                                |       |
| <i>N.V. Virgo (f.), a maiden, or O maiden</i>     | <i>Virgīn-ēs, maidens, or O maidens</i>        |       |
| <i>Acc. Virgīn-em, a maiden</i>                   | <i>Virgīn-ēs, maidens</i>                      |       |
| <i>Gen. Virgīn-is, of a maiden</i>                | <i>Virgīn-um, of maidens</i>                   |       |
| <i>Dat. Virgīn-i, to or for a maiden</i>          | <i>Virgīn-ibūs, to or for maidens</i>          |       |
| <i>Abl. Virgīn-ē, by, with, or from a maiden.</i> | <i>Virgīn-ibūs, by, with, or from maidens.</i> |       |

## EXERCISE X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

## II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

| Sing.                                             | 1.                                            | Plur. |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------|
| N.V. <b>Host-is</b> ( <i>c.</i> ), an enemy, or O | <b>Host-ēs</b> , enemies, or O enemies        |       |
| Acc. <b>Host-em</b> , an enemy [enemy]            | <b>Host-ēs</b> , enemies                      |       |
| Gen. <b>Host-is</b> , of an enemy                 | <b>Host-ium</b> , of enemies                  |       |
| Dat. <b>Host-i</b> , to or for an enemy           | <b>Host-ibūs</b> , to or for enemies          |       |
| Abl. <b>Host-ē</b> , by, with, or from an enemy.  | <b>Host-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from enemies. |       |

Some stems in *i* have the Nominative in *e* and are thus declined :—

|                                                 | 2.                                          |  |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--|
| N.V. <b>Nūb-ēs</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), a cloud, or O | <b>Nūb-ēs</b> , clouds, or O clouds         |  |
| Acc. <b>Nūb-em</b> , a cloud [cloud]            | <b>Nūb-ēs</b> , clouds                      |  |
| Gen. <b>Nūb-is</b> , of a cloud                 | <b>Nūb-ium</b> , of clouds                  |  |
| Dat. <b>Nūb-i</b> , to or for a cloud           | <b>Nūb-ibūs</b> , to or for clouds          |  |
| Abl. <b>Nūb-ē</b> , by, with, or from a cloud.  | <b>Nūb-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from clouds. |  |

## EXERCISE XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempestatum. 4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turres altas habet. 6. Clades hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notae erant. 9. Graecia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skilful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skilful.

## B. Neuter Nouns.

## I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

Nouns the stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

|        | Sing.                                  | 1.                                        | Plur. |
|--------|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------|
| N.V.A. | Nēma, a name, or O                     | Nēma-ā, names, or O names                 |       |
| Gen.   | Nēma-la, of a name [name               | Nēma-um, of names                         |       |
| Dat.   | Nēma-i, to or for a name               | Nēma-ibā, to or for names                 |       |
| Abl.   | Nēma-ā, by, with, or from a name.      | Nēma-ibā, by, with, or from names.        |       |
| 2.     |                                        |                                           |       |
| N.V.A. | Fulgūr, lightning, or O lightning      | Fulgūr-ā, lightnings, or O lightnings     |       |
| Gen.   | Fulgūr-la, of lightning                | Fulgūr-um, of lightnings                  |       |
| Dat.   | Fulgūr-i, to or for lightning          | Fulgūr-ibā, to or for lightnings          |       |
| Abl.   | Fulgūr-ā, by, with, or from lightning. | Fulgūr-ibā, by, with, or from lightnings. |       |
| 3.     |                                        |                                           |       |
| N.V.A. | Crā, a leg, or O leg                   | Crār-ā, legs, or O legs                   |       |
| Gen.   | Crār-la, of a leg                      | Crār-um, of legs                          |       |
| Dat.   | Crār-i, to or for a leg                | Crār-ibā, to or for legs                  |       |
| Abl.   | Crār-ā, by, with, or from a leg.       | Crār-ibā, by, with, or from legs.         |       |
| 4.     |                                        |                                           |       |
| N.V.A. | Ūpā, a work, or O work                 | Ūpār-ā, works, or O works                 |       |
| Gen.   | Ūpār-la, of a work                     | Ūpār-um, of works                         |       |
| Dat.   | Ūpār-i, to or for a work               | Ūpār-ibā, to or for works                 |       |
| Abl.   | Ūpār-ā, by, with, or from a work.      | Ūpār-ibā, by, with, or from works.        |       |
| 5.     |                                        |                                           |       |
| N.V.A. | Corpā, a body, or O body               | Corpār-ā, bodies, or O bodies             |       |
| Gen.   | Corpār-la, of a body                   | Corpār-um, of bodies                      |       |
| Dat.   | Corpār-i, to or for a body             | Corpār-ibā, to or for bodies              |       |
| Abl.   | Corpār-ā, by, with, or from a body.    | Corpār-ibā, by, with, or from bodies.     |       |
| 6.     |                                        |                                           |       |
| N.V.A. | Cāpit, a head, or O head               | Cāpit-ā, heads, or O heads                |       |
| Gen.   | Cāpit-la, of a head                    | Cāpit-um, of heads                        |       |
| Dat.   | Cāpit-i, to or for a head              | Cāpit-ibā, to or for heads                |       |
| Abl.   | Cāpit-ā, by, with, or from a head.     | Cāpit-ibā, by, with, or from heads.       |       |

## II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

The Nominative in *ē*, *āl*, *ār*.

|        | Sing.                             | 1.                               | Plur. |
|--------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------|
| N.V.A. | Mār-ē, the sea, or O sea          | Mār-ā, seas, or O seas           |       |
| Gen.   | Mār-la, of the sea                | Mār-um, of seas                  |       |
| Dat.   | Mār-i, to or for the sea          | Mār-ibā, to or for seas          |       |
| Abl.   | Mār-i, by, with, or from the sea. | Mār-ibā, by, with, or from seas. |       |

|               | Sing.                                            | 2.                  | Plur.                         |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>N.V.A.</b> | <b>Ānimāl,</b> an animal, or<br>O animal         | <b>Ānimāl-ī,</b>    | animals, or O ani-<br>mals    |
| <b>Gen.</b>   | <b>Ānimāl-īs,</b> of an animal                   | <b>Ānimāl-īum,</b>  | of animals                    |
| <b>Dat.</b>   | <b>Ānimāl-ī,</b> to or for an animal             | <b>Ānimāl-ībūs,</b> | to or for animals             |
| <b>Abl.</b>   | <b>Ānimāl-ī,</b> by, with, or from<br>an animal. | <b>Ānimāl-ībūs,</b> | by, with, or from<br>animals. |

|               | 3.                                            |                                                 |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <b>N.V.A.</b> | <b>Calcār,</b> a spur, or O spur              | <b>Calcār-ī,</b> spurs, or O spurs              |
| <b>Gen.</b>   | <b>Calcār-īs,</b> of a spur                   | <b>Calcār-īum,</b> of spurs                     |
| <b>Dat.</b>   | <b>Calcār-ī,</b> to or for a spur             | <b>Calcār-ībūs,</b> to or for spurs             |
| <b>Abl.</b>   | <b>Calcār-ī,</b> by, with, or from<br>a spur. | <b>Calcār-ībūs,</b> by, with, or from<br>spurs. |

## EXERCISE XII.

**A.**—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephantī magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are small. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

**B.**—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitū. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent. 5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitū sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are high. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are golden. 5. The king gives golden nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS, DECLINED TOGETHER.

1. **Magnus Dux**,—a great leader.

| Sing.                          | Plur.                  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>Nom.</b> <b>Magnūs dux</b>  | <b>Magnī dūcēs</b>     |
| <b>Voc.</b> <b>Magnē dux</b>   | <b>Magnī dūcēs</b>     |
| <b>Acc.</b> <b>Magnū dūcem</b> | <b>Magnōs dūcēs</b>    |
| <b>Gen.</b> <b>Magnī dūcis</b> | <b>Magnōrum dūcum</b>  |
| <b>Dat.</b> <b>Magnō dūci</b>  | <b>Magnīs dūcībūs</b>  |
| <b>Abl.</b> <b>Magnō dūcē</b>  | <b>Magnīs dūcībūs.</b> |

## 2. Bōnā Mātēr,—a good mother.

|      | Sing.         | Plur.            |
|------|---------------|------------------|
| N.V. | Bōnā mātēr    | Bōnæ mātērē      |
| Acc. | Bōnam mātrem, | Bōnās mātērē     |
| Gen. | Bōnæ mātēris  | Bōnārum mātrū    |
| Dat. | Bōnæ mātēri   | Bōnīs mātēribūs  |
| Abl. | Bōnā mātēre   | Bōnīs mātēribūs. |

## 3. Rāpīdum Flūmēn,—a rapid river.

|        | Sing.           | Plur.               |
|--------|-----------------|---------------------|
| N.V.A. | Rāpīdum flūmēn  | Rāpīdā flūmīnā      |
| Gen.   | Rāpīdī flūmīnis | Rāpīdōrum flūmīnū   |
| Dat.   | Rāpīdō flūmīni  | Rāpīdis flūmīnībūs  |
| Abl.   | Rāpīdō flūmīnē  | Rāpīdis flūmīnībūs. |

## VIII.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS end in ēr, rīs, rē, and are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: as, ācēr, ācēris, ācrē, *sharp*; cēlēr, cēlēris, cēlērē, *swift*.

|      | Sing.                   | Plur.                     |
|------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
|      | M. F. N.                | M. and F. N.              |
| N.V. | Ācēr ācēris ācrē        | Ācērē ācēriā              |
| Acc. | Ācrem ācrē              | Ācērē ācēriā              |
| Gen. | Ācēris (of all genders) | Ācērium (of all genders)  |
| Dat. | Ācēri (of all genders)  | Ācēribūs (of all genders) |
| Abl. | Ācēri (of all genders)  | Ācēribūs (of all genders) |

II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have two terminations in the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative only. They include—

1. Adjectives ending in īs: as, tristīs (*masc. and fem.*), tristē (*neut.*), *sad*.
2. Comparatives, ending in iōr, iūs: as, mēliōr (*masc. and fem.*), mēliūs (*neut.*), *better*.

|      | Sing.     | 1.               | Plur.      |
|------|-----------|------------------|------------|
|      | M. and F. | N.               | M. and F.  |
| N.V. | Trist-īs  | trist-ē          | Trist-ēs   |
| Acc. | Trist-em  | trist-ē          | Trist-ēs   |
| Gen. | Trist-īs  | (of all genders) | Trist-ium  |
| Dat. | Trist-i   | (of all genders) | Trist-ībūs |
| Abl. | Trist-i   | (of all genders) | Trist-ībūs |

|      | 2.            |                  |
|------|---------------|------------------|
|      | M. and F.     | N.               |
| N.V. | Mēliōr        | mēliūs           |
| Acc. | Mēliōr-em     | mēliūs           |
| Gen. | Mēliōr-īs     | (of all genders) |
| Dat. | Mēliōr-i      | (of all genders) |
| Abl. | Mēliōr-ē or i | (of all genders) |

|      | 2.          |                  |
|------|-------------|------------------|
|      | M. and F.   | N.               |
| N.V. | Mēliōr-ēs   | mēliōr-ī         |
| Acc. | Mēliōr-ēs   | mēliōr-ī         |
| Gen. | Mēliōr-um   | (of all genders) |
| Dat. | Mēliōr-ībūs | (of all genders) |
| Abl. | Mēliōr-ībūs | (of all genders) |

III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are of various endings and declined like Nouns of the Third Declension : as, *fēlix, fortunate* ; *prūdēns, prudent*.

| Sing.                            |                  | 1.                 | Plur.            |  |
|----------------------------------|------------------|--------------------|------------------|--|
| M. and F.                        | N.               | M. and F.          | N.               |  |
| N. V. <i>Fēlix</i>               | <i>fēlix</i>     | <i>Fēlix-ēs</i>    | <i>fēlix-ī</i>   |  |
| Acc. <i>Fēlix-em</i>             | <i>fēlix</i>     | <i>Fēlix-ēs</i>    | <i>fēlix-ī</i>   |  |
| Gen. <i>Fēlix-is</i>             | (of all genders) | <i>Fēlix-ium</i>   | (of all genders) |  |
| Dat. <i>Fēlix-i</i>              | (of all genders) | <i>Fēlix-ibūs</i>  | (of all genders) |  |
| Abl. <i>Fēlix-i</i> or <i>ē</i>  | (of all genders) | <i>Fēlix-ibūs</i>  | (of all genders) |  |
| 2.                               |                  |                    |                  |  |
| N. V. <i>Prūdēns</i>             | <i>prūdēns</i>   | <i>Prūdēt-ēs</i>   | <i>prūdēt-ī</i>  |  |
| Acc. <i>Prūdēt-em</i>            | <i>prūdēns</i>   | <i>Prūdēt-ēs</i>   | <i>prūdēt-ī</i>  |  |
| Gen. <i>Prūdēt-is</i>            | (of all genders) | <i>Prūdēt-ium</i>  | (of all genders) |  |
| Dat. <i>Prūdēt-i</i>             | (of all genders) | <i>Prūdēt-ibūs</i> | (of all genders) |  |
| Abl. <i>Prūdēt-i</i> or <i>ē</i> | (of all genders) | <i>Prūdēt-ibūs</i> | (of all genders) |  |

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION, DECLINED WITH NOUNS OF FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.

1. *Cēlērīs Sāgittā*,—a swift arrow.

| Sing.                        | Plur.                     |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| N. V. <i>Cēlērīs sāgittā</i> | <i>Cēlērēs sāgittae</i>   |
| Acc. <i>Cēlērēm sāgittam</i> | <i>Cēlērēs sāgittas</i>   |
| Gen. <i>Cēlērīs sāgittae</i> | <i>Cēlērūm sāgittārum</i> |
| Dat. <i>Cēlērī sāgittae</i>  | <i>Cēlērībūs sāgittis</i> |
| Abl. <i>Cēlērī sāgittā</i>   | <i>Cēlērībūs sāgittis</i> |

2. *Tristēs Proelium*,—a sad battle.

|                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| N. A. V. <i>Tristēs proelium</i> | <i>Tristī proeliū</i>      |
| Gen. <i>Tristīs proeliī</i>      | <i>Tristīum proeliōrum</i> |
| Dat. <i>Tristī proeliō</i>       | <i>Tristībūs proeliis</i>  |
| Abl. <i>Tristī proeliō</i>       | <i>Tristībūs proeliis</i>  |

3. *Fēlix Hōmo*,—a happy man.

|                                       |                            |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| N. V. <i>Fēlix hōmo</i>               | <i>Fēlicēs hōmīnēs</i>     |
| Acc. <i>Fēlicem hōminem</i>           | <i>Fēlicēs hōmīnēs</i>     |
| Gen. <i>Fēlicēs hōmīnis</i>           | <i>Fēliciūm hōmīnūm</i>    |
| Dat. <i>Fēlici hōmīni</i>             | <i>Fēlicībūs hōmīnībūs</i> |
| Abl. <i>Fēlici</i> or <i>ē hōmīni</i> | <i>Fēlicībūs hōmīnībūs</i> |

EXERCISE XIII.

A.—1. *Ira furor brevis est.* 2. *Ira militum erat acris.* 3. *Via est facilis.* 4. *Omne initium est difficile.* 5. *Leges hominibus utiles sunt.* 6. *Vulnus militis est leve.* 7. *Carmen est dulce.* 8. *Naves hostium sunt celeres.* 9. *Tempus humanae vitae breve est.* 10. *Rex cives fideles habet.*

1. The soldiers have sharp arms. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labour is easy in the winter. 4. Labour is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

**B.**—1. Consilium ducis audax est. 2. Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt. 3. Tempus praesens felix est. 4. Regnum Persarum erat potens. 5. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia. 6. Vetus vinum est bonum. 7. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet. 8. Leges Romanorum erant praestantes. 9. Praemia equitum ingentia erant. 10. Agricolae vinum vetus habent.

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

### IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Nouns in *u*.

| Sing.                                         | 1.                                         | Plur. |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>N. V. Grād-ūs (m.), a step, or O step</i>  | <i>Grād-ūs, steps, or O steps</i>          |       |
| <i>Acc. Grād-um, a step</i>                   | <i>Grād-ūs, steps</i>                      |       |
| <i>Gen. Grād-ūs, of a step</i>                | <i>Grād-ūum, of steps</i>                  |       |
| <i>Dat. Grād-ūi, to or for a step</i>         | <i>Grād-ībūs, to or for steps</i>          |       |
| <i>Abl. Grād-ū, by, with, or from a step.</i> | <i>Grād-ībūs, by, with, or from steps.</i> |       |
|                                               | 2.                                         |       |
| <i>N. V. A. Gēn-u (n.), a knee or O knee</i>  | <i>Gēn-ū, knees, or O knees</i>            |       |
| <i>Gen. Gēn-ūs, of a knee</i>                 | <i>Gēn-ūum, of knees</i>                   |       |
| <i>Dat. Gēn-ū, to or for a knee</i>           | <i>Gēn-ībūs, to or for knees</i>           |       |
| <i>Abl. Gēn-ū, by, with, or from a knee.</i>  | <i>Gēn-ībūs, by, with, or from knees.</i>  |       |

NOTE.—Some nouns of the Fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in *-ībūs*: as, *acībūs*, *arcībūs*, *portībūs*, *vērībūs*, with a few others. Also, the Dative Singular *ūi* is sometimes contracted into *ū*: as, *grādūi*, *grādū*.

### EXERCISE XIV.

**A.**—1. Quercus sunt altae. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus coelestis varios colores habet. 9. Fructus ficus erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbours. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbours of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbours is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

**B.**—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu pucro dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magna habet. 6. Duces exercitūs audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque\* habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visūs. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditūs.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbours. 7. Every (omne) animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Sharp needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

\* Quæ, and (placed after the word which it unites to the preceding).

## X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

|              | Sing.                                 |                 | Plur.                          |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>N. V.</i> | <i>Dī-ēs, a day, or O day</i>         | <i>Dī-ēs,</i>   | <i>days, or O days</i>         |
| <i>Acc.</i>  | <i>Dī-em, a day</i>                   | <i>Dī-ēs,</i>   | <i>days</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i>  | <i>Dī-ēi, of a day</i>                | <i>Dī-ērum,</i> | <i>of days</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i>  | <i>Dī-ēi, to or for a day</i>         | <i>Dī-ēbūs,</i> | <i>to or for days</i>          |
| <i>Abl.</i>  | <i>Dī-ē, by, with, or from a day.</i> | <i>Dī-ēbūs,</i> | <i>by, with, or from days.</i> |

**NOTE.**—In Nouns like *rēs*, where *ēs* is preceded by a Consonant, the *e* becomes short in Gen. and Dat. Singular: *as, rēi, spēi*.

**GENDER.**—All Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dīēs*, which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural; and *mēridiēs*, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

**RULE 8.**—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *in, in*: *as, hostēs in plānitīē erant, the enemies were in the plain.* See Rule 7, p. 13.

### EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magna planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnitie.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

## XI.—SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS.

The following words are thus declined:—

| Dēūs, <i>God.</i> (2 Decl.) |                   | Dōmūs, <i>f., a house.</i> (2 and 4 Decl.) |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Sing.                       | Plur.             | Sing.                                      | Plur.                         |
| N.V. Dēūs                   | Dēi, Dī, or Dī    | Dōmūs                                      | Dōmūs                         |
| Acc. Dēum                   | Dēōs              | Dōmum                                      | Dōmūs ( <i>rarely dōmūs</i> ) |
| Gen. Dēi                    | Dēōrum, or Dēum   | Dōmūs                                      | Dōmūm, or dōmōrum             |
| Dat. Dēō                    | Dēis, Dīs, or Dīs | Dōmī                                       | Dōmībūs                       |
| Abl. Dēō                    | Dēis, Dīs, or Dīs | Dōmō                                       | Dōmībūs                       |

N.B. The form *dōmī* is used only in the sense of *at home*.

| Bōs, <i>an ox or cow.</i> (3 Decl.) |                 | Sēnex, <i>an old man.</i> (3 Decl.) |         |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------|---------|
| Sing.                               | Plur.           | Sing.                               | Plur.   |
| N.V. Bōs                            | Bōvēs           | Sēnex                               | Sēnēs   |
| Acc. Bōvem                          | Bōvēs           | Sēnem                               | Sēnēs   |
| Gen. Bōvis                          | Bōvum, or bōum  | Sēnis                               | Sēnum   |
| Dat. Bōvi                           | Bōbūs, or bābūs | Sēni                                | Sēnībūs |
| Abl. Bōvē                           | Bōbūs, or bābūs | Sēnē                                | Sēnībūs |

| Vis, <i>f., strength.</i> (3 Decl.) |         | Jūpītēr (=Jōv-pītēr, i. e. pātēr),<br>(3 Decl.) <i>the god.</i> |       |
|-------------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Sing.                               | Plur.   | Sing.                                                           | Plur. |
| Nom. Vis                            | Virēs   | Jūpītēr                                                         | Jōvem |
| Acc. Vim                            | Virēs   | Jōvis                                                           | Jōvi  |
| Gen. wanting                        | Virium  | Jōvē                                                            |       |
| Dat. wanting                        | Viribūs |                                                                 |       |
| Abl. Vi                             | Viribūs |                                                                 |       |

| Jusjūrandum, <i>n., an oath</i> (properly two words, Jūs, 3 Decl. and jūrandum, 2 Decl.) |             | Respublica, <i>f., a commonwealth, a republic</i> (properly two words, Res, 5 Decl. and publicā, 1 Decl.) |             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Sing.                                                                                    | Plur.       | Sing.                                                                                                     | Plur.       |
| N.V.A. Jusjūrandum                                                                       | Jūrijūrandū | N.V. Respublicā                                                                                           | Respublicae |
| Gen. Jūrijūrandi                                                                         |             | Acc. Respublicam                                                                                          |             |
| Dat. Jūrijūrandō                                                                         |             | Gen. Rēipublicae                                                                                          |             |
| Abl. Jūrejūrandō                                                                         |             | Dat. Rēipublicae                                                                                          |             |
|                                                                                          |             | Abl. Rēipublicā                                                                                           |             |

## EXERCISE XVI.

A.—1. Di sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many

trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods is immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (*pl.*).

**B.**—1. Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Civis iusjurandum judici dat.\* 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (*pl.*) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old-men are feeble and sick. 4. The old-man gives gold and silver to the young-man. 5. The house of the old-man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many brave citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. The grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sacred to Jupiter.

\* Iusjurandum dat, in English, *takes the oath.*

## XII.—SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following words have in the Genitive Sing. *iūs* (rarely *iūs*) and in the Dative *ī* :—

|                                 |                      |                                             |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>ūnūs, ā, um,</i>             | <i>one, alone.</i>   | <i>altēr, altērā, altērum, one of two ;</i> |
| <i>sōlūs, ā, um,</i>            | <i>alone.</i>        | <i>altēr . . . altēr, the one . . .</i>     |
| <i>tōtūs, ā, um,</i>            | <i>whole.</i>        | <i>the other.</i>                           |
| <i>ullūs, ā, um,</i>            | <i>any.</i>          | <i>ālīūs, āliū, āliūd, one of any</i>       |
| <i>nullūs, ā, um,</i>           | <i>no, none.</i>     | <i>number ; āliūs . . . āliūs,</i>          |
| <i>ūtēr, utrā, utrum,</i>       | <i>which of two.</i> | <i>one . . . another ; in pl. some,</i>     |
| <i>neutēr, neutrā, neutrum,</i> | <i>neither.</i>      | <i>others.</i>                              |

For example—

|             | Sing.         |                         |              | Plur.          |                         |                |
|-------------|---------------|-------------------------|--------------|----------------|-------------------------|----------------|
|             | M.            | F.                      | N.           | M.             | F.                      | N.             |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Ūn-ūs</i>  | <i>ūn-ā</i>             | <i>ūn-um</i> | <i>Ūn-i</i>    | <i>ūn-ae</i>            | <i>ūn-ā</i>    |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Ūn-um</i>  | <i>ūn-am</i>            | <i>ūn-um</i> | <i>Ūn-ōs</i>   | <i>ūn-ās</i>            | <i>ūn-ā</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Ūn-iūs</i> | <i>(of all genders)</i> |              | <i>Ūn-ōrum</i> | <i>ūn-ārum</i>          | <i>ūn-ōrum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Ūn-ī</i>   | <i>(of all genders)</i> |              | <i>Ūn-is</i>   | <i>(of all genders)</i> |                |
| <i>Ab.</i>  | <i>Ūn-ō</i>   | <i>ūn-ā</i>             | <i>ūn-ō</i>  | <i>Ūn-is</i>   | <i>(of all genders)</i> |                |

*Obs.* As to the use of the Plural of *ūnūs*, see p. 26.

The Genitive Singular of *altēr* is *altēriūs*, and of *ālīūs* is *ālīūs*.

## EXERCISE XVII.

1. Virtus sola dat veram voluptatem. 2. Cives Ciceroni uni dant honorem. 3. Utri dat (*does he give*) laudem? Neutri. 4. Alii

sunt docti, alii indocti. 5. Alius (*gen.*) vires, alius (*gen.*) divitiae sunt magnae. 6. Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus. 7. Tota vita hominis memorabilis erat. 8. Alteri (*dat.*) laudem, alteri (*dat.*) culpam dant. 9. Neutri dat totam laudem. 10. Neutra civitas habet laudem ullam.

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome to neither. 4. To which-of-the-two does he give the praise? 5. Neither of the men has any abode. 6. Virtue alone gives true honours. 7. Life is troublesome to no good man. 8. Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 9. He was unfriendly to neither. 10. The one was pleasing to the citizens, the other was troublesome.

### XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison : Positive, Comparative, and Superlative : as,

| Positive.           | Comparative.           | Superlative.                                                     |
|---------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Altus, <i>high.</i> | Altior, <i>higher.</i> | Altissimus, { <i>highest, most high,</i><br><i>or very high.</i> |

The Comparative is formed by adding *ior* and the Superlative by adding *issimus* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular : as,

| Posit.   |             | Comp.             |              | Sup.             |
|----------|-------------|-------------------|--------------|------------------|
| Nom.     | Gen.        |                   |              |                  |
| Altus,   | Alt-i,      | <i>high,</i>      | Alt-ior,     | Alt-issimus,     |
| Lævis,   | Læv-is,     | <i>light,</i>     | Læv-ior,     | Læv-issimus,     |
| Felix,   | Fëlio-is,   | <i>fortunate,</i> | Fëlio-ior,   | Fëlio-issimus,   |
| Prudens, | Prudent-is, | <i>prudent,</i>   | Prudent-ior, | Prudent-issimus. |

The Comparative is declined on p. 18 (*mël-ior*).

The Superlative is declined like *bõnus*, *bõna*, *bõnum*.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rîmus* : as,

| Posit.   |           | Comp.             |             | Sup.           |
|----------|-----------|-------------------|-------------|----------------|
| Nom.     | Gen.      |                   |             |                |
| pulchër, | pulchr-î, | <i>beautiful,</i> | pulchr-ior, | pulcher-rîmus. |
| libër,   | libër-î,  | <i>free,</i>      | libër-ior,  | liber-rîmus.   |
| âcër,    | âcër-is,  | <i>sharp,</i>     | âcër-ior,   | âcer-rîmus.    |
| cëlër,   | cëlër-is, | <i>swift,</i>     | cëlër-ior,  | cëler-rîmus.   |

Also *vëtus* (*Gen. vëtër-is*), *old*, has a Superlative, *vëter-rîmus*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *limus* : as,

| Posit.              |                    | Comp.                | Sup.                     |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>facilis</i> ,    | <i>easy</i> ,      | <i>facilior</i> ,    | <i>facilissimus</i> .    |
| <i>difficilis</i> , | <i>difficult</i> , | <i>difficilior</i> , | <i>difficilissimus</i> . |
| <i>similis</i> ,    | <i>like</i> ,      | <i>similior</i> ,    | <i>similissimus</i> .    |
| <i>dissimilis</i> , | <i>unlike</i> ,    | <i>dissimilior</i> , | <i>dissimilissimus</i> . |
| <i>gracilis</i> ,   | <i>thin</i> ,      | <i>gracilior</i> ,   | <i>gracilissimus</i> .   |
| <i>humilis</i> ,    | <i>low</i> ,       | <i>humilior</i> ,    | <i>humilissimus</i> .    |

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

| Posit.                         |                    | Comp.                        | Sup.                              |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>bonus</i> ,                 | <i>good</i> ,      | <i>melior</i> ,              | <i>optimus</i> .                  |
| <i>malus</i> ,                 | <i>bad</i> ,       | <i>peior</i> ,               | <i>possimus</i> .                 |
| <i>magnus</i> ,                | <i>great</i> ,     | <i>maior</i> ,               | <i>maximus</i> .                  |
| <i>parvus</i> ,                | <i>small</i> ,     | <i>minor</i> ,               | <i>minimus</i> .                  |
| <i>multus</i> ,                | <i>much</i> ,      | <i>plus (neuter)</i> ,       | <i>plurimus</i> .                 |
| <i>nequam (not declined)</i> , | <i>worthless</i> , | <i>nequior</i> ,             | <i>nequissimus</i> .              |
| <i>dives</i> ,                 | <i>rich</i> ,      | <i>ditior</i> ,              | <i>ditissimus</i> .               |
| <i>senex</i> ,                 | <i>old</i> ,       | <i>senior [natu major]</i> , | <i>maximus natu</i> .             |
| <i>juvenis</i> ,               | <i>young</i> ,     | <i>junior [natu minor]</i> , | <i>minimus natu</i> .             |
| <i>superus</i> ,               | <i>upper</i> ,     | <i>superior</i> ,            | <i>supremus, summus</i> .         |
| <i>inferus</i> ,               | <i>lower</i> ,     | <i>inferior</i> ,            | <i>infimus, imus</i> .            |
| <i>exterus</i> ,               | <i>outside</i> ,   | <i>exterior</i> ,            | <i>extremus</i> .                 |
| <i>interus</i> ,               | <i>inside</i> ,    | <i>interior</i> ,            | <i>intimus</i> .                  |
| <i>posterus</i> ,              | <i>behind</i> ,    | <i>posterior</i> ,           | <i>posterus</i> .                 |
| —                              | —                  | <i>prior (former)</i> ,      | <i>primus (first)</i> .           |
| —                              | —                  | <i>propior (nearer)</i> ,    | <i>proximus (nearest, next)</i> . |
| —                              | —                  | <i>ulterior (further)</i> ,  | <i>ultimus (furthest, last)</i> . |

Declension of *Plus*.

| Singular.          |  | Plural.         |                  |
|--------------------|--|-----------------|------------------|
| Neut. only.        |  | Masc. and Fem.  | Neut.            |
| <i>Nom. Plus</i>   |  | <i>Plures</i>   | <i>Plura</i>     |
| <i>Acc. Plus</i>   |  | <i>Plures</i>   | <i>Plura</i>     |
| <i>Gen. Pluris</i> |  | <i>Plurium</i>  | (of all genders) |
| <i>Dat. Pluri</i>  |  | <i>Pluribus</i> | (of all genders) |
| <i>Abl. Pluri</i>  |  | <i>Pluribus</i> | (of all genders) |

RULE 9.—The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin *quam* (indeclinable).

## EXERCISE XVIII.

A.—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiores sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam

virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhine is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

B.—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Veterrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos habent oculos. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperissimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In summer the sun is more powerful than in winter.

C.—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Romanae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was ever more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honour to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many islands are larger than Sicily. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

#### XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

*Cardinal Numerals* denote number simply or absolutely: as, ūnūs, *one*; dŭō, *two*; trēs, *three*.

The declension of ūnūs is given on p. 23.

*Obs.* *Unus* is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have a singular meaning: as, ūnā castrā, *one camp*; ūnae aedēs, *one house*; ūnae littērae, *one letter*.

| ARABIC SYMBOLS. | ROMAN SYMBOLS.  | CARDINALS.                                | ORDINALS.                                             |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1               | I               | ūnus                                      | prīmus.                                               |
| 2               | II              | duō                                       | secundus <i>or</i> altēr.                             |
| 3               | III             | trēs                                      | tertīus.                                              |
| 4               | IV              | quattuōr (quātūr)                         | quartus.                                              |
| 5               | V               | quinquē                                   | quintus.                                              |
| 6               | VI              | sex                                       | sextus.                                               |
| 7               | VII             | septem                                    | septīmus.                                             |
| 8               | VIII            | octō                                      | octāvus.                                              |
| 9               | IX              | nōvem                                     | nōnus.                                                |
| 10              | X               | dēcem                                     | dēcīmus.                                              |
| 11              | XI              | undēcim                                   | undēcīmus.                                            |
| 12              | XII             | duōdēcim                                  | duōdēcīmus.                                           |
| 13              | XIII            | trēdēcim                                  | tertīus dēcīmus.                                      |
| 14              | XIV             | quattuōrdēcim                             | quartus dēcīmus.                                      |
| 15              | XV              | quindēcim                                 | quintus dēcīmus.                                      |
| 16              | XVI             | sēdēcim                                   | sextus dēcīmus.                                       |
| 17              | XVII            | septemdēcim                               | septīmus dēcīmus.                                     |
| 18              | XVIII           | duōdēvigintī                              | duōdēvicēsīmus.                                       |
| 19              | XIX             | undēvigintī                               | undēvicēsīmus.                                        |
| 20              | XX              | vigintī                                   | vicēsīmus.                                            |
| 21              | XXI             | ūnus et vigintī <i>or</i><br>vigintī ūnus | prīmus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i><br>vicēsīmus prīmus.   |
| 22              | XXII            | duō et vigintī <i>or</i><br>vigintī duō   | alter et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i><br>vicēsīmus alter.     |
| 23              | XXIII           | trēs et vigintī <i>or</i><br>vigintī trēs | tertīus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i><br>vicēsīmus tertīus. |
| 28              | XXVIII          | duōdētrigintā                             | duōdētrigēsīmus.                                      |
| 29              | XXIX            | undētrigintā                              | undētrigēsīmus.                                       |
| 30              | XXX             | trigintā                                  | trigēsīmus.                                           |
| 40              | XL              | quadrāgintā                               | quadrāgēsīmus.                                        |
| 50              | L               | quīnquāgintā                              | quīnquāgēsīmus.                                       |
| 60              | LX              | sexāgintā                                 | sexāgēsīmus.                                          |
| 70              | LXX             | septuāgintā                               | septuāgēsīmus.                                        |
| 80              | LXXX            | octōgintā                                 | octōgēsīmus.                                          |
| 90              | XC              | nōnāgintā                                 | nōnāgēsīmus.                                          |
| 100             | C               | centum                                    | centēsīmus.                                           |
| 200             | CC              | ducentī, ae, &                            | ducentēsīmus.                                         |
| 300             | CCC             | trecentī, ae, &                           | trecentēsīmus.                                        |
| 400             | CCCC            | quadrīgentī, ae, &                        | quadrīgentēsīmus.                                     |
| 500             | D <i>or</i> Iꝰ  | quīngentī, ae, &                          | quīngentēsīmus.                                       |
| 600             | DC              | sexcentī, ae, &                           | sexcentēsīmus.                                        |
| 700             | DCC             | septīngentī, ae, &                        | septīngentēsīmus.                                     |
| 800             | DCCC            | octīngentī, ae, &                         | octīngentēsīmus.                                      |
| 900             | DCCCC           | nongentī, ae, &                           | nongentēsīmus.                                        |
| 1,000           | M <i>or</i> CIꝰ | millē                                     | millēsīmus.                                           |
| 2,000           | MM              | duō millia                                | bis millēsīmus.                                       |
| 100,000         | CCCIꝰꝰꝰ         | centum millia                             | centīes millēsīmus.                                   |

*Dŭō*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, and *milliā*, *thousands*, are declined as follows :—

|      | M.               | F.      | N.      | M. and F.               | N.   | N.       |
|------|------------------|---------|---------|-------------------------|------|----------|
| Nom. | Dŭ-ō             | dŭ-ae   | dŭ-ō    | Trēs                    | trĕs | MILLĀ    |
| Acc. | Dŭ-ōs or<br>dŭ-ō | dŭ-as   | dŭ-ō    | Trēs or trīs            | trĕs | MILLĀ    |
| Gen. | Dŭ-ōrum          | dŭ-ōrum | dŭ-ōrum | Trium (of all genders)  |      | MILLium  |
| Dat. | Dŭ-ōbŭs          | dŭ-ōbŭs | dŭ-ōbŭs | Tribŭs (of all genders) |      | MILLibŭs |
| Abŭ. | Dŭ-ōbŭs          | dŭ-ōbŭs | dŭ-ōbŭs | Tribŭs (of all genders) |      | MILLibŭs |

*Obs.* *Ambō*, *both*, is declined like *duo*.

*Millē*, a *thousand*, in the singular, is an indeclinable adjective; but *milliā*, *thousands*, in the plural, is a Substantive: as, *millē hōminēs*, a *thousand men*; but *dŭō milliā hōminum*, *two thousand men*, literally, *two thousands of men*.

The Cardinal Numerals from *quattŭōr*, *four*, to *centum*, a *hundred*, are indeclinable.

*Dŭcenti*, *ae*, *ā*, *two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

*Ordinal Numerals* denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series: as, *primŭs*, *first*; *secundŭs*, or *altēr*, *second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives.

#### EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puero tres libros dat. 3. Sunt (*there are*) sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim millia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani; primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus octavus est anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat trigesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. In a Roman legion (there) were ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (there) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.\*

\* The number of soldiers in a legion varied considerably at different periods.

XV.—THE VERB SUM, *I am.*

Sum, fui, futurus, esse,—to be.

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                   |                 |                     |                  |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Sum, | <i>I am</i>     | <i>Plur.</i> Sumus, | <i>We are</i>    |
| Es,               | <i>thou art</i> | Estis,              | <i>ye are</i>    |
| Est,              | <i>he is.</i>   | Sunt,               | <i>they are.</i> |

## 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

|                   |                     |                      |                      |
|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Ero, | <i>I shall be</i>   | <i>Plur.</i> Erimus, | <i>We shall be</i>   |
| Eris,             | <i>thou wilt be</i> | Eritis,              | <i>ye will be</i>    |
| Erit,             | <i>he will be.</i>  | Erunr,               | <i>they will be.</i> |

## 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                    |                  |                      |                   |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Eram, | <i>I was</i>     | <i>Plur.</i> Eramus, | <i>We were</i>    |
| Eras,              | <i>thou wast</i> | Eratís,              | <i>ye were</i>    |
| Erat,              | <i>he was.</i>   | Erant,               | <i>they were.</i> |

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                   |                           |                                     |                         |
|-------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Fui, | <i>I have been, or</i>    | <i>Plur.</i> Fuimus,                | <i>We have been, or</i> |
|                   | <i>I was</i>              |                                     | <i>we were</i>          |
| Fuisti,           | <i>thou hast been, or</i> | Fuistis,                            | <i>ye have been, or</i> |
|                   | <i>thou wast</i>          |                                     | <i>ye were</i>          |
| Fuit,             | <i>he has been, or</i>    | Fuerunt } <i>they have been, or</i> |                         |
|                   | <i>he was.</i>            | or fueré }                          | <i>they were.</i>       |

## 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                     |                            |                        |                             |
|---------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Fuero, | <i>I shall have been</i>   | <i>Plur.</i> Fuerimus, | <i>We shall have been</i>   |
| Fueris,             | <i>thou wilt have been</i> | Fueritis,              | <i>ye will have been</i>    |
| Fuerit,             | <i>he will have been.</i>  | Fuerint,               | <i>they will have been.</i> |

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                      |                        |                        |                       |
|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Fueram, | <i>I had been</i>      | <i>Plur.</i> Fueramus, | <i>We had been</i>    |
| Fueras,              | <i>thou hadst been</i> | Fueratis,              | <i>ye had been</i>    |
| Fuerat,              | <i>he had been.</i>    | Fuerant,               | <i>they had been.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                  |                 |                    |               |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Es, | <i>Be thou.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> Esté, | <i>Be ye.</i> |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------------|---------------|

## 2. FUTURE TENSE.

|                    |                             |                      |                           |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Esté, | <i>Thou shalt or must</i>   | <i>Plur.</i> Estóte, | <i>Ye shall or must</i>   |
|                    | <i>be</i>                   |                      | <i>be</i>                 |
| Esté,              | <i>he shall or must be.</i> | Sunto,               | <i>they shall or must</i> |
|                    |                             |                      | <i>be.</i>                |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                          |                      |                            |                     |
|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Sim,</b> | <i>I may be</i>      | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Simūs,</b> | <i>We may be</i>    |
| <b>Sis,</b>              | <i>thou mayst be</i> | <b>Sitis,</b>              | <i>ye may be</i>    |
| <b>Sit,</b>              | <i>he may be.</i>    | <b>Sint,</b>               | <i>they may be.</i> |

*Obs.* The first and third Persons singular and plural of the Present Subjunctive are often used as Imperatives; as, *sint cives justī*, *let the citizens be just.*

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                                                  |                                 |                       |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Essem</b> or } <i>I might be</i> | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Esēmūs</b> or } | <i>We might be</i>    |
| <b>fōrem,</b> }                                  | <b>fōrēmūs,</b> }               |                       |
| <b>Esēs</b> or } <i>thou mightst be</i>          | <b>Esētis</b> or }              | <i>ye might be</i>    |
| <b>fōrēs,</b> }                                  | <b>fōrētis,</b> }               |                       |
| <b>Esēt</b> or } <i>he might be.</i>             | <b>Esent</b> or }               | <i>they might be.</i> |
| <b>fōrēt,</b> }                                  | <b>fōrent,</b> }                |                       |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                             |                             |                               |                            |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuērim,</b> | <i>I may have been</i>      | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuērimūs,</b> | <i>We may have been</i>    |
| <b>Fuēris,</b>              | <i>thou mayst have been</i> | <b>Fuēritis,</b>              | <i>ye may have been</i>    |
| <b>Fuērit,</b>              | <i>he may have been.</i>    | <b>Fuērint,</b>               | <i>they may have been.</i> |

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                              |                     |                                |                   |
|------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuissem,</b> | <i>I should</i>     | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuissēmūs,</b> | <i>We should</i>  |
| <b>Fuissēs,</b>              | <i>thou wouldst</i> | <b>Fuissētis,</b>              | <i>ye would</i>   |
| <b>Fuissēt,</b>              | <i>he would</i>     | <b>Fuissent,</b>               | <i>they would</i> |
|                              | <i>have been.</i>   |                                | <i>have been.</i> |

## VERB INFINITIVE.

|                     |                                      |                           |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| INFINITIVE PRESENT, | } <b>Esē,</b>                        | <i>to be.</i>             |
| and IMPERFECT,      |                                      |                           |
| INFINITIVE PERFECT, | } <b>Fuissē,</b>                     | <i>to have been.</i>      |
| and PLUPERFECT,     |                                      |                           |
| INFINITIVE FUTURE,  | <b>Fūtūrūs essē,</b> or <b>fōrē,</b> | <i>to be about to be.</i> |
| PARTICIPLE FUTURE,  | <b>Fūtūrūs; -a, -um,</b>             | <i>about to be.</i>       |

*NOTE.*—A vowel before another vowel is usually short, and will therefore in future not be marked.

*Obs.* *Fūtūrūs* may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: as, *fūtūrūs sum*, *I am about to be*; *fūtūrūs eram*, *I was about to be*, &c.

*The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.*

## EXERCISE XX.

**A.**—1. *Sum laetus.* 2. *Es tristis.* 3. *Non diligens fuisti, Tite.* 4. *Probi filii gaudium patris erunt.* 5. *Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia.* 6. *Dux vester ero: victores erimus.* 7. *Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis.* 8. *Multi erunt pauperes, qui (uho) divites fuerant.* 9. *Cives urbis liberae sumus.* 10. *Custodes miserae puellae fuistis.*

1. We are joyful. 2. Ye are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen.

4. The contented (*pl.*) are always joyful; the rich (*pl.*) are often sad. 5. If ye are good, ye are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. Ye will be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

### *Imperative Mood.*

**B.**—1. *Judex custos severus juris esto.* 2. *Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis.* 3. *Discipuli suntu attenti.* 4. *Judices justi suntu.* 5. *Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto.* 6. *Amici fideles suntu.* 7. *Reges patres patriae suntu.* 8. *Attenti este, discipuli.* 9. *Contenti estote sorte vestra.* 10. *Praeceptorum memores este.*

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Praise shall be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends! 4. The judge must be just. 5. They are contented; they shall be rich. 6. There must be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be upright; thou wilt be successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be (*sint*) free, let them be happy! 10. The city shall be the booty of the soldiers.

## XVI.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

|           |                                                |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------|
| Absum,    | <i>I am absent.</i>                            |
| Adsum,    | <i>I am present, stand by, side with.</i>      |
| Dēsum,    | <i>I am wanting.</i>                           |
| Insum,    | <i>I am in.</i>                                |
| Intersum, | <i>I am among.</i>                             |
| Obsum,    | <i>I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.</i> |
| Praesum,  | <i>I am before, am at the head of.</i>         |
| Prōsum,   | <i>I am serviceable, do good to.</i>           |
| Sūbsum,   | <i>I am under, or amongst.</i>                 |
| Sūpersum, | <i>I remain over, survive.</i>                 |

All these compounds of Sum are followed by the Dative Case. They are conjugated like Sum, but Prōsum takes *d* before *e*: as,

### INDICATIVE.

#### *Present.*

|              |                |  |              |                   |
|--------------|----------------|--|--------------|-------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | Prō-sum        |  | <i>Plur.</i> | Prō-sūmūs         |
|              | Prōd-ēs        |  |              | Prōd-estis        |
|              | Prōd-est.      |  |              | Prō-sunt.         |
|              | <i>Future.</i> |  |              | <i>Imperfect.</i> |
|              | Prōd-ēro.      |  |              | Prōd-ēram.        |

### INFINITIVE—*Present.*

Prōd-esse.

## EXERCISE XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praeferunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variarum cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deest animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. He was not serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was amongst his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

## XVII.—THE PRONOUNS.

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## 1. Pronoun of the First Person.

| Sing. |                           | Plur.              |                       |
|-------|---------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Nom.  | Egō, I                    | Nōs,               | we                    |
| Acc.  | Mē, me                    | Nōs,               | us                    |
| Gen.  | Mēi, of me                | Nostri or nostrum, | of us                 |
| Dat.  | Mihi, to or for me        | Nōbīs,             | to or for us          |
| Abl.  | Mē, by, with, or from me. | Nōbīs,             | by, with, or from us. |

## 2. Pronoun of the Second Person.

| Sing. |                             | Plur.              |                        |
|-------|-----------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| N. V. | Tū, thou                    | Vōs,               | ye                     |
| Acc.  | Tē, thee                    | Vōs,               | you                    |
| Gen.  | Tui, of thee                | Vestri or vestrum, | of you                 |
| Dat.  | Tibi, to or for thee        | Vōbīs,             | to or for you          |
| Abl.  | Tē, by, with, or from thee. | Vōbīs,             | by, with, or from you. |

## 3. Pronoun of the Third Person.

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it, is, eā, id* is usually employed. (See p. 35.)

## II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.

The Reflective Pronoun refers to the Subject of the sentence, and cannot therefore have a Nominative case.

Sing. and Plur.

|             |                            |                                                            |
|-------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Acc.</i> | <b>Sē</b> or <b>sēsē</b> , | <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>            |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <b>Sui</b> ,               | <i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>         |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <b>Sibi</b> ,              | <i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <b>Sē</b> or <b>sēsē</b> , | <i>by or from himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i> |

There are no distinct reflective forms in the 1st and 2nd persons; the different cases of *ego* and *tu* being used reflectively: as *mei, of myself; tibi, to thyself*, etc.

## III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined as adjectives:

| M.             | F.             | N.              |                              |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Mēus,</b>   | <b>mēa,</b>    | <b>mēum,</b>    | <i>my or mine.</i>           |
| <b>Tuus,</b>   | <b>tua,</b>    | <b>tuum,</b>    | <i>thy or thine.</i>         |
| <b>Noster,</b> | <b>nostra,</b> | <b>nostrum,</b> | <i>our, ours.</i>            |
| <b>Vester,</b> | <b>vestra,</b> | <b>vestrum,</b> | <i>your, yours.</i>          |
| <b>Suus,</b>   | <b>sua,</b>    | <b>suum,</b>    | <i>his, her, its, their.</i> |

## EXERCISE XXII.

1. Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis. 2. Pater mihi librum dat utilem. 3. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis. 4. Patria mihi carior est quam vita. 5. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt. 6. Parentes vobis cari sunt. 7. Memores sumus tui. 8. Amicus memor est vestri. 9. Memoria vestri nobis grata est. 10. Mihi mea vita, tibi tua (vita) cara est.

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me. 2. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, citizens! 3. In thee is all our hope and safety. 4. Thy native-land must be ever most dear to thee. 5. Thine indolence is-in-the-way, Titus! 6. A true friend will be with thee in the time of danger. 7. The memory of our works survives us. 8. In neither battle was the general amongst his soldiers. 9. He was serviceable to his friends; he was hurtful to his enemies. 10. To us the victory is joyful, to you it is most-sad.

## IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this (near me)*; pl. *these*.

|      | M.    | Sing.<br>F. | N.  |  | M.    | Plur.<br>F. | N.    |
|------|-------|-------------|-----|--|-------|-------------|-------|
| Nom. | Hic   | haec        | hoc |  | Hi    | hae         | haec  |
| Acc. | Hunc  | hanc        | hoc |  | Hos   | has         | haec  |
| Gen. | Huius |             |     |  | Horum | harum       | horum |
| Dat. | Huius |             |     |  | His   |             |       |
| Abl. | Hoc   | hac         | hoc |  | His   |             |       |

2. Istē, istā, istud, *that (near you)*, *that of yours*; pl. *those*.

|      | M.     | Sing.<br>F. | N.    |  | M.      | Plur.<br>F. | N.      |
|------|--------|-------------|-------|--|---------|-------------|---------|
| Nom. | Istē   | istā        | istud |  | Isti    | istae       | istā    |
| Acc. | Istum  | istam       | istud |  | Istos   | istas       | istā    |
| Gen. | Istius |             |       |  | Istorum | istarum     | istorum |
| Dat. | Isti   |             |       |  | Istis   |             |         |
| Abl. | Istō   | istā        | istō  |  | Istis   |             |         |

3. Illē, illā, illud, *that, that yonder*; pl. *those*.

|      | M.     | Sing.<br>F. | N.    |  | M.      | Plur.<br>F. | N.      |
|------|--------|-------------|-------|--|---------|-------------|---------|
| Nom. | Illē   | illā        | illud |  | Illi    | illae       | illā    |
| Acc. | Illum  | illam       | illud |  | Ilios   | illas       | illā    |
| Gen. | Illius |             |       |  | Illorum | illarum     | illorum |
| Dat. | Illi   |             |       |  | Illis   |             |         |
| Abl. | Illō   | illā        | illō  |  | Illis   |             |         |

## EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. 2. Hi montes altissimi sunt. 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt. 4. Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. 6. Demosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; ille erat Graecus, hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste amicus vir est optimus. 8. Ista auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poetae clarissimum est.

1. These mountains are very high and very rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you (*sing.*), Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this mortal body. 4. That one man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that one (illa) is immortal. 9. Those hands (of yours) are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

V: DETERMINATE, RELATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE  
PRONOUNS.

1. *Īs, eā, ĭd, he, she, it, that*, referring to the former part of a sentence.

|      | M.   | Sing.<br>F. | N. |           | Plur.<br>F. | N.    |
|------|------|-------------|----|-----------|-------------|-------|
| Nom. | Īs   | eā          | ĭd | Ī         | eae         | eā    |
| Acc. | Ēum  | eam         | ĭd | Ēs        | eās         | eā    |
| Gen. | Ējus |             |    | Ēorum     | eārum       | eōrum |
| Dat. | Ēi   |             |    | Īs or eīs |             |       |
| Abl. | Ēō   | eā          | eō | Īs or eīs |             |       |

2. *Īdem, eādem, ĭdem, the same.*

|      | M.     | Sing.<br>F. | N.    |               | Plur.<br>F. | N.       |
|------|--------|-------------|-------|---------------|-------------|----------|
| Nom. | Īdem   | eādem       | ĭdem  | Īdem          | eādem       | eādem    |
| Acc. | Ēndem  | eandem      | ĭdem  | Ēndem         | eādem       | eādem    |
| Gen. | Ējndem |             |       | Ērūndem       | eārūndem    | eōrūndem |
| Dat. | Ēndem  |             |       | Īdem or eīdem |             |          |
| Abl. | Ēōdem  | eādem       | eōdem | Īdem or eīdem |             |          |

3. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself.*

|      | M.     | Sing.<br>F. | N.    |         | Plur.<br>F. | N.      |
|------|--------|-------------|-------|---------|-------------|---------|
| Nom. | Ipsē   | ipsā        | ipsum | Ipsī    | ipsae       | ipsā    |
| Acc. | Ipsū   | ipsam       | ipsum | Ipsōs   | ipsās       | ipsā    |
| Gen. | Ipsius |             |       | Ipsōrum | ipsārum     | ipsōrum |
| Dat. | Ipsī   |             |       | Ipsīs   |             |         |
| Abl. | Ipsō   | ipsā        | ipsō  | Ipsīs   |             |         |

4. Relative—*Quī, quae, quōd, who or which.*

|      | M.    | Sing.<br>F. | N.   |                | Plur.<br>F. | N.     |
|------|-------|-------------|------|----------------|-------------|--------|
| Nom. | Quī   | quae        | quōd | Quī            | quae        | quae   |
| Acc. | Quem  | quam        | quōd | Quōs           | quās        | quae   |
| Gen. | Cūjus |             |      | Quōrum         | quārum      | quōrum |
| Dat. | Cuī   |             |      | Quībus or quīs |             |        |
| Abl. | Quō   | quā         | quō  | Quībus or quīs |             |        |

5. Interrogative—*Quīs or quī, quae, quīd or quōd, who ? which ? what ?*

|      | M.          | Sing.<br>F. | N.           |                | Plur.<br>F. | N.     |
|------|-------------|-------------|--------------|----------------|-------------|--------|
| Nom. | Quīs or quī | quae        | quīd or quōd | Quī            | quae        | quae   |
| Acc. | Quem        | quam        | quīd or quōd | Quōs           | quās        | quae   |
| Gen. | Cūjus       |             |              | Quōrum         | quārum      | quōrum |
| Dat. | Cuī         |             |              | Quībus or quīs |             |        |
| Abl. | Quō         | quā         | quō          | Quībus or quīs |             |        |

The forms *quis* and *quīd* are used by themselves, without a Noun : as, *Quīs es ? who art thou ? Quīd est ? what is it ?* The forms *quī* and *quōd* are used interrogatively with a Noun : as, *Quī hōmo es ? what man art thou ? Quōd mārē, what sea ?*

**RULE 10.**—The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case :  
as, *Félix est rex quem omnēs civēs laudant, Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

*Lēgit, (he, she, it) reads.*

*Lēgunt, (they) read.*

#### EXERCISE XXIV.

**A.**—1. Amicum fidum habet; ei addictus est. 2. Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ille ejus libros legit. 3. Qui amico in periculis adest, is verus amicus est.\* 4. Il sunt cives boni, qui reipublicae prosunt. 5. Ipse labor nobis jucundus est. 6. Fons omnium voluptatum in nobis ipsis est. 7. Melior pars tui ipsius immortalis est. 8. Non minor pugna erat cum mulieribus Cimbrorum quam cum Cimbris ipsis. 9. Idem dies erit initium vitae aeternae. 10. Non omnibus hominibus eadem prosunt.

\* In translating this sentence, begin with *is verus amicus est.*

1. He has a faithful friend; he will never injure him. 2. My brother himself is a most elegant writer. 3. (He) who gives honours to the bad is hurtful to the state.\* 4. The wives of the Cimbrians were themselves brave. 5. The same (things) injure some, do good to others. 6. (He) who is hurtful to the commonwealth is hurtful to himself.\* 7. The same (things) are not pleasing to all (men). 8. Demosthenes himself was not always pleasing to his (fellow) citizens. 9. Cicero is a faithful friend; I am devoted to him. 10. Cicero is a most elegant writer; they read his books.

\* In sentences 3 and 6 begin with *qui*, and afterwards use *is*: see Latin sentences, No. 3.

**B.**—1. Quis habet exercitum? Quis est dux? 2. Cujus est equus? Cujus sunt arma? 3. Quae civitas habet optimas leges? 4. Quod animal est maximum et validissimum? 5. Quorum animalium sunt vires maximae? 6. Qui color pulcherrimus est? 7. Qui orator optimus et dulcissimus est? 8. Quorum arma sunt optima? 9. Cui dat (*does he give*) coronam? 10. Quod tempus felicius est quam praesens?

1. Which constellation is the most beautiful? 2. Which poet is the sweetest? 3. Who is he? what has he? 4. Who gives the book to thee? 5. To whom does he give the greatest praise? 6. Whose (*gen. sing.*) is the victory? Whose (*gen. pl.*) is the booty? 7. Which tax is the greatest? 8. Which king has the greatest taxes? 9. What animal is more sagacious (*prudens*) than the elephant? 10. What animal is more rapacious than the lion?

## XVIII.—THE VERB.

Latin Verbs have two Voices :

I. ACTIVE.

II. PASSIVE.

Verbs have two Parts :

I. FINITE.

II. INFINITE.

I. THE VERB FINITE has Three Moods :

- (1.) The INDICATIVE MOOD.
- (2.) The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
- (3.) The IMPERATIVE MOOD.

II. THE VERB INFINITE consists of Verbal Nouns and Adjectives :

- (1.) The INFINITIVE, which is a Verbal Noun.
- (2.) The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective.
- (3.) The SUPINE, }
- (4.) The GERUND, } which are Verbal Nouns.

Verbs have SIX TENSES :

I. Three expressing unfinished action :

Present.  
Future Simple.  
Imperfect.

II. Three expressing finished action :

Perfect.  
Future Perfect.  
Pluperfect.

Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each number.

Latin Verbs are arranged in four Classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final letter of the Stem, which is seen in the Infinitive Active. The Stem of

Infinitive.

- |                                           |                                |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| I: The First Conjugation ends in A: .. .. | as, <i>amā-rē, to love.</i>    |
| II. The Second " " E: .. ..               | as, <i>mōnē-rē, to advise.</i> |
| III. The Third " " { a Consonant }        | as, { <i>rēg-ērē, to rule.</i> |
|                                           | or U: }                        |
| IV. The Fourth " " I: .. ..               | as, <i>audī-rē, to hear.</i>   |

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Present Infinitive, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

## XIX.—FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Āmo, āmāvi, āmātum, āmārē,—to love. Stem : āma-.

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                   |                                   |                       |                                  |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Āmo, | <i>I love, or am loving</i>       | <i>Plur.</i> Ām-āmūs, | <i>We love, or are loving</i>    |
| Ām-ās,            | <i>thou lovest, or art loving</i> | Ām-ātīs,              | <i>ye love, or are loving</i>    |
| Ām-āt,            | <i>he loves, or is loving.</i>    | Ām-ant,               | <i>they love, or are loving.</i> |

## 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

|                      |                       |                         |                        |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Ām-āho, | <i>I shall love</i>   | <i>Plur.</i> Ām-āhīmūs, | <i>We shall love</i>   |
| Ām-āhīs,             | <i>thou wilt love</i> | Ām-āhītīs,              | <i>ye will love</i>    |
| Ām-āhīt,             | <i>he will love.</i>  | Ām-āhant,               | <i>they will love.</i> |

## 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                       |                         |                         |                          |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Ām-āham, | <i>I was loving</i>     | <i>Plur.</i> Ām-āhāmūs, | <i>We were loving</i>    |
| Ām-āhās,              | <i>thou wast loving</i> | Ām-āhātīs,              | <i>ye were loving</i>    |
| Ām-āhāt,              | <i>he was loving.</i>   | Ām-āhant,               | <i>they were loving.</i> |

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                      |                                         |                         |                                        |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvi, | <i>I have loved, or I loved</i>         | <i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvimūs, | <i>We have loved, or we loved</i>      |
| Ām-āvistī,           | <i>thou hast loved, or thou lovedst</i> | Ām-āvistīs,             | <i>ye have loved, or ye loved</i>      |
| Ām-āvīt,             | <i>he has loved, or he loved.</i>       | Ām-āvērant,             | <i>they have loved, or they loved.</i> |

## 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                        |                       |                           |                        |
|------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvēro, | <i>I shall have</i>   | <i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvērimūs, | <i>We shall have</i>   |
| Ām-āvērīs,             | <i>thou wilt have</i> | Ām-āvērītīs,              | <i>ye will have</i>    |
| Ām-āvērīt,             | <i>he will have.</i>  | Ām-āvērint,               | <i>they will have.</i> |

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                         |                         |                           |                        |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvēram, | <i>I had loved</i>      | <i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvērāmūs, | <i>We had loved</i>    |
| Ām-āvērās,              | <i>thou hadst loved</i> | Ām-āvērātīs,              | <i>ye had loved</i>    |
| Ām-āvērāt,              | <i>he had loved.</i>    | Ām-āvērant,               | <i>they had loved.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

|                    |                   |                      |                 |
|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Ām-ā, | <i>Love thou.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> Ām-ātē, | <i>Love ye.</i> |
|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------|

## FUTURE TENSE.

|                      |                                |                        |                                 |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Ām-āto, | <i>Thou shalt or must love</i> | <i>Plur.</i> Ām-ātōtē, | <i>Ye shall or must love</i>    |
| Ām-āto,              | <i>he shall or must love.</i>  | Ām-anto,               | <i>they shall or must love.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.\*

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                                              |                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Ām-am,</b> <i>I may love</i> | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Ām-āmās,</b> <i>We may love</i> |
| <b>Ām-āsa,</b> <i>thou mayst love</i>        | <b>Ām-āsīs,</b> <i>ye may love</i>              |
| <b>Ām-ēt,</b> <i>he may love.</i>            | <b>Ām-ent,</b> <i>they may love.</i>            |

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                                                  |                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <b>Ām-ārem,</b> <i>I might love</i> | <i>Plur.</i> <b>Ām-ārēmās,</b> <i>We might love</i> |
| <b>Ām-ārēsa,</b> <i>thou mightst love</i>        | <b>Ām-ārētīs,</b> <i>ye might love</i>              |
| <b>Ām-ārēt,</b> <i>he might love.</i>            | <b>Ām-ārent,</b> <i>they might love.</i>            |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                                                   |                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> <b>Ām-āvērim,</b> <i>I may</i>          | <i>P.</i> <b>Ām-āvērimās,</b> <i>We may</i>        |
| <b>Ām-āvēris,</b> <i>thou mayst</i> } <i>have</i> | <b>Ām-āvēritīs,</b> <i>ye may</i> } <i>have</i>    |
| <b>Ām-āvērit,</b> <i>he may</i> } <i>loved.</i>   | <b>Ām-āvērint,</b> <i>they may</i> } <i>loved.</i> |

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                                                      |                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> <b>Ām-āviṣsem,</b> <i>I should</i>         | <i>P.</i> <b>Ām-āviṣēmās,</b> <i>We should</i>       |
| <b>Ām-āviṣāsa,</b> <i>thou wouldst</i> } <i>have</i> | <b>Ām-āviṣētīs,</b> <i>ye would</i> } <i>have</i>    |
| <b>Ām-āviṣēt,</b> <i>he would</i> } <i>loved.</i>    | <b>Ām-āviṣent,</b> <i>they would</i> } <i>loved.</i> |

\* The 1st and 2nd Persons of the Present Subjunctive are often used with a kind of Imperative sense: *āmam, let me love; āmēt, let him love; āmēmās, let us love.* Concerning the translation of the Subjunctive Mood in general, see p. 47.

## VERB INFINITE.

## INFINITIVES.

|                  |                                       |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>PRES. and</i> | <b>Ām-ārē,</b> <i>to love.</i>        |
| <i>IMP.</i>      |                                       |
| <i>PERF. and</i> | <b>Ām-āviṣē,</b> { <i>to have</i>     |
| <i>PLUP.</i>     | <b>Ām-āviṣēt,</b> { <i>loved.</i>     |
| <i>FUTURE.</i>   | <b>Ām-ātūrās</b> { <i>to be about</i> |
|                  | <b>essē,</b> { <i>to love.</i>        |

## SUPINES.

|                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Ām-ātum,</b> <i>to love.</i>                  |
| <b>Ām-ātū,</b> <i>in loving, or to be loved.</i> |

## GERUND.

|                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Acc.</i> <b>Ām-andum,</b> <i>loving</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> <b>Ām-andī,</b> <i>of loving</i>  |
| <i>Dat.</i> <b>Ām-andō,</b> <i>for loving</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> <b>Ām-andō,</b> <i>by loving.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

**PRESENT.** Ām-ans, -antis, *loving.*  
**FUTURE.** Ām-ātūrās (ā, um), *about*  
*[to love.]*

*Obs.* **Āmātūrās** may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: *as, āmātūris, I am about to love; āmātūras eram, I was about to love, &c.* This is called the *Periphrastic Conjugation*.

*NOTE.*—In all the Perfect Tenses *ri* and *ve* may be omitted before *s* and *r*: *as*,

|                                                                      |                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>āmāvistī</b> becomes <b>āmastī</b>                                | <b>āmāvēro</b> becomes <b>āmāro</b> |
| <b>āmāvistīs</b> " <b>āmastīs</b>                                    | <b>āmāvēram</b> " <b>āmāram</b>     |
| <b>āmāvērunt</b> " <b>āmārunt</b>                                    | <b>āmāvērim</b> " <b>āmārim</b>     |
| but <b>āmāvērē</b> does not become <b>āmāvissem</b> " <b>āmassem</b> |                                     |
| <b>āmārē</b> , which would be con-                                   | <b>āmāvissē</b> " <b>āmassē</b>     |
| founded with the Present Infin.                                      |                                     |

## XX.—SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōneo, mōnuī, mōnītum, mōnērē,—to advise. Stem: mōne-.

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|            |                                            |              |                                          |
|------------|--------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------|
| S. Mōn-eo, | <i>I advise, or am<br/>advising</i>        | P. Mōn-ēmūs, | <i>We advise, or are<br/>advising</i>    |
| Mōn-ēs,    | <i>thou adviseest, or<br/>art advising</i> | Mōn-ētis,    | <i>ye advise, or are<br/>advising</i>    |
| Mōn-ēt,    | <i>he advises, or is<br/>advising.</i>     | Mōn-ent,     | <i>they advise, or are<br/>advising.</i> |

## 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

|             |                         |                |                          |
|-------------|-------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| S. Mōn-ēbo, | <i>I shall advise</i>   | P. Mōn-ēbimūs, | <i>We shall advise</i>   |
| Mōn-ēbīs,   | <i>thou wilt advise</i> | Mōn-ēbītis,    | <i>ye will advise</i>    |
| Mōn-ēbīt,   | <i>he will advise.</i>  | Mōn-ēbunt,     | <i>they will advise.</i> |

## 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|              |                           |                |                                  |
|--------------|---------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|
| S. Mōn-ēbam, | <i>I was advising</i>     | P. Mōn-ēbāmūs, | <i>We were advising</i>          |
| Mōn-ēbās,    | <i>thou wast advising</i> | Mōn-ēbātis,    | <i>ye were advising</i>          |
| Mōn-ēbāt,    | <i>he was advising.</i>   | Mōn-ēbant,     | <i>they were advis-<br/>ing.</i> |

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|            |                                            |               |                                                            |
|------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| S. Mōn-uī, | <i>I have advised, or<br/>I advised</i>    | P. Mōn-uīmūs, | <i>We have advised,<br/>or we advised</i>                  |
| Mōn-uistī, | <i>thou hast advised,<br/>or advisedst</i> | Mōn-uistīs,   | <i>ye have advised,<br/>or ye advised</i>                  |
| Mōn-uīt,   | <i>he has advised, or<br/>he advised.</i>  | Mōn-uērunt,   | <i>they have advised,<br/>or -uērē, } or they advised.</i> |

## 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|              |                  |                 |                  |
|--------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| S. Mōn-uēro, | <i>I shall</i>   | P. Mōn-uērimūs, | <i>We shall</i>  |
| Mōn-uērīs,   | <i>thou wilt</i> | Mōn-uēritīs,    | <i>ye will</i>   |
| Mōn-uērīt,   | <i>he will</i>   | Mōn-uērint,     | <i>they will</i> |
|              | } have advised.  |                 | } have advised.  |

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|               |                           |                 |                          |
|---------------|---------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| S. Mōn-uēram, | <i>I had advised</i>      | P. Mōn-uērāmūs, | <i>We had advised</i>    |
| Mōn-uērās,    | <i>thou hadst advised</i> | Mōn-uērātīs,    | <i>ye had advised</i>    |
| Mōn-uērāt,    | <i>he had advised.</i>    | Mōn-uērant,     | <i>they had advised.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

|           |                     |             |                   |
|-----------|---------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| S. Mōn-ē, | <i>Advise thou.</i> | P. Mōn-ētē, | <i>Advise ye.</i> |
|-----------|---------------------|-------------|-------------------|

## FUTURE TENSE.

|             |                                      |               |                                       |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| S. Mōn-ēto, | <i>Thou shalt or must<br/>advise</i> | P. Mōn-ētōtē, | <i>Ye shall or must<br/>advise</i>    |
| Mōn-ēto,    | <i>he shall or must advise.</i>      | Mōn-ento,     | <i>they shall or must<br/>advise.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                    |                          |                      |                         |
|--------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Mön-eam, | <i>I may advise</i>      | <i>P.</i> Mön-eāmūs, | <i>We may advise</i>    |
| Mön-eās,           | <i>thou mayst advise</i> | Mön-eātīs,           | <i>ye may advise</i>    |
| Mön-eāt,           | <i>he may advise.</i>    | Mön-eant,            | <i>they may advise.</i> |

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                     |                            |                       |                           |
|---------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Mön-ërem, | <i>I might advise</i>      | <i>P.</i> Mön-ërēmūs, | <i>We might advise</i>    |
| Mön-ërēs,           | <i>thou mightst advise</i> | Mön-ërētīs,           | <i>ye might advise</i>    |
| Mön-ërēt,           | <i>he might advise.</i>    | Mön-ërent,            | <i>they might advise.</i> |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                      |                      |                        |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Mön-uërim, | <i>I may</i>         | <i>P.</i> Mön-uërimūs, | <i>We may</i>        |
| Mön-uëris,           | <i>thou mayst</i>    | Mön-uëritīs,           | <i>ye may</i>        |
| Mön-uërit,           | <i>he may</i>        | Mön-uërint,            | <i>they may</i>      |
|                      | <i>have advised.</i> |                        | <i>have advised.</i> |

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                       |                      |                         |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Mön-uissēm, | <i>I should</i>      | <i>P.</i> Mön-uissēmūs, | <i>We should</i>     |
| Mön-uissēs,           | <i>thou wouldst</i>  | Mön-uissētīs,           | <i>ye would</i>      |
| Mön-uissēt,           | <i>he would</i>      | Mön-uissent,            | <i>they would</i>    |
|                       | <i>have advised.</i> |                         | <i>have advised.</i> |

## VERB INFINITE.

## INFINITIVES.

|                  |              |                                           |
|------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>PRES. and</i> | } Mön-ërē,   | <i>to advise.</i>                         |
| <i>IMP.</i>      |              |                                           |
| <i>PERF. and</i> | } Mön-uissē, | { <i>to have</i><br><i>advised.</i>       |
| <i>PLUP.</i>     |              |                                           |
| <i>FUTURE.</i>   | { Mön-ītūrūs | { <i>to be about</i><br><i>to advise.</i> |
|                  | essē,        |                                           |

## SUPINES.

|           |                                                 |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Mön-ītum, | <i>to advise.</i>                               |
| Mön-ītū,  | <i>in advising, or</i><br><i>to be advised.</i> |

## GERUND.

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Acc.</i> Mön-endum, | <i>advising</i>     |
| <i>Gen.</i> Mön-endī,  | <i>of advising</i>  |
| <i>Dat.</i> Mön-endō,  | <i>for advising</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> Mön-endō,  | <i>by advising.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>PRESENT.</i> Mön-ens, -entīs,    | <i>advis-</i><br><i>ing.</i> |
| <i>FUTURE.</i> Mön-ītūrūs, (ā, um), | <i>about to advise.</i>      |

*Obs.* Mönītūrūs may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, mönītūrūs sum, *I am about to advise*; mönītūrūs eram, *I was about to advise*, &c. This is called the *Periphrastic Conjugation*.

## XXI.—THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.— ACTIVE VOICE.

**Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—to rule. Stem : rēg-.**

### VERB FINITE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                  |                            |   |                     |                          |   |
|------------------|----------------------------|---|---------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <i>S. Rēg-o,</i> | <i>I rule, or am</i>       | } | <i>P. Rēg-īmūs,</i> | <i>We rule, or are</i>   | } |
| <i>Rēg-is,</i>   | <i>thou rulest, or art</i> |   | <i>Rēg-itīs,</i>    | <i>ye rule, or are</i>   |   |
| <i>Rēg-it,</i>   | <i>he rules, or is</i>     |   | <i>Rēg-unt,</i>     | <i>they rule, or are</i> |   |

##### 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

|                   |                       |                     |                        |
|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| <i>S. Rēg-am,</i> | <i>I shall rule</i>   | <i>P. Rēg-ēmūs,</i> | <i>We shall rule</i>   |
| <i>Rēg-es,</i>    | <i>thou wilt rule</i> | <i>Rēg-ētīs,</i>    | <i>ye will rule</i>    |
| <i>Rēg-et,</i>    | <i>he will rule.</i>  | <i>Rēg-ent,</i>     | <i>they will rule.</i> |

##### 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                     |                         |                       |                          |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>S. Rēg-ebam,</i> | <i>I was ruling</i>     | <i>P. Rēg-ebāmūs,</i> | <i>We were ruling</i>    |
| <i>Rēg-ebās,</i>    | <i>thou wast ruling</i> | <i>Rēg-ebātīs,</i>    | <i>ye were ruling</i>    |
| <i>Rēg-ebāt,</i>    | <i>he was ruling.</i>   | <i>Rēg-ebant,</i>     | <i>they were ruling.</i> |

##### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                  |                            |                     |                          |
|------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>S. Rex-i,</i> | <i>I have ruled, or I</i>  | <i>P. Rex-īmūs,</i> | <i>We have ruled,</i>    |
|                  | <i>ruled</i>               |                     | <i>or we ruled</i>       |
| <i>Rex-istī,</i> | <i>thou hast ruled, or</i> | <i>Rex-istīs,</i>   | <i>ye have ruled, or</i> |
|                  | <i>thou ruledst</i>        |                     | <i>ye ruled</i>          |
| <i>Rex-it,</i>   | <i>he has ruled, or he</i> | <i>Rex-ērunt or</i> | <i>they have ruled,</i>  |
|                  | <i>ruled.</i>              | <i>rex-ērē,</i>     | <i>or they ruled.</i>    |

##### 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                    |                             |                       |                              |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>S. Rex-ēro,</i> | <i>I shall have ruled</i>   | <i>P. Rex-ērimūs,</i> | <i>We shall have ruled</i>   |
| <i>Rex-erīs,</i>   | <i>thou wilt have ruled</i> | <i>Rex-erītīs,</i>    | <i>ye will have ruled</i>    |
| <i>Rex-erit,</i>   | <i>he will have ruled.</i>  | <i>Rex-erint,</i>     | <i>they will have ruled.</i> |

##### 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                     |                         |                       |                        |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>S. Rex-eram,</i> | <i>I had ruled</i>      | <i>P. Rex-erāmūs,</i> | <i>We had ruled</i>    |
| <i>Rex-erās,</i>    | <i>thou hadst ruled</i> | <i>Rex-erātīs,</i>    | <i>ye had ruled</i>    |
| <i>Rex-erāt,</i>    | <i>he had ruled.</i>    | <i>Rex-erant,</i>     | <i>they had ruled.</i> |

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

|                  |                   |                    |                 |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>S. Rēg-ē,</i> | <i>Rule thou.</i> | <i>P. Rēg-ītē,</i> | <i>Rule ye.</i> |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------|

##### FUTURE TENSE.

|                    |                                |                      |                                 |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>S. Rēg-ito,</i> | <i>Thou shalt or must rule</i> | <i>P. Rēg-itētē,</i> | <i>Ye shall or must rule</i>    |
| <i>Rēg-ito,</i>    | <i>he shall or must rule.</i>  | <i>Rēg-unto,</i>     | <i>they shall or must rule.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                   |                         |                     |                       |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>S. Rēg-am,</i> | <i>I may rule</i>       | <i>P. Rēg-amūs,</i> | <i>We may rule</i>    |
| <i>Rēg-is,</i>    | <i>thou mayest rule</i> | <i>Rēg-ātis,</i>    | <i>ye may rule</i>    |
| <i>Rēg-ūt,</i>    | <i>he may rule.</i>     | <i>Rēg-ant,</i>     | <i>they may rule.</i> |

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                     |                           |                       |                         |
|---------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>S. Rēg-ērem,</i> | <i>I might rule</i>       | <i>P. Rēg-ērēmūs,</i> | <i>We might rule</i>    |
| <i>Rēg-ērīs,</i>    | <i>thou mightest rule</i> | <i>Rēg-ērētis,</i>    | <i>ye might rule</i>    |
| <i>Rēg-ērēt,</i>    | <i>he might rule.</i>     | <i>Rēg-ērent,</i>     | <i>they might rule.</i> |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                     |                    |               |                       |                 |               |
|---------------------|--------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>S. Rēx-ērim,</i> | <i>I may</i>       | } <i>have</i> | <i>P. Rēx-ērīmūs,</i> | <i>We may</i>   | } <i>have</i> |
| <i>Rēx-ērīs,</i>    | <i>thou mayest</i> |               | <i>Rēx-ērītis,</i>    | <i>ye may</i>   |               |
| <i>Rēx-ērīt,</i>    | <i>he may</i>      |               | <i>Rēx-ērīt,</i>      | <i>they may</i> |               |
|                     |                    |               |                       |                 | <i>ruled.</i> |

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                      |                     |               |                       |                   |               |
|----------------------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| <i>S. Rēx-issem,</i> | <i>I should</i>     | } <i>have</i> | <i>P. Rēx-isēmūs,</i> | <i>We should</i>  | } <i>have</i> |
| <i>Rēx-isset,</i>    | <i>thou wouldst</i> |               | <i>Rēx-isētis,</i>    | <i>ye would</i>   |               |
| <i>Rēx-isset,</i>    | <i>he would</i>     |               | <i>Rēx-issent,</i>    | <i>they would</i> |               |
|                      |                     |               |                       |                   | <i>ruled.</i> |

## VERB INFINITIVE.

## INFINITIVES.

|                  |   |                  |                      |
|------------------|---|------------------|----------------------|
| <b>PRES. and</b> | } | <i>Rēg-ērē,</i>  | <i>to rule.</i>      |
| <b>IMP.</b>      |   |                  |                      |
| <b>PERF. and</b> | } | <i>Rēx-isē,</i>  | <i>{ to have</i>     |
| <b>PLUP.</b>     |   |                  | <i>ruled.</i>        |
| <b>FUTURE.</b>   | } | <i>Reo-tūrūs</i> | <i>{ to be about</i> |
|                  |   | <i>essē,</i>     | <i>to rule.</i>      |

## SUPINES.

|                 |                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Reo-tum,</i> | <i>to rule</i>                    |
| <i>Reo-tū,</i>  | <i>in ruling, or to be ruled.</i> |

## GERUND.

|                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Acc. Rēg-endum,</i> | <i>ruling</i>     |
| <i>Gen. Rēg-endi,</i>  | <i>of ruling</i>  |
| <i>Dat. Rēg-endō,</i>  | <i>for ruling</i> |
| <i>Abl. Rēg-endō,</i>  | <i>by ruling.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                 |                           |                         |
|-----------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>PRESENT.</b> | <i>Rēg-ens, -entis,</i>   | <i>ruling</i>           |
| <b>FUTURE.</b>  | <i>Reo-tūrūs (ā, um),</i> | <i>about [to rule.]</i> |

*Obs. Reo-tūrūs* may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: *am, reo-tūrūs sum, I am about to rule; reo-tūrūs eram, I was about to rule, &c.* This is called the *Periphrastio Conjugation*.

# 44      FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## XXII.—FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

**Audio, audivi, auditum, audiré,—to hear. Stem : audi-.**

### VERB FINITE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                                     |                  |                                     |                   |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-io, I hear, or am</i>     | } <i>hearing</i> | <i>P. Aud-imūs, We hear, or are</i> | } <i>hearing.</i> |
| <i>Aud-is, thou hearest, or art</i> |                  | <i>Aud-itis, ye hear, or are</i>    |                   |
| <i>Aud-it, he hears, or is</i>      |                  | <i>Aud-iunt, they hear, or are</i>  |                   |

##### 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

|                                 |  |                                    |  |
|---------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--|
| <i>S. Aud-iam, I shall hear</i> |  | <i>P. Aud-iēmūs, We shall hear</i> |  |
| <i>Aud-iēs, thou wilt hear</i>  |  | <i>Aud-iētis, ye will hear</i>     |  |
| <i>Aud-iēt, he will hear.</i>   |  | <i>Aud-ient, they will hear.</i>   |  |

##### 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                                     |  |                                        |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------|--|
| <i>S. Aud-iēbam, I was hearing</i>  |  | <i>P. Aud-iēbāmūs, We were hearing</i> |  |
| <i>Aud-iēbās, thou wast hearing</i> |  | <i>Aud-iēbātis, ye were hearing</i>    |  |
| <i>Aud-iēbāt, he was hearing.</i>   |  | <i>Aud-iēbant, they were hearing.</i>  |  |

##### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                                     |  |                                        |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------|--|
| <i>S. Aud-ivi, I have heard, or</i> |  | <i>P. Aud-ivimūs, We have heard,</i>   |  |
| <i>I heard</i>                      |  | <i>or we heard</i>                     |  |
| <i>Aud-ivistī, thou hast heard,</i> |  | <i>Aud-ivistis, ye have heard, or</i>  |  |
| <i>or thou heardst</i>              |  | <i>ye heard</i>                        |  |
| <i>Aud-ivīt, he has heard, or</i>   |  | <i>Aud-ivērunt, } they have heard,</i> |  |
| <i>he heard.</i>                    |  | <i>or -ivērē, } or they heard.</i>     |  |

##### 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                              |               |                                  |               |
|------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------|---------------|
| <i>S. Aud-ivēro, I shall</i> | } <i>have</i> | <i>P. Aud-ivērimūs, We shall</i> | } <i>have</i> |
| <i>Aud-ivēris, thou wilt</i> |               | <i>Aud-ivēritis, ye will</i>     |               |
| <i>Aud-ivērīt, he will</i>   |               | <i>Aud-ivērint, they will</i>    |               |

##### 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                                     |  |                                      |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>S. Aud-ivēram, I had heard</i>   |  | <i>P. Aud-ivērāmūs, We had heard</i> |  |
| <i>Aud-ivērās, thou hadst heard</i> |  | <i>Aud-ivērātis, ye had heard</i>    |  |
| <i>Aud-ivērāt, he had heard.</i>    |  | <i>Aud-ivērant, they had heard.</i>  |  |

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

|                             |  |                             |
|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-i, Hear thou.</i> |  | <i>P. Aud-itē, Hear ye.</i> |
|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------------|

##### FUTURE TENSE.

|                                       |  |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|--|
| <i>S. Aud-ito, Thou shalt or must</i> |  | <i>P. Aud-itōtē, Ye shall or must</i> |  |
| <i>hear</i>                           |  | <i>hear</i>                           |  |
| <i>Aud-ito, he shall or must</i>      |  | <i>Aud-iunto, they shall or must</i>  |  |
| <i>hear.</i>                          |  | <i>hear.</i>                          |  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                    |                         |                      |                       |
|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-iam,</i> | <i>I may hear</i>       | <i>P. Aud-iāmūs,</i> | <i>We may hear</i>    |
| <i>Aud-iās,</i>    | <i>thou mayest hear</i> | <i>Aud-iātis,</i>    | <i>ye may hear</i>    |
| <i>Aud-iāt,</i>    | <i>he may hear.</i>     | <i>Aud-iant,</i>     | <i>they may hear.</i> |

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                     |                          |                       |                         |
|---------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-irem,</i> | <i>I might hear</i>      | <i>P. Aud-irēmūs,</i> | <i>We might hear</i>    |
| <i>Aud-irēs,</i>    | <i>thou mightst hear</i> | <i>Aud-irētis,</i>    | <i>ye might hear</i>    |
| <i>Aud-irēt,</i>    | <i>he might hear.</i>    | <i>Aud-irent,</i>     | <i>they might hear.</i> |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                       |                    |                         |                 |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>S. Aud-ivērim,</i> | <i>I may</i>       | <i>P. Aud-ivērimūs,</i> | <i>We may</i>   |
| <i>Aud-ivēris,</i>    | <i>thou mayest</i> | <i>Aud-ivēritis,</i>    | <i>ye may</i>   |
| <i>Aud-ivērīt,</i>    | <i>he may</i>      | <i>Aud-ivērint,</i>     | <i>they may</i> |

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                        |                     |                          |                   |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-ivissem,</i> | <i>I should</i>     | <i>P. Aud-ivissēmūs,</i> | <i>We should</i>  |
| <i>Aud-ivissēs,</i>    | <i>thou wouldst</i> | <i>Aud-ivissētis,</i>    | <i>ye would</i>   |
| <i>Aud-ivissēt,</i>    | <i>he would</i>     | <i>Aud-ivissent,</i>     | <i>they would</i> |

## VERB INFINITE.

## INFINITIVES.

|                  |                     |                      |
|------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| <i>PRES. and</i> | <i>Aud-irē,</i>     | <i>to hear.</i>      |
| <i>IMP.</i>      |                     |                      |
| <i>PERF. and</i> | <i>Aud-ivissē,</i>  | <i>{ to have</i>     |
| <i>PLUP.</i>     |                     | <i>heard.</i>        |
| <i>FUTURE.</i>   | <i>{ Aud-iturūs</i> | <i>{ to be about</i> |
|                  | <i>essē,</i>        | <i>to hear.</i>      |

## GERUND.

|                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Acc. Aud-iendum,</i> | <i>hearing</i>     |
| <i>Gen. Aud-iendi,</i>  | <i>of hearing</i>  |
| <i>Dat. Aud-iendō,</i>  | <i>for hearing</i> |
| <i>Abl. Aud-iendō,</i>  | <i>by hearing.</i> |

## SUPINES.

|                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Aud-itum,</i> | <i>to hear.</i>       |
| <i>Aud-itū,</i>  | <i>in hearing, or</i> |
|                  | <i>to be heard.</i>   |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                 |                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| <i>PRESENT.</i> | <i>Aud-iens, -entis,</i>   |
|                 | <i>[hearing.]</i>          |
| <i>FUTURE.</i>  | <i>Aud-iturūs (ū, um),</i> |
|                 | <i>[about to hear.]</i>    |

*Obs. Auditūrus* may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: as, *auditūrus sum, I am about to hear*; *auditūrus eram, I was about to hear*, &c. This is called the *Periphrastic Conjugation*.

**NOTE.**—In all the Perfect Tenses *v* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *i*'s are often contracted into *i*: as,

|                          |                       |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>audivisti</i> becomes | <i>{ audixisti or</i> | <i>audivēram</i> becomes | <i>audixēram</i>       |
|                          | <i>audixisti</i>      | <i>audivērim</i>         | <i>audixērim</i>       |
| <i>audivistis</i>        | <i>" { audixistis</i> | <i>audivissem</i>        | <i>{ audixissem or</i> |
|                          | <i>or audixistis</i>  |                          | <i>audixissem</i>      |
| <i>audivit</i>           | <i>" audixit</i>      | <i>audivissē</i>         | <i>{ audixissē or</i>  |
| <i>audivērunt</i>        | <i>" audixerunt</i>   |                          | <i>audixissē.</i>      |
| <i>audivēro</i>          | <i>" audixero</i>     |                          |                        |

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXV.

*The Present, Future-Simple, and Imperfect Tenses, Indicative.*

**A.**—1. Ego te laudabam, tu me vituperabas. 2. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis. 3. Bonos semper laudabo, improbos semper vituperabo. 4. Si virtutem amabitis, omnes boni vos amabunt. 5. Dum nos placidus somnus recreabat, vos vigilabatis. 6. Quum milites urbem intrabant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Hieme in urbe habitamus, aestate autem in hortis habitabimus. 8. Probitate, non fraude amicos parabis. 9. Graeci partem praedae Diis dabant. 10. Multi homines aedificant domos, in quibus non habitabunt.

1. He was building a house in the city. 2. I shall always praise the good; I shall always find-fault-with the bad. 3. The Romans gave the greatest honours to good citizens. 4. By virtue they-are-getting to themselves (*sibi*) a renowned name. 5. While the soldiers were refreshing themselves, the enemy (*pl.*) were awake. 6. We (*nos*) build houses; others will dwell in them. 7. The general will give the booty to the soldiers. 8. You (*sing.*) find-fault-with yourself (*te*), I (do) not find-fault-with you. 9. All persons praise diligence and honesty. 10. While the citizens were watching, the soldiers were preparing their arms.

*The Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses, Indicative.*

**RULE 11.**—When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are said to be in *Apposition*, and are put in the same case: as, Rōmūlūs rex, *Romulus, the king.*

**B.**—1. Ego ambulavi, tu vigilavisti, ventus flavit. 2. Ego ambulaveram, tu vigilaveras, ventus flaverat. 3. Ego te laudavero, tu me vituperaveris, frater judicaverit. 4. Praeceptores meos semper amavi. 5. Romani Corinthum, opulentam Graeciae urbem, expugnaverunt. 6. Quum milites urbem intraverant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Si unum castigaveris, centum emendabis. 8. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris. 9. Quum exercitus urbem oppugnavit, nos jam emigraveramus. 10. Quum hostes agros vastaverint, urbem oppugnabunt.

1. The Romans assaulted the city. 2. The soldiers laid-waste the lands (*agros*) and assaulted the city. 3. Cicero, the orator, got for himself a renowned name. 4. They had adorned the city (of)

Corinth with most splendid buildings. 5. When the army has (*fut. perf.*) laid-waste the lands, the general will assault the city. 6. When thou hast improved (*fut. perf.*) thy life, thou wilt have gained for thyself (*dative*) true praise. 7. I have built for myself a splendid house; I have gained very many friends. 8. I have praised you (*sing.*), not found-fault-with you (*sing.*). 9. The army had entered the city and had laid-waste all (things). 10. If thou hast gained for thyself true friends, thou art happy.

### Imperative Mood.

NOTE.—Not in prohibitions is always *NE*.

C.—1. Amato patrem et matrem! 2. Omnes homines ama! 3. Mores vestros mutare, amici! 4. Diligenter cura, amici, valetudinem tuam! 5. Amate litteras, o pueri! 6. Discipulus amato praeceptores! 7. Laudatote probos homines, vituperatote improbos! 8. Omnes homines amanto Deum! 9. Ne nomen muta; muta mores.

1. Enter (*pl.*), O friends! 2. Improve (*pl.*) those ill manners of yours,\* scholars! 3. O my son, love (thy) mother! 4. Change not this law, citizens. 5. Praise thou the just and good (*pl.*). 6. Change not (your) friends. 7. While the soldiers are fighting, the citizens must watch. 8. Good and upright citizens must be at-the-head-of the commonwealth. 9. Get not to thyself a name by guilt.

\* Translate *those-of-yours*, by *istos*.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing without any condition or doubt: as, *aedifico dōmum*, *I am building a house*; *hābitābo in ēā*, *I shall dwell in it*.

The Subjunctive Mood speaks of a thing with some condition or doubt: as, [*aedifico dōmum*] *ūt in ēā hābitēm*, [*I am building a house*], *in order that I may dwell in it*. Here there is no doubt about the act of *building*; but whether the person building will *dwell* in the house or not is uncertain, and depends upon circumstances.

The translation of the Subjunctive Mood with *may* and *might* is only an approximation to its meaning. Very often it has to be rendered in English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative Mood, as in the whole of Exercise E.

NOTE.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on p. 95.

**RULE 12.**—The Conjunctions *ut, that, in-order-that*, and *nē, lest, in-order-that-not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

*The Present and Imperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.*

**D.**—1. Laudat puerum, ut litteras amet. 2. Laudavit puerum, ut litteras amaret. 3. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii litteras diligenter tractent. 4. Saepe majores nostri dimicaverunt, ut patriam suam liberarent. 5. Amo te, ut me redames. 6. Amavi te, ut me redamares. 7. Dux imperavit ut milites stationes suas servarent. 8. Ita judicat iudex justus, ut in omni re rectam conscientiam servet. 9. Heri ambulabam, ut tristem animum exhilararem. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ne urbem hostes expugnarent.

1. I often walked in the fields that I might refresh my mind. 2. Who does not fight that he may preserve his country? 3. They were fighting that they might preserve their freedom. 4. He chastises the boy in-order-that he may improve him. 5. He was chastising the boy in-order-that he might improve him. 6. We fight in-order-that the enemy (*pl.*) may not (*ue*) lay-waste our lands. 7. The husbandmen were preparing arms in-order-that the soldiers might not enter their lands. 8. We prepare (*our*) arms that we may save the city. 9. We often walked in the garden in order that we might refresh ourselves (*nos*). 10. We were building and were adorning dwelling-places, in-order-that others might dwell in them.

**RULE 13.**—*Quin* is used with the Subjunctive Mood after *nōn dubito, I do not doubt*; *nemo dubitat, no one doubts*; *quis dubitat? who doubts?* *nōn est dubium, it is not doubtful*, or, *there is no doubt*; and is translated in English by *that*.

After such expressions as *these*, the Subjunctive must be translated into English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative: as, *nemo dubitat quin sit justum, no one doubts that it is just*.

*The Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.*

**E.**—1. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaverint. 2. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superavissent. 3. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaverint sent.\* 4. Quis dubitat, quin bonus semper iudicaverimus? 5. Non est dubium, quin fidem servaveritis. 6. Nemo dubitabat, quin hostes urbem expugnarent. 7. Non est dubium, quin milites semper vituperarent. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin Hannibal fortissime pugnasset.

\* This is a special Conjugation, consisting of the Future Participle in *urus* with the Future Infinitive or Subjunctive. See p. 44.

9. Non est dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupaverit.  
 10. Non erat dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupasset.

In the following Exercise the verbs in Italian are to be rendered in Latin by the corresponding Tenses of the Subjunctive.

1. There was no doubt that the enemy *had entered* the city.  
 2. There is no doubt that our soldiers *have fought* bravely. 3. I do not doubt that *ye have* always *praised* the good. 4. There is no doubt that our (men) *overcame* the enemy. 5. There was no doubt that they *had prepared* arms. 6. Who doubts that the enemy *have prepared* arms? 7. I have no doubt that our soldiers *have taken-by-storm* the city. 8. Who doubts that our men *fought* bravely? 9. There is no doubt that *he has improved* his manners. 10. Who doubts that a good citizen will fight (*pres. subj.*) for (*prō* with abl.) his native-land?

### *Infinitive Mood and Participles.*

RULE 14.—The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive Mood: as, *Caesar hostēs sup̄erārē pōtēt, Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

*Pōtēt, (he, she, it) is able.*

*Possunt, (they) are able.*

**F.**—1. Milites urbem expugnare possunt. 2. Caesar sibi amicos parare potest. 3. Naturam mutare difficile est. 4. Errare humanum est. 5. Luscinia cantans animos nostros delectat. 6. Hostes adveniant expugnaturi urbem nostram.

1. Caesar is able to take-by-storm the city. 2. Our (men) are able to overcome the enemy. 3. It is difficult to change bad manners. 4. It is easy to overcome the enemies. 5. The general entered the city, carrying (his) sword. 6. They were walking in the garden, singing and adorning themselves with flowers.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

### EXERCISE XXVI.

#### *Indicative and Imperative Moods.*

**A.**—1. Ego te monēbam, tu flebas. 2. Ego te monēbo, tu flebis. 3. Arborēs vere florent. 4. Tempus omnia opera hominum delet. 5. Romani primis temporibus parebant regibus. 6. Gaudēbam quod tu valebas. 7. Praeceptor gaudēbat, quod vos ejus praeceptis parebatis. 8. Tibi placebas, aliis displicēbas. 9. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt. 10. Vires vestras semper exerceo, pueri!

Pr. L. I.

1. *We* (nos) shall rejoice, *you* (vos) will weep. 2. The young-man obeys not the laws of the commonwealth. 3. Weep not, O my sons; the commonwealth rejoices. 4. A good king is not always pleasing to his citizens. 5. I rejoice, because the state flourishes. 6. The same (things) do not always please the same persons. 7. The commonwealth was flourishing. 8. The good citizens were rejoicing; the bad were weeping. 9. Obey the laws of your country, citizens. 10. The enemy was destroying the houses.

**B.**—1. *Græcia* omnibus artibus floruit. 2. *Multum* iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuerunt. 3. *Fortes* milites! laudem meruistis. 4. *Cantus* avium maximam nobis præbuerunt voluptatem. 5. *Bonae* leges *Solonis* Atheniensibus placuerunt. 6. *Divitiae* multis hominibus nocuerunt. 7. *Magistri* vos linguam Latinam docuerunt. 8. *Equites* *Cæsar*is *Pompeium* ejusque amicos terruerunt. 9. *Hæc* civitas diu floruerat, quia semper legibus paruerat. 10. Tu nobis nocueras, quia temeritatem tuam non coërcueras.

1. Rashness has often been hurtful to generals. 2. We owe very many-things to our parents. 3. Who taught you the Latin language, boy? 4. Curb the tongue; the tongue has been hurtful to very many (persons). 5. Cicero exhibited to his (fellow) citizens a memorable example of integrity. 6. Set (*præbeo*) a good example to thy (fellow) citizens. 7. Destroy ye not the city, soldiers! 8. Solon the Athenian furnished most excellent laws for his (fellow) citizens. 9. That man often curbs his tongue. 10. To whom do not the songs of birds afford pleasure?

### *Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.*

**C.**—1. *Curo* ut pueri corpus exerceam. 2. *Curabam* ut pueri corpus exercebam. 3. *Cura* ut pueri corpus exerceas. 4. *Curabam* ut pueri corpus exerceas. 5. *Nemo* dubitat quin ego puerum semper bene monuerim. 6. *Nemo* dubitavit quin ego puerum semper bene monuissem. 7. *Non* dubito quin dux temeritatem militum coercuerit. 8. *Non* dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coerciturus sit. 9. *Miserum* est habuisse, et nihil habere. 10. *Bonis* placuisse maxima laus est.

1. Who doubts that rashness has been hurtful to generals? 2. It is difficult to curb the tongue; it is more difficult to curb anger. 3. There is no doubt that to curb anger is most difficult. 4. There is no doubt that they entered the city weeping. 5. To do good to very many is true glory. 6. That tongue of yours (*iste*) is destined-to-hurt (*fut. part.*) yourself. 7. I will take care to\* set a good example to my children. 8. A son ought to obey (his) father. 9. There is no doubt that the laws of Solon were serviceable to the Athenians. 10. Who doubts that anger has hurt very many?

\* *Obs.* To *set* = *that I may set*: ut with Subjunctive. When the English Infinitive Mood expresses a purpose, it must be translated in Latin by *ut* and the Subjunctive.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXVII.

*Indicative and Imperative Moods.*

**A.**—1. Omnem hunc mundum Deus regit. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducet. 3. Semper dicam quod verum est. 4. Dum ego scribebam, tu legebas et frater pingebat. 5. Miles corpus pallio suo teget. 6. Hostes aciem instruebant. 7. Disce, puer! 8. Coelestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. 9. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque deorum defendetis. 10. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.

1. Hannibal will lead his army into the Roman territory (*agri, pl.*). 2. We were leading the army into the Roman territory. 3. We were defending the city and the temples of the gods. 4. I was writing; you were reading; (my) brother was painting. 5. A good citizen will never abandon the commonwealth. 6. The state defends us. 7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with (my) cloak. 8. Learn the song, boys; (it) is very beautiful (*pulcher*). 9. Brave men despise death and danger. 10. Tell \* me (*dat.*), (my) son; what has hurt you?

**B.**—1. Tarquinius Priscus Romam urbem muris cinxit. 2. Xerxes, Persarum rex, Hellespontum ponte junxit. 3. Imperator exercitum duxit, multasque urbes expugnavit. 4. Cicero multas pulcherrimas orationes scripserat. 5. Cicero conjurationem Catilinae detexerat. 6. Simulac litteras scripserimus, ambulabimus. 7. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpserat. 8. Camillum triumphantem albi traxerunt equi. 9. Xerxes, Persarum rex, innumeras copias contraxit. 10. Vix Caesar aciem instruxerat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. The fire consumed the third part of the city. 2. The general led a great army into Italy. 3. The Cimbri brought-together innumerable forces. 4. Caesar arranged his line-of-battle. 5. Caesar threw a bridge across the river (say, joined the river by a bridge). 6. As soon as I have written (*fut. perf.*) the letter, I will take-a-walk. 7. We discovered the conspiracy of Catiline. 8. I defended the commonwealth (when) a young man. 9. White horses had drawn Camillus triumphing. 10. We have despised human (things) (*neut. pl.*).

\* The verbs dico, dico, facio, drop the final *e* in the imperative mood: hence dic, tell thou; duc, lead thou; fac, do thou.

*Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.*

C.—1. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnet. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam duxit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnaret. 3. Cura ut pueri animum excolas. 4. Curabam ut pueri animum excoleres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum diligenter correxerim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin ego puerum diligenter correxissem. 7. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripserint. 8. Quis dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidione cincturi sint. 9. Difficile est regere hominum animos. 10. Emere facilius est quam solvere.

1. I will take care to cultivate (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boy's mind. 2. There is no doubt that he has carefully cultivated his mind. 3. Take care to be well (*ut* and *Subj.*). 4. Who doubts that it is very difficult to rule the minds of men? 5. Who doubts that we have obeyed the laws? 6. Caesar drew together his forces with-the-intention-of-assaulting (*fut. part.*) the town. 7. White horses drew the chariot of Camillus (when) triumphing. 8. It is difficult to learn many things. 9. There is no doubt that we ought always to-be-learning (*pres. inf.*). 10. I will take care to correct (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boys.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

*Indicative and Imperative Moods.*

A.—1. Mors finiet nostram vitam. 2. Leones non reperitis in Gallia. 3. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus. 4. Persae castra muniebant et custodiebant. 5. Dum tu dormiebas, ego te custodiebam. 6. Scis multas res, quas olim nesciebam. 7. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. 8. Praceptor puerorum mentes erudit. 9. Liberi parentibus obediunt. 10. Qui Deo obedit, etiam hominibus obediunt.

1. The soldiers were fortifying the camp. 2. Cornelia trained her children carefully. 3. My son, obey thy mother. 4. While the citizens were keeping-guard, the soldiers were sleeping. 5. We will keep-guard, and you shall sleep. 6. Now I know these things; yesterday I was-ignorant-of them. 7. You will not easily find a lion in Europe. 8. Death puts-an-end-to all the hopes of this life. 9. Carefully train your children; praise the good; punish the bad. 10. Thou shalt not bury (*fut. imper.*) a dead man within (in) the city.

**B.**—1. Natura Italiam Alpibus munivit. 2. Cicero domum suam muniverat et firmaverat. 3. Magister puniebat eos discipulos, qui non obediverant. 4. Vincite eos, qui non obediverunt. 5. Claram nocem hujus avis non audivisti? eam non audiui. 6. Servi dominum sepeliverunt. 7. Vix milites castra muniverant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit. 8. Quum milites castra muniverint, dormient. 9. Natura oculos membranis tenuissimis vestivit. 10. Parentes mei pauperem hunc puerum nutriverant.

1. A good father will nurture, clothe, (and) train-up his children. 2. Who did not hear that very clear (*superl.*) song of the nightingale? 3. Nature has fortified the earth with mountains. 4. They bound the men with the hardest chains. 5. Lictor, bind the man! 6. Very delicate membranes clothe the eyes. 7. Punish thou the bad; give honour to the good; in-that-way thou wilt be serviceable to the commonwealth. 8. He will bind the citizens with the strongest (*validissimus*) chains. 9. That cruel mother did not nurture her own children. 10. Bind not the man, soldier! he is a Roman citizen.

### *Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.*

**C.**—1. Curo ut pueri mentem erudiam. 2. Curabam, ut pueri mentem erudirem. 3. Obedit aliis, ut sibi quoque alii obediant. 4. Obediebam aliis, ut mihi quoque alii obedirent. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum gnaviter custodi(v)erim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin puerum gnaviter custodi(v)isses. 7. Non dubito quin longinquitas temporis dolorem tuum mollitura sit. 8. Milites urbem custodire debent. 9. Nihil scire turpe est. 10. Venio auditurus, quid pater scripserit.

1. There is no doubt that length of time will assuage (*Periphrastic Conjugation*) your grief. 2. It is easy to exercise the body; it is difficult to train the mind. 3. Who doubts that the father carefully trained the mind of his son? 4. I will take pains to assuage (*ut* and *Subj.*) the pain of the wound. 5. I have no doubt that he is going-to-train-up (*Periphrastic Conjugation*) the boy most carefully. 6. To punish is not to train-up. 7. He bound the men with chains, that they might learn to obey. 8. It is easy to obey the feelings (*animus*\*). 9. There is no doubt that length of time assuages both grief and anger (*dolorem iramque*). 10. (He) who knows not (*nescio*) (how) to obey, knows not (how) to command.

\* Use the Singular.

## XXIII.—FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Āmōr, āmātūs sum or fui, āmārī,—to be loved.

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|            |                  |             |                 |
|------------|------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| S. Ām-ōr,  | I am loved       | P. Ām-āmūr, | We are loved    |
| Ām-ārīs or | } thou art loved | Ām-āmīnī,   | ye are loved    |
| ān-ārē,    |                  | Ām-antūr,   | they are loved. |
| Ām-ātūr,   | he is loved.     |             |                 |

## 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

|              |                      |               |                     |
|--------------|----------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| S. Ām-ābōr,  | I shall be loved     | P. Ām-ābīmūr, | We shall be loved   |
| Ām-ābārīs or | } thou wilt be loved | Ām-ābīmīnī,   | ye will be loved    |
| āmābārē,     |                      | Ām-ābuntūr,   | they will be loved. |
| Ām-ābītūr,   | he will be loved.    |               |                     |

## 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|              |                   |               |                   |
|--------------|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| S. Ām-ābār,  | { I was being     | P. Ām-ābāmūr, | { We were being   |
| Ām-ābārīs or | } loved           | Ām-ābāmīnī,   | } loved           |
| ām-ābārē,    |                   |               |                   |
| Ām-ābātūr,   | { thou wast being | Ām-ābantūr,   | { ye were being   |
|              | } loved           |               | } loved           |
|              |                   |               |                   |
|              | { he was being    |               | { they were being |
|              | } loved.          |               | } loved.          |
|              |                   |               |                   |

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                |                        |                 |                         |
|----------------|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| S. Ām-ātūs sum | { I have been loved,   | P. Ām-āti sūmūs | { We have been          |
| or fui,        | } or was loved         | or fuīmūs,      | } loved, or were loved  |
|                |                        |                 |                         |
| Ām-ātūs ēs     | { thou hast been       | Ām-āti estīs    | { ye have been          |
| or fuistī,     | } loved, or wast loved | or fuistīs,     | } loved, or were loved  |
|                |                        |                 |                         |
| Ām-ātūs est    | { he has been loved,   | Ām-āti sunt,    | { they have been        |
| or fuit,       | } or was loved.        | fuērunt, or     | } loved, or were loved. |
|                |                        | fuērē,          |                         |

## 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                |                     |                  |                  |
|----------------|---------------------|------------------|------------------|
| S. Ām-ātūs ēro | { I shall have been | P. Ām-āti ērimūs | { We shall have  |
| or fuēro,      | } loved             | or fuērimūs,     | } been loved     |
|                |                     |                  |                  |
| Ām-ātūs ērīs   | { thou wilt have    | Ām-āti ērītīs    | { ye will have   |
| or fuērīs,     | } been loved        | or fuērītīs,     | } been loved     |
|                |                     |                  |                  |
| Ām-ātūs ērīt   | { he will have been | Ām-āti ērunt     | { they will have |
| or fuērīt,     | } loved.            | or fuērint,      | } been loved.    |
|                |                     |                  |                  |

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                 |                    |                  |                 |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| S. Ām-ātūs ēram | { I had been loved | P. Ām-āti ērāmūs | { We had been   |
| or fuēram,      | } loved            | or fuērāmūs,     | } loved         |
|                 |                    |                  |                 |
| Ām-ātūs ērās    | { thou hadst been  | Ām-āti ērātīs    | { ye had been   |
| or fuērās,      | } loved            | or fuērātīs,     | } loved         |
|                 |                    |                  |                 |
| Ām-ātūs ērāt    | { he had been      | Ām-āti ērant     | { they had been |
| or fuērāt,      | } loved.           | or fuērant,      | } loved.        |
|                 |                    |                  |                 |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. *Ām-ārē,* *Be thou loved.* | P. *Ām-āmīnī,* *Be ye loved.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. *Ām-ātōr,* *Thou must be loved* | P. *Ām-antōr,* *{ They must be*  
*Ām-ātōr,* *he must be loved.* | *loved.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. *Ām-ēr,* *I may be loved* | P. *Ām-ēmūr,* *We may be loved*  
*Ām-ērīs or* *{ thou mayst be* | *Ām-ēmīnī,* *ye may be loved*  
*ām-ērē,* *{ loved* | *Ām-entūr,* *they may be loved.*  
*Ām-ētūr,* *he may be loved.*

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. *Ām-ārēr,* *I might be loved* | P. *Ām-ārēmūr,* *We might be loved*  
*Ām-ārērīs or* *{ thou mightst be* | *Ām-ārēmīnī,* *ye might be loved*  
*ām-ārērē,* *{ loved* | *Ām-ārentūr,* *they might be loved*  
*Ām-ārētūr,* *he might be loved.*

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. *Ām-ātūs sim* *{ I may have been* | P. *Ām-āti simūs,* *{ We may have*  
*or fuērīm,* *{ loved* | *or fuērīmūs,* *{ been loved*  
*Ām-ātūs sis* *{ thou mayst have* | *Ām-āti sitīs,* *{ ye may have*  
*or fuērīs,* *{ been loved* | *or fuērītīs,* *{ been loved*  
*Ām-ātūs sīt* *{ he may have been* | *Ām-āti sint,* *{ they may have*  
*or fuērīt,* *{ loved.* | *or fuērīnt,* *{ been loved.*

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. *Ām-ātūs essem* *{ I should have* | P. *Ām-āti essēmūs,* *{ We should have*  
*or fuissēm,* *{ been loved* | *or fuissēmūs,* *{ been loved*  
*Ām-ātūs essēs* *{ thou wouldst* | *Ām-āti essētīs,* *{ ye would have*  
*or fuissēs,* *{ have been loved* | *or fuissētīs,* *{ been loved*  
*Ām-ātūs essēt* *{ he would have* | *Ām-āti essent,* *{ they would have*  
*or fuissēt,* *{ been loved.* | *or fuissent,* *{ been loved.*

## VERB INFINITIVE.

## INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP. *Ām-ārī,* *to be loved.*  
 PERF. and PLUP. *Ām-ātūs (a, um) essē or fuissē,* *to have been loved.*  
 FUTURE. *Ām-ātum irī (not declined),* *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. *Ām-ātūs (a, um),* *loved or having been loved.*  
 GERUNDIVE, *Ām-andūs (a, um),* *meet to be loved,*

## XXIV.—SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mānār, mānāntis sum or fui, mānāri,—to be advised.

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|             |                    |              |                   |
|-------------|--------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| S. Mān-ār,  | I am advised       | P. Mān-āmār, | We are advised    |
| Mān-āris or | } thou art advised | Mān-āmāni,   | ye are advised    |
| mān-ārē,    |                    | Mān-antār,   | they are advised. |
| Mān-ātār,   | he is advised.     |              |                   |

## 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

|              |                        |               |                         |
|--------------|------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| S. Mān-ēār,  | { I shall be advised   | P. Mān-ēāmār, | { We shall be advised   |
| Mān-ēāris or | { thou wilt be advised | Mān-ēāmāni,   | { ye will be advised    |
| mān-ēārē,    |                        | Mān-ēantār,   |                         |
| Mān-ēātār,   | { he will be advised.  |               | { they will be advised. |

## 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|              |                           |               |                            |
|--------------|---------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| S. Mān-ēār,  | { I was being advised     | P. Mān-ēāmār, | { We were being advised    |
| Mān-ēāris or | { thou wast being advised | Mān-ēāmāni,   | { ye were being advised    |
| mān-ēārē,    |                           | Mān-ēantār,   |                            |
| Mān-ēātār,   | { he was being advised.   |               | { they were being advised. |

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                 |                                           |                    |                                            |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| S. Mān-ītās sum | { I have been advised, or was advised     | P. Mān-īti sūmūs   | { We have been advised, or were advised    |
| or fui,         |                                           | or fuimūs,         |                                            |
| Mān-ītās ēs     | { thou hast been advised, or wast advised | Mān-īti estis      | { ye have been advised, or were advised    |
| or fuisti,      |                                           | or fuistis,        |                                            |
| Mān-ītās est    | { he has been advised, or was advised.    | Mān-īti sunt,      | { they have been advised, or were advised. |
| or fuī,         |                                           | fuērunt, or fuēre, |                                            |

## 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                 |                               |                   |                                |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| S. Mān-ītās ēro | { I shall have been advised   | P. Mān-īti ērimūs | { We shall have been advised   |
| or fuēro,       |                               | or fuērimūs,      |                                |
| Mān-ītās ēris   | { thou wilt have been advised | Mān-īti ēritis    | { ye will have been advised    |
| or fuēris,      |                               | or fuēritis,      |                                |
| Mān-ītās ērit   | { he will have been advised.  | Mān-īti ērint     | { they will have been advised. |
| or fuērit,      |                               | or fuērint,       |                                |

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                  |                           |                   |                          |
|------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| S. Mān-ītās ēram | { I had been advised      | P. Mān-īti ērāmūs | { We had been advised    |
| or fuēram,       |                           | or fuērāmūs,      |                          |
| Mān-ītās ērās    | { thou hadst been advised | Mān-īti ērātis    | { ye had been advised    |
| or fuēras,       |                           | or fuērātis,      |                          |
| Mān-ītās ērāt    | { he had been advised.    | Mān-īti ērant     | { they had been advised. |
| or fuērāt,       |                           | or fuērant,       |                          |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Mön-ërë, Be thou advised. | P. Mön-ëmīnī, Be ye advised.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

*S. Mön-ëtör, Thou must be advised | Mön-ëtör, he must be advised. | P. Mön-entör, { They must be advised.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                     |                             |                      |                               |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>S. Mön-eär,</i>  | <i>{ I may be advised</i>   | <i>P. Mön-eämür,</i> | <i>{ We may be advised</i>    |
| <i>Mön-eäris or</i> | <i>{ thou mayst be</i>      | <i>Mön-eämīnī,</i>   | <i>{ ye may be advised</i>    |
| <i>mön-eäre,</i>    | <i>{ advised</i>            | <i>Mön-eantür,</i>   | <i>{ they may be advised.</i> |
| <i>Mön-eätür,</i>   | <i>{ he may be advised.</i> |                      |                               |

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                      |                               |                       |                                 |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>S. Mön-ërër,</i>  | <i>{ I might be advised</i>   | <i>P. Mön-ërēmür,</i> | <i>{ We might be advised</i>    |
| <i>Mön-ërëris or</i> | <i>{ thou mightst be</i>      | <i>Mön-ërēmīnī,</i>   | <i>{ ye might be advised</i>    |
| <i>mön-ërëre,</i>    | <i>{ advised</i>              | <i>Mön-ërentür,</i>   | <i>{ they might be advised.</i> |
| <i>Mön-ërëtür,</i>   | <i>{ he might be advised.</i> |                       |                                 |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                         |                          |                           |                        |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>S. Mön-itäts sim</i> | <i>{ I may have been</i> | <i>P. Mön-itäts simūs</i> | <i>{ We may have</i>   |
| <i>or fuërim,</i>       | <i>{ advised</i>         | <i>or fuërimūs,</i>       | <i>{ been advised</i>  |
| <i>Mön-itäts sis</i>    | <i>{ thou mayst have</i> | <i>Mön-itäts sitīs</i>    | <i>{ ye may have</i>   |
| <i>or fuëris,</i>       | <i>{ been advised</i>    | <i>or fuëritīs,</i>       | <i>{ been advised</i>  |
| <i>Mön-itäts sīt</i>    | <i>{ he may have</i>     | <i>Mön-itäts sint</i>     | <i>{ they may have</i> |
| <i>or fuërit,</i>       | <i>{ been advised.</i>   | <i>or fuërint,</i>        | <i>{ been advised.</i> |

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                           |                            |                             |                          |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>S. Mön-itäts essēm</i> | <i>{ I should have</i>     | <i>P. Mön-itäts essēmūs</i> | <i>{ We should have</i>  |
| <i>or fuissēm,</i>        | <i>{ been advised</i>      | <i>or fuissēmūs,</i>        | <i>{ been advised</i>    |
| <i>Mön-itäts essēs</i>    | <i>{ thou wouldst</i>      | <i>Mön-itäts essētīs</i>    | <i>{ ye would have</i>   |
| <i>or fuissēs,</i>        | <i>{ have been advised</i> | <i>or fuissētīs,</i>        | <i>{ been advised</i>    |
| <i>Mön-itäts essēt</i>    | <i>{ he would have</i>     | <i>Mön-itäts essent</i>     | <i>{ they would have</i> |
| <i>or fuissēt,</i>        | <i>{ been advised.</i>     | <i>or fuissent,</i>         | <i>{ been advised.</i>   |

## VERB INFINITIVE.

## INFINITIVES.

*PRES. and IMP. Mön-ëri, to be advised.*  
*PERF. and PLUP. Mön-itäts (a, um) essē or fuissē, to have been advised.*  
*FUTURE. Mön-itum iri (not declined), to be about to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*PERFECT. Mön-itäts (a, um), advised, or having been advised.*  
*GERUNDIVE. Mön-ëndūs (a, um), meet to be advised.*

## XXV.—THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

*Rēgōr, rectus sum or fui, rēgī,—to be ruled.*

### VERB FINITE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                    |                         |                     |                        |
|--------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| <i>S. Rēg-ār,</i>  | <i>I am ruled</i>       | <i>P. Rēg-īmūr,</i> | <i>We are ruled</i>    |
| <i>Rēg-āris or</i> | <i>} thou art ruled</i> | <i>Rēg-īmīni,</i>   | <i>ye are ruled</i>    |
| <i>rēg-ārē,</i>    |                         | <i>Rēg-untūr,</i>   | <i>they are ruled.</i> |
| <i>Rēg-itūr,</i>   | <i>he is ruled.</i>     |                     |                        |

##### 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

|                    |                             |                     |                            |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>S. Rēg-ār,</i>  | <i>I shall be ruled</i>     | <i>P. Rēg-ēmūr,</i> | <i>We shall be ruled</i>   |
| <i>Rēg-āris or</i> | <i>} thou wilt be ruled</i> | <i>Rēg-ēmīni,</i>   | <i>ye will be ruled</i>    |
| <i>rēg-ārē,</i>    |                             | <i>Rēg-entūr,</i>   | <i>they will be ruled.</i> |
| <i>Rēg-ētūr,</i>   | <i>he will be ruled.</i>    |                     |                            |

##### 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                      |                                |                       |                                 |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>S. Rēg-ēbār,</i>  | <i>I was being ruled</i>       | <i>P. Rēg-ēbāmūr,</i> | <i>{ We were being ruled</i>    |
| <i>Rēg-ēbāris or</i> | <i>{ thou wast being ruled</i> | <i>Rēg-ēbāmīni,</i>   | <i>{ ye were being ruled</i>    |
| <i>rēg-ēbārē,</i>    |                                | <i>Rēg-ēbantūr,</i>   | <i>{ they were being ruled.</i> |
| <i>Rēg-ēbātūr,</i>   | <i>{ he was being ruled.</i>   |                       |                                 |

##### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                       |                                              |                        |                                               |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>S. Rēc-tūs sum</i> | <i>{ I have been ruled, or was ruled</i>     | <i>P. Rēc-tī sūmūs</i> | <i>{ We have been ruled, or were ruled</i>    |
| <i>or fui,</i>        | <i>{ thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled</i> | <i>Rēc-tī estīs</i>    | <i>{ ye have been ruled, or were ruled</i>    |
| <i>Rēc-tūs ēs or</i>  |                                              | <i>Rēc-tī sunt,</i>    | <i>{ they have been ruled, or were ruled.</i> |
| <i>fuisti,</i>        | <i>{ he has been ruled, or was ruled.</i>    | <i>fuērunt, or</i>     |                                               |
| <i>Rēc-tūs est or</i> |                                              | <i>fuērē,</i>          |                                               |
| <i>fuīt,</i>          |                                              |                        |                                               |

##### 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                        |                                    |                         |                                     |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>S. Rēc-tūs ēro</i>  | <i>{ I shall have been ruled</i>   | <i>P. Rēc-tī ērimūs</i> | <i>{ We shall have been ruled</i>   |
| <i>or fuēro,</i>       | <i>{ thou wilt have been ruled</i> | <i>Rēc-tī ēritīs</i>    | <i>{ ye will have been ruled</i>    |
| <i>Rēc-tūs ēris or</i> |                                    | <i>Rēc-tī ērunt</i>     | <i>{ they will have been ruled.</i> |
| <i>fuēris,</i>         | <i>{ he will have been ruled.</i>  |                         |                                     |
| <i>Rēc-tūs ērit or</i> |                                    |                         |                                     |
| <i>fuērit,</i>         |                                    |                         |                                     |

##### 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                        |                                |                         |                               |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>S. Rēc-tūs ēram</i> | <i>{ I had been ruled</i>      | <i>P. Rēc-tī ērāmūs</i> | <i>{ We had been ruled</i>    |
| <i>or fuēram,</i>      | <i>{ thou hadst been ruled</i> | <i>Rēc-tī ērātīs</i>    | <i>{ ye had been ruled</i>    |
| <i>Rēc-tūs ērās or</i> |                                | <i>Rēc-tī ērant</i>     | <i>{ they had been ruled.</i> |
| <i>fuērās,</i>         | <i>{ he had been ruled.</i>    |                         |                               |
| <i>Rēc-tūs ērāt or</i> |                                |                         |                               |
| <i>fuērāt,</i>         |                                |                         |                               |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Rēg-ērē, Be thou ruled. | P. Rēg-īmīnī, Be ye ruled.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

*S. Rēg-ītōr, Thou must be ruled | P. Rēg-untōr, They must be ruled.*  
*Rēg-ītōr, he must be ruled.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Rēg-ār, I may be ruled | P. Rēg-āmūr, We may be ruled*  
*Rēg-ārīs or } thou mayst be*  
*rēg-ārē, } ruled*  
*Rēg-ātūr, he may be ruled. | Rēg-āmīnī, ye may be ruled*  
*Rēg-antūr, they may be ruled.*

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

*S. Rēg-ērēr, I might be ruled | P. Rēg-ērēmūr, We might be ruled*  
*Rēg-ērērīs or } thou mightst be*  
*rēg-ērērē, } ruled*  
*Rēg-ērētūr, he might be ruled. | Rēg-ērēmīnī, ye might be ruled*  
*Rēg-ērentūr, they might be ruled.*

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Rec-tūs sim or } I may have been | P. Rec-tī simūs } We may have*  
*fuērīm, } ruled*  
*Rec-tūs sīs or } thou mayst have*  
*fuērīs, } been ruled*  
*Rec-tūs sīt or } he may have been*  
*fuērīt, } ruled. | Rec-tī sītīs or } ye may have been*  
*Rec-tī sītīs or } ruled*  
*Rec-tī sint or } they may have*  
*fuērīnt, } been ruled.*

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*S. Rec-tūs essem } I should have been | P. Rec-tī essemūs } We should have*  
*or fuissēm, } ruled*  
*Rec-tūs essēs } thou wouldst have*  
*or fuissēs, } been ruled*  
*Rec-tūs essēt } he would have been*  
*or fuissēt, } ruled. | Rec-tī essētīs } ye would have*  
*Rec-tī essētīs } been ruled*  
*Rec-tī essent } they would have*  
*or fuissent, } been ruled.*

## VERB INFINITIVE.

## INFINITIVES.

*PRES. and IMP. Rēg-ī, to be ruled.*  
*PERF. and PLUP. Rec-tūs (a, um) essē or fuissē, to have been ruled.*  
*FUTURE. Rec-tum īrī (not declined), to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*PERFECT. Rec-tūs (a, um), ruled or having been ruled,*  
*GERUNDIVE. Rēg-entūs (a, um), meet to be ruled.*

## XXVI.—FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

**Audiōr, audītus sum or fui, audiri,—to be heard.**

### VERB FINITE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                    |                         |                      |                        |
|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-iōr,</i> | <i>I am heard</i>       | <i>P. Aud-iāmūr,</i> | <i>We are heard</i>    |
| <i>Aud-irīs or</i> | <i>} thou art heard</i> | <i>Aud-imīni,</i>    | <i>ye are heard</i>    |
| <i>aud-irē,</i>    |                         | <i>Aud-inūtūr,</i>   | <i>they are heard.</i> |
| <i>Aud-itūr,</i>   | <i>he is heard.</i>     |                      |                        |

##### 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

|                    |                             |                      |                            |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-iār,</i> | <i>I shall be heard</i>     | <i>P. Aud-iāmūr,</i> | <i>We shall be heard</i>   |
| <i>Aud-irīs or</i> | <i>} thou wilt be heard</i> | <i>Aud-imīni,</i>    | <i>ye will be heard</i>    |
| <i>aud-irē,</i>    |                             | <i>Aud-ientūr,</i>   | <i>they will be heard.</i> |
| <i>Aud-ištūr,</i>  | <i>he will be heard.</i>    |                      |                            |

##### 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                       |                                |                        |                              |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-iōbār,</i>  | <i>{ I was being heard</i>     | <i>P. Aud-iōbāmūr,</i> | <i>{ We were being heard</i> |
| <i>Aud-iōbārīs or</i> | <i>{ thou wast being heard</i> | <i>Aud-iōbāmīni,</i>   | <i>{ ye were being heard</i> |
| <i>aud-iōbārē,</i>    |                                | <i>Aud-iōbantūr,</i>   |                              |
| <i>Aud-iōbātūr,</i>   | <i>{ he was being heard.</i>   |                        |                              |

##### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                        |                                              |                           |                                               |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-itūs sum</i> | <i>{ I have been heard, or was heard</i>     | <i>P. Aud-iti sūmūs</i>   | <i>{ We have been heard, or were heard</i>    |
| <i>or fui,</i>         |                                              | <i>or fuimūs,</i>         |                                               |
| <i>Aud-itūs ēs or</i>  | <i>{ thou hast been heard, or wast heard</i> | <i>Aud-iti estīs</i>      | <i>{ ye have been heard, or were heard</i>    |
| <i>fuisti,</i>         |                                              | <i>or fuistīs,</i>        |                                               |
| <i>Aud-itūs est</i>    | <i>{ he has been heard, or was heard.</i>    | <i>Aud-iti sunt,</i>      | <i>{ they have been heard, or were heard.</i> |
| <i>or fuit,</i>        |                                              | <i>fuērunt, or fuērē,</i> |                                               |

##### 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                        |                                    |                          |                                     |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-itūs ēro</i> | <i>{ I shall have been heard</i>   | <i>P. Aud-iti ērimūs</i> | <i>{ We shall have been heard</i>   |
| <i>or fuēro,</i>       |                                    | <i>or fuērimūs,</i>      |                                     |
| <i>Aud-itūs ēris</i>   | <i>{ thou wilt have been heard</i> | <i>Aud-iti ēritīs</i>    | <i>{ ye will have been heard</i>    |
| <i>or fuēris,</i>      |                                    | <i>or fuēritīs,</i>      |                                     |
| <i>Aud-itūs ērit</i>   | <i>{ he will have been heard.</i>  | <i>Aud-iti ērunt</i>     | <i>{ they will have been heard.</i> |
| <i>or fuērit,</i>      |                                    | <i>or fuērint,</i>       |                                     |

##### 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

|                         |                                |                          |                               |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>S. Aud-itūs ēram</i> | <i>{ I had been heard</i>      | <i>P. Aud-iti ērāmūs</i> | <i>{ We had been heard</i>    |
| <i>or fuēram,</i>       |                                | <i>or fuērāmūs,</i>      |                               |
| <i>Aud-itūs ērās</i>    | <i>{ thou hadst been heard</i> | <i>Aud-iti ērātīs</i>    | <i>{ ye had been heard</i>    |
| <i>or fuērās,</i>       |                                | <i>or fuērātīs,</i>      |                               |
| <i>Aud-itūs ērāt</i>    | <i>{ he had been heard.</i>    | <i>Aud-iti ērant</i>     | <i>{ they had been heard.</i> |
| <i>or fuērāt,</i>       |                                | <i>or fuērānt,</i>       |                               |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Aud-irě,*      *Be thou heard.*    |    *P. Aud-imīni,*      *Be ye heard.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

*S. Aud-itōr,*      *Thou must be heard*    |    *P. Aud-iuntōr,*      *They must be heard.*  
*Aud-itōr,*      *he must be heard.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Aud-iār,*      *I may be heard*      |    *P. Aud-iāmūr,*      *We may be heard*  
*Aud-iāris* or } *thou mayest be*      |    *Aud-iāmīni,*      *ye may be heard*  
*aud-iārě,*      } *heard*      |    *Aud-iantūr,*      *they may be heard*  
*Aud-iātūr,*      *he may be heard.*

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

*S. Aud-irēr,*      *I might be heard*      |    *P. Aud-irēmūr,*      *We might be heard*  
*Aud-irēris* or } *thou mightest be*      |    *Aud-irēmīni,*      *ye might be heard*  
*aud-irērě,*      } *heard*      |    *Aud-irentūr,*      *they might be heard.*  
*Aud-irētūr,*      *he might be heard.*

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Aud-itūs sim* } *I may have been*      |    *P. Aud-iti simūs* } *We may have*  
or } *heard*      |    or } *been heard*  
*Aud-itūs sis*    } *thou mayest have*      |    *Aud-iti sitis*      } *ye may have*  
or } *been heard*      |    or } *been heard*  
*Aud-itūs sit*    } *he may have been*      |    *Aud-iti sint*      } *they may have*  
or } *heard.*      |    or } *been heard.*

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*S. Aud-itūs essem* } *I should have*      |    *P. Aud-iti essemūs* } *We should have*  
or } *been heard*      |    or } *been heard*  
*Aud-itūs esēs*    } *thou wouldst have*      |    *Aud-iti esētis*      } *ye would have*  
or } *been heard*      |    or } *been heard*  
*Aud-itūs essēt*    } *he would have*      |    *Aud-iti essent*      } *they would have*  
or } *been heard.*      |    or } *been heard.*

## VERB INFINITE.

## INFINITIVES.

*PRES. and IMP. Aud-iri,*      *to be heard.*  
*PERF. and PLUP. Aud-itūs (a, um) esse or fuissē,*      *to have been heard.*  
*FUTURE. Aud-itum iri* (not declined),      *to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*PERFECT. Aud-itūs (a, um),*      *heard or having been heard.*  
*GERUNDIVE. Aud-iendūs (a, um),*      *meet to be heard.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

**RULE 15.**—A proposition in the active voice may also be expressed by the passive voice, the accusative being changed into the nominative, and the nominative into the ablative. If the ablative denotes a living being, the preposition *ā* or *āb* is prefixed. Thus *māgistēr puērū laudāt*, *the master praises the boy*, becomes in the passive, *puēr ā māgistrō laudātūr*, *the boy is praised by the master*.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

**A.**—1. Multi milites in proelio vulnerabantur. 2. Pueri attentī a magistris laudabantur. 3. Troja a Graecis expugnata est. 4. Leges egregiae a Lycurgo datae sunt. 5. Duces exercitus nostri in proelio vulnerati sunt. 6. Antiocho regi pax a Romanis data est. 7. Fugari et superari dulce non est. 8. Puer bene educator. 9. Puer, bene educatus, omnibus placet. 10. Quum rex urbem intravit, omnium civium domus floribus ornatae erant.

1. The good (men) are praised; the bad are blamed. 2. He was severely wounded. 3. In the first battle the Romans were overcome. 4. Immense forces had been raised (paro) by the enemy. 5. The temple of Vesta was built by Numa Pompilius. 6. Antiochus was overcome by the Roman general. 7. The town was assaulted. 8. The city was not taken-by-storm by Hannibal. 9. It is a small-thing to be adorned with gold and silver. 10. The whole land (ager) was laid-waste by the enemy.

**B.**—1. Pater curat ut ego bene edūcer. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego bene educarer. 3. Curo, ut puer bene educetur. 4. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur. 5. Non dubito quin hostes a militibus nostris superati sint. 6. Non dubitabam, quin hostes a militibus nostris superati essent. 7. Nemo dubitat quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata sit. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata esset. 9. Exercitus noster pugnāt, ut urbs servetur. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ut urbs servaretur.

1. Cornelia took-care that her children should be well educated. 2. Who doubts that the boy has been carefully educated? 3. I will take-care that the girl may be adorned with good-qualities. 4. There is no doubt that the city has been assaulted. 5. To be put-to-flight is not always to be overcome. 6. Arms must be made-ready (*Imper.*); the gates of the city must be strengthened (*Imper.*). 7. The general takes-care that the gates may be strengthened. 8. The good must not be blamed (*Imper.*); the bad must not be praised (*Imper.*)! 9. We were put to flight, but we were not overcome. 10. There is no doubt that Pompey was overcome by Caesar.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXX.

**A.**—1. Discipuli a magistro docentur. 2. Amari major est laus quam timeri. 3. Fortis vir nullis periculis movebitur. 4. Nero ab omnibus Romanis timebatur. 5. Incolae illius urbis hostium adventu territi sunt. 6. Moniti sumus, ut diligentiores essemus. 7. Puer strenue exercetor. 8. Hostes territi in urbe manserunt. 9. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnaviter exerciti sunt. 10. Monemini ut diligentiores sitis.

1. The pupil is taught by the master. 2. The walls were destroyed. 3. The citizens had been terrified. 4. You have been taught by your father. 5. It is a great thing to be well taught. 6. All the citizens were terrified by his (ejus) arrival. 7. Nero was grievously feared (*imperf.*) by all the citizens. 8. It is not pleasant to be feared by the good; it is very-pleasant to be feared by the bad. 9. The bodies of the children must be actively exercised (*Imperf.*). 10. You had been warned, but you did not obey.

**B.**—1. Pater curat, ut ego strenue exercear. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego strenue exercerer. 3. Curo, ut strenue exerceare. 4. Curabam, ut strenue exercerere. 5. Curo ut puer strenue exerceatur. 6. Curabam ut puer strenue exerceretur. 7. Nemo dubitat quin puer a me semper bene monitus sit. 8. Nemo dubitavit quin puer a me semper bene monitus esset. 9. Non est dubium quin milites subito periculo territi sint. 10. Non erat dubium quin milites subito periculo territi essent.

1. He-was-taking-care that his body might be vigorously exercised. 2. I will take-care that the boys are taught (*subj.*) carefully. 3. A good mother will take-care that her daughter is carefully taught. 4. I do not doubt that the whole city was terrified by his arrival. 5. There is no doubt that the citizens were alarmed by the sudden danger. 6. Let not the citizens be troubled (moved) by the arrival of the enemy. 7. (Our) father took-care that we might be carefully taught. 8. I have taken-care that my sons should (*pres. subj.*) be carefully taught. 9. Brave men will not be suddenly terrified. 10. Virtue is the most beautiful (*fem.*) of (all) things; take-care that it is diligently exercised (*pres. subj.*).

## THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXI.

**A.**—1. Omnis hic mundus a Deo regitur. 2. Respublica Romana a consulibus regebatur. 3. Ripae Rheni ponte junguntur. 4. Urbs muro cincta erat. 5. Graecia perversis suis consiliis afflicta est. 6. Si semper bene vixeris, ab omnibus diligere. 7. Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabatur, a civibus defendebatur. 8. Conjunctio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. 9. Multae fabulae a poetis fictae sunt. 10. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. Hannibal was conquered by Scipio. 2. The commonwealth was severely cast-down. 3. He was esteemed and was loved by all. 4. This story was invented by the poets. 5. The memory of the man will always be cherished (colo) by his fellow-citizens. 6. The conspiracy is discovered; the commonwealth is preserved. 7. You will be loved by many. 8. The town is being assaulted indeed (quidem), but it is not taken. 9. In that most celebrated (nobilis) battle Carthage was cast-down. 10. A bridge was thrown over the Rhine by Caesar. (Say, the river Rhine was joined with a bridge by Caesar.)

**B.**—1. Pater curat, ut ego probe excolar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego probe excolerer. 3. Curo, ut puer probe excolatur. 4. Curabam, ut puer probe excoleretur. 5. Phaethon vehementer optat, ut patris curru vehatur. 6. Phaethon vehementer optavit, ut patris curru veheretur. 7. Dicit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum sit.\* 8. Dixit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum esset.\* 9. Puer probe excolitor. 10. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.

1. I will take-care that he may be rightly cultivated. 2. He took-care that the boy might be rightly cultivated. 3. We vehemently wish that the enemy may be conquered. 4. Cicero vehemently desired that all (things) might be discovered. 5. Let-us-be-zealous to be ruled by reason. 6. All are zealous to rule, not to be ruled. 7. Tell me (*dat.*) what (*quae, neuter plural*) was written (*perfect subj.\**) to thee. 8. He told me (*dat.*) what (*quae*) had been written (*pluperf. subj.\**). 9. The boy wishes that he may ride in the chariot. 10. The boy was wishing that he might ride in the chariot.

\* The rule for this use of the Subjunctive is given subsequently. See p. 95. The Indicative must be used in translating into English.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

**A.**—1. Pueri a magistris erudiuntur. 2. Improbi homines a Deo puniuntur. 3. Bellum Punicum secundum finitum est a Scipione Africano. 4. Omnes dolores morte finiuntur. 5. Pisces in mari, aves in aëre a Deo nutriuntur. 6. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. 7. Veteres Britanniae incolae pellibus vestiebantur. 8. Corpora eorum, qui in pugna ceciderunt, sepeliuntur. 9. Urbes munitae ab hostibus non expugnabantur. 10. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia vestra finita erunt (*prius quam*, before that).

1. The Britons used-to-clothe-themselves (*imperf. pass.*) with skins. 2. The cities had been fortified with stone (*adj.*) walls. 3. The sons of Tiberius Gracchus had been carefully trained by their mother. 4. The bodies were buried with the highest honours. 5. The generals were punished because they had not buried the bodies. 6. These two boys had been trained by their mother carefully. 7. The camp had not been fortified. 8. This life of-ours (*nostra*) will be found exceedingly-short (*superl.*). 9. When the city has been fortified (*fut. perf.*), the citizens will defend it. 10. The city is fortified and made strong with guards.

**B.**—1. Pater curat, ut ego diligenter erudiar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego diligenter erudirer. 3. Curo, ut diligenter erudiare. 4. Curabam, ut diligenter erudirere. 5. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur, strenue exerceretur, probe excoleretur, diligenter erudiretur. 6. O puer, diligenter eruditor! 7. Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitione erudiri studet. 8. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. 9. Nemo dubitat, quin puer a me gnaviter custoditus sit. 10. Nemo dubitavit, quin puella a me gnaviter custodita sit.

1. The boys must be carefully trained (*Imper.*). 2. Let not the boys be trained (*pres. subj.*) by wicked men. 3. I will take care that my son is carefully trained. 4. I took care that my son should not be trained by a wicked master. 5. There is no doubt that the boys have been carefully trained. 6. Who doubts that it is better to be trained by a good master than by a bad one? 7. Who doubts that Socrates was unjustly punished? 8. It is not disgraceful to be unjustly punished. 9. Take care that the boy is well trained. 10. Well trained boys love their master.

## XXVII.—THIRD CONJUGATION (WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES).

**Cāpa, cāp, cāptam, cāpāt, —to take. Stem: cāp- or cāpi-**

### I. ACTIVE VOICE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

|                 |                            |                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <b>Cāp-iā, I take</b>      | <b>Cāp-imā, We take</b>    |
|                 | <b>Cāp-is, thou takest</b> | <b>Cāp-iñā, ye take</b>    |
|                 | <b>Cāp-it, he takes.</b>   | <b>Cāp-int, they take.</b> |

|                   |                  |                      |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Future.</i>    | <b>Cāp-issā,</b> | <b>I shall take.</b> |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | <b>Cāp-iñam,</b> | <b>I was taking.</b> |

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

|                   |                  |                      |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>   | <b>Cāp-iām,</b>  | <b>I may take.</b>   |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | <b>Cāp-iñam,</b> | <b>I might take.</b> |

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                 |                 |                                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <b>Cāp-ē,</b>   | <b>take thou.</b>               |
| <i>Future.</i>  | <b>Cāp-its,</b> | <b>thou shalt or must take.</b> |

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                 |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <b>Cāp-ārē,</b> | <b>to take.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|

#### PARTICIPLE.

|                 |                 |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <b>Cāp-iām,</b> | <b>taking.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|

#### GERUND.

|             |                    |                |
|-------------|--------------------|----------------|
| <i>Acc.</i> | <b>Cāp-iandam,</b> | <b>taking.</b> |
|-------------|--------------------|----------------|

### II. PASSIVE VOICE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

|                 |                               |                                   |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <b>Cāp-ār, I am taken</b>     | <b>Cāp-imār, We are taken</b>     |
|                 | <b>Cāp-āris, thou art</b>     | <b>Cāp-iñār, ye are taken</b>     |
|                 | <b>or-ārē, } taken</b>        | <b>Cāp-intār, they are taken.</b> |
|                 | <b>Cāp-itār, he is taken.</b> |                                   |

|                   |                   |                           |
|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Future.</i>    | <b>Cāp-iār,</b>   | <b>I shall be taken.</b>  |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | <b>Cāp-iābar,</b> | <b>I was being taken.</b> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

|                   |                  |                          |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>   | <b>Căp-iăr,</b>  | <i>I may be taken.</i>   |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | <b>Căp-ērēr,</b> | <i>I might be taken.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                 |                  |                            |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <b>Căp-ērē,</b>  | <i>be thou taken.</i>      |
| <i>Future.</i>  | <b>Căp-ītōr,</b> | <i>thou must be taken.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                 |               |                     |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <b>Căp-I,</b> | <i>to be taken.</i> |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------------|

NOTE.—The Perfect Tenses are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular: cēp-I, cēp-ēro, cēp-ēram, etc.

The Verbs conjugated like cāpio are :

|         |               |          |          |                               |
|---------|---------------|----------|----------|-------------------------------|
| fācio,  | fēcī,         | factum,  | fācērē,  | <i>to make.</i>               |
| jācio,  | jēcī,         | jactum,  | jācērē,  | <i>to throw.</i>              |
| fūgio,  | fūgī,         | fūgitum, | fūgērē,  | <i>to flee.</i>               |
| fōdio,  | fōdī,         | fōssum,  | fōdērē,  | <i>to dig.</i>                |
| rāpio,  | rāpūī,        | raptum,  | rāpērē,  | <i>to seize.</i>              |
| pārio,  | pēpēri,       | partum,  | pārērē,  | <i>to bring forth.</i>        |
| quātio, | (no perfect,) | quassum, | quātērē, | <i>to shake.</i>              |
| cūpio,  | cūpivī,       | cūpitum, | cūpērē,  | <i>to desire.</i>             |
| sāpio,  | sāpivī,       | —        | sāpērē,  | <i>to savour of, be wise.</i> |
| lācio,  | —             | —        | lācērē,  | <i>to draw</i> (only in com-) |
| spēcio, | —             | —        | spēcērē, | <i>to look</i> } pounds.      |

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Urbs capitur; fugiunt cives, rapiuntur omnia. 2. Curabit dux strenuus ne milites sui fugiant. 3. Scribebam ego versus, tu pingebas, et frater in horto fodiebat. 4. Quis dubitat quin absurdum sit malos versus facere? 5. Poeta versus faciebat quum hostes urbem intrabant. 6. Ne fugiant milites, saepe tutius est pugnare quam fugere. 7. Non omnes eadem cupimus. 8. Curavit ut oratio sua Ciceronem saperet. 9. Quis dubitat quin milites bona nostra rapturi sint? 10. Ne facite absurda, cives! Sapite et iram coercete.

1. Birds make their nests in trees. 2. An eagle had made her nest in a tall tree. 3. We desire very many things which are not needful to us. 4. It is easy to make verses; it is not easy to make good (ones). 5. The enemy flee, and the camp is taken. 6. Flee not, soldiers! It is safer to fight than to flee. 7. We will dig in the earth, in order that we may find metals. 8. Men do not dig in the ground to (ut) find (subj.) pearls. 9. A strong wind was shaking the trees. 10. That whole oration savours-of the poets (acc.).

*Deponent Verbs have a Passive form,*

I. Hortör, hortätüs sum, hortäri, to exhort, like ämör.

II. Vëreör, vëritüs sum, vëëri, to fear, „ möneör.

|                   |                    |                                        |                                                           |                                       |                                                     |  |
|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--|
| INDICATIVE MOOD.  | I.                 |                                        |                                                           | II.                                   |                                                     |  |
|                   | Present.           | Hort-ör,<br>Hort-äris<br>(äre),<br>&c. | { I exhort, or am<br>exhorting.<br>thou exhortest.<br>do. | Vër-öör,<br>Vër-ëris<br>(ëre),<br>&c. | { I fear, or am<br>fearing.<br>thou fearest.<br>do. |  |
|                   | Future Simple.     | Hort-äbör,                             | I shall exhort.                                           | Vër-ëbör,                             | I shall fear.                                       |  |
|                   | Imperfect.         | Hort-äbär,                             | I was exhorting.                                          | Vër-ëbär,                             | I was fearing.                                      |  |
|                   | Perfect.           | Hort-ätüs<br>sum,                      | { I have exhorted,<br>or I exhorted.                      | Vër-itüs<br>sum,                      | { I have feared,<br>or I feared.                    |  |
|                   | Fut. Perfect.      | Hort-ätüs<br>ëro,                      | I shall have ex-<br>horted.                               | Vër-itüs<br>ëro,                      | I shall have<br>feared.                             |  |
|                   | Pluperfect.        | Hort-ätüs<br>ëram,                     | I had exhorted.                                           | Vër-itüs<br>ëram,                     | I had feared,                                       |  |
| SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. | Present.           | Hort-ër,                               | I may exhort.                                             | Vër-eär,                              | I may fear.                                         |  |
|                   | Imperfect.         | Hort-ärër,                             | I might exhort.                                           | Vër-ërër,                             | I might fear.                                       |  |
|                   | Perfect.           | Hort-ätüs<br>sim,                      | { I may have ex-<br>horted.                               | Vër-itüs<br>sim,                      | { I may have<br>feared.                             |  |
|                   | Pluperfect.        | Hort-ätüs<br>essem,                    | I should have<br>exhorted.                                | Vër-itüs<br>essem,                    | I should have<br>feared.                            |  |
| IMPERATIVE.       | Present.           | Hort-äre,                              | exhort thou.                                              | Vër-äre,                              | fear thou.                                          |  |
|                   | Future.            | Hort-ätör,                             | { thou shalt or<br>must exhort.                           | Vër-ätör,                             | { thou shalt or<br>must fear.                       |  |
| INFINITIVE.       | Pres. & Imperf.    | Hort-äri,                              | to exhort.                                                | Vër-ëri,                              | to fear.                                            |  |
|                   | Perf. & Plup.      | Hort-ätüs<br>essë,                     | { to have exhorted.                                       | Vër-itüs<br>essë,                     | { to have feared.                                   |  |
|                   | Future.            | Hort-ätürüs<br>essë,                   | { to be about to<br>exhort.                               | Vër-itürüs<br>essë,                   | { to be about to<br>fear.                           |  |
| PARTICIPLES.      | Present.           | Hort-ans,                              | exhorting.                                                | Vër-ens,                              | fearing.                                            |  |
|                   | Future.            | Hort-ätürüs,                           | about to exhort.                                          | Vër-itürüs,                           | about to fear.                                      |  |
|                   | Perfect.           | Hort-ätüs,                             | having exhorted.                                          | Vër-itüs,                             | having feared.                                      |  |
|                   | Gerundive.         | Hort-andüs,                            | { meet to be ex-<br>horted.                               | Vër-endüs,                            | meet to be feared.                                  |  |
| SUPINES.          | Hort-ätum,         | to exhort.                             | Vër-itum,                                                 | to fear.                              |                                                     |  |
| GERUND.           | Hort-ätü,          | to be exhorted.                        | Vër-itü,                                                  | to be feared.                         |                                                     |  |
|                   | Hort-andum,<br>&c. | exhorting.<br>&c.                      | Vër-endum,<br>&c.                                         | fearing.<br>&c.                       |                                                     |  |

Besides the Passive forms, the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle Active: as, hortätüs, having exhorted.

but an Active meaning.

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, to speak, like rēgōr.

IV. Partīōr, partītūs sum, partīrī, to divide, „ audiōr.

| III.          |                                        |                                                        | IV.                                     |                                                         |                   |
|---------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Present.      | Lōqu-ōr,<br>Lōqu-ērīs<br>(ērē),<br>&c. | { I speak, or am<br>speaking.<br>thou speakest.<br>&c. | Part-īōr,<br>Part-īrīs<br>(īrē),<br>&c. | { I divide, or am<br>dividing.<br>thou dividest.<br>&c. | INDICATIVE MOOD.  |
| Fut. Simple.  | Lōqu-ār,                               | I shall speak.                                         | Part-īār,                               | I shall divide.                                         |                   |
| Imperfect.    | Lōqu-ēbār,                             | I was speaking.                                        | Part-īēbār,                             | I was dividing.                                         |                   |
| Perfect.      | Lōcū-tūs<br>sum,<br>or I spoke.        | I have spoken,                                         | Part-ītūs<br>sum,<br>or I divided.      | I have divided,                                         |                   |
| Fut. Perfect. | Lōcū-tūs<br>ēro,                       | I shall have<br>spoken.                                | Part-ītūs<br>ēro,                       | I shall have di-<br>vided.                              |                   |
| Pluperfect.   | Lōcū-tūs<br>ēram,                      | I had spoken.                                          | Part-ītūs<br>ēram,                      | I had divided.                                          |                   |
| Present.      | Lōqu-ār,                               | I may speak.                                           | Part-īār,                               | I may divide.                                           | SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. |
| Imperfect.    | Lōqu-ērēr,                             | I might speak.                                         | Part-īērēr,                             | I might divide.                                         |                   |
| Perfect.      | Lōcū-tūs<br>sim,                       | I may have<br>spoken.                                  | Part-ītūs<br>sim,                       | I may have di-<br>vided.                                |                   |
| Pluperfect.   | Lōcū-tūs<br>essem,                     | I should have<br>spoken.                               | Part-ītūs<br>essem,                     | I should have di-<br>vided.                             |                   |
| Present.      | Lōqu-ērē,                              | speak thou.                                            | Part-īrē,                               | divide thou.                                            | IMPERATIVE.       |
| Future.       | Lōqu-ītōr,                             | { thou shalt or<br>must speak.                         | Part-ītōr,                              | { thou shalt or<br>must divide.                         |                   |
| Pres. & Imp.  | Lōqu-ī,                                | to speak.                                              | Part-īrī,                               | to divide.                                              | INFINITIVE.       |
| Perf. & Plup. | Lōcū-tūs<br>essē,                      | to have spoken.                                        | Part-ītūs<br>essē,                      | to have divided.                                        |                   |
| Future.       | Lōcū-tūrūs<br>essē,                    | to be about to<br>speak.                               | Part-ītūrūs<br>essē,                    | to be about to<br>divide.                               | PARTICIPLES.      |
| Present.      | Lōqu-ens,                              | speaking.                                              | Part-īens,                              | dividing.                                               |                   |
| Future.       | Lōcū-tūrūs,                            | about to speak.                                        | Part-ītūrūs,                            | about to divide.                                        |                   |
| Perfect.      | Lōcū-tūs,                              | having spoken.                                         | Part-ītūs,                              | having divided.                                         |                   |
| Gerundive.    | Lōqu-endūs,                            | meet to be spoken.                                     | Part-iendūs,                            | meet to be divided.                                     |                   |
| SUPINES.      | Lōcū-tum,                              | to speak.                                              | Part-ītum,                              | to divide.                                              |                   |
|               | Lōcū-tū,                               | to be spoken.                                          | Part-ītū,                               | to be divided.                                          |                   |
| GERUND.       | Lōqu-endum,<br>&c.                     | speaking.<br>&c.                                       | Part-iendum,<br>&c.                     | dividing.<br>&c.                                        |                   |

The Gerundive, and occasionally the Perf. Participle, are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning.

Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

*Dependent Verbs of the First Conjugation.*

1. Admiramur cantum avium illarum. 2. Admiramini Dei potentiam. 3. Animalia quaedam vocem humanam imitantur. 4. Caesar milites hortatus est, ut fortiter pugnarent. 5. Hannibal Alpes superare conatus est. 6. Hortabor patrem ut pueri mentem probe excolat. 7. Quid meditaris, carissime amice? 8. Contemplor pulchram hanc imaginem. 9. Venerare Deum, venerare parentes. 10. Tum demum beatus eris, quum aspernatus eris voluptatem.

1. Who does not admire the song of the nightingale? 2. Meditate on these things. 3. Observe (carefully) this beautiful image. 4. It does good to the mind to contemplate lofty things. 5. Contemplate, citizens, the examples of the ancients! 6. Then at length will ye be happy when ye have learnt (*fut. perf.*) to despise pleasure. 7. I will encourage the boy to (ut) contemplate those things. 8. Attempt great things; thou wilt do great things. 9. I will take care that my son may admire those things (*ea, n. pl.*) which are fit-to-be-admired. 10. There is no doubt that the Romans admired Cicero.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

*Dependent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.*

RULE 16.—Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity*, are in Latin commonly followed by the Genitive.

1. Veremini, O pueri, senectutem! 2. Darius Alexandro magnam partem Asiae pollicitus est. 3. Plinius scribit: nunc pueri omnia sciunt, neminem verentur, imitantur neminem. 4. Tuebimur miseros, quorum agros vastavistis. 5. Incolae hoc facinus fatebuntur. 6. Comites, qui salutem regis tuiti erant, maximum praemium acceperunt. 7. Scelerum suorum recordabuntur. 8. Reus facinus confessus est. 9. Jucundum est mare a terra intueri. 10. Semper miserorum hominum miserebimur.

1. We reverence the power of God. 2. Guard the king, soldiers! 3. Confess the truth (true things), boy; it is better to be punished than to deceive. 4. Look-into these things carefully. 5. The general has promised rewards to the soldiers. The generals have promised rewards to the soldiers. 6. He has confessed the crime, and will be punished. 7. It is pleasant to call-to-mind past dangers. 8. Ye will call-to-mind these things, citizens, when I am cast forth (*fut. perf.*) from the city. 9. Have-pity-on the accused (man), judges! 10. He reverences the gods.

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

*Dependent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.*

RULE 17.—*Ūtor, fruor, vescor, fungor*, govern the Ablative Case. To these add *pōtior*, *I obtain-possession-of* (4 Conj.).

A.—1. Si morimur, corpus tantum moritur, non animus. 2. Dux maximam adeptus est gloriam. 3. Cives, libertatem adepti, summa laetitia fruentur. 4. Virtutis viam semper sequemur. 5. Cura ut bene moriaris. 6. Audi multa, loquere pauca. 7. Per multos annos pace usi sunt. 8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescuntur. 9. Munere tuo bene fungere! 10. Aliquando oculi non funguntur munere suo.

1. By this death he obtained the freedom of his country. 2. By this death he has obtained immortal glory. 3. It is a small-thing to enjoy life; it is a great-thing to discharge the duties of life. 4. Take care that you always follow (*subj.*) the path (way) of virtue. 5. You will enjoy all these good (things). 6. When the body has died (*fut. perf.*), then indeed shall we enjoy true life. 7. The Britons used-to-feed (*imperfect*) on milk, flesh, (and) cheese. 8. He used the greatest freedom in his oration. 9. Use riches, do not abuse (them). 10. Follow us; we will protect you.

B.—1. Sapienter utimini tempore. 2. Clarissimus hic dux consulatu functus est. 3. Qui nimis cupit honores, raro eos adipiscitur. 4. Caesar duas legiones ad Labienum proficisci iubet, ipse in Menapiorum fines profectus est. 5. Bellum gerimus, ut pace fruamur. 6. Alexander immortalitatis gloriam adeptus est. 7. Augustus omnes cives benigne alloquebatur. 8. Eodem die, quo Dianae templum deflagavit, Alexander Magnus natus est. 9. Regulus omnes cruciatus Poenorum fortiter passus est. 10. Hannibal milites adhortatus est, ut reminiscerentur pristinae virtutis suae, neve (*and not*) liberorum obliviscerentur.

1. Thou hast wisely discharged thine office-of-consul. 2. Generals often exhort their soldiers to (ut) remember their wives and children. 3. Remember (your) ancient valour, soldiers! 4. Caesar orders these two legions to set out. 5. It is a small thing to speak kindly (benigne) to (one's) fellow-citizens. 6. That most famous (nobilis) battle was fought near the lake Trasimenus. 7. Caesar himself set out for (into) the territories of the Menapii. 8. Now we have peace; shortly we shall carry-on war. 9. Regulus endured bravely the utmost tortures. 10. On the same day (see Latin No. 8), on which that most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was born.

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

*Dependent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.*

1. Milites belli fortunam experiuntur. 2. Epaminondas nunquam mentiebatur. 3. Senes multa experti sunt in longa vita. 4. Magnos viros virtute metimur, non fortuna. 5. Voluptas blanditur sensibus

nostris. 8. Frons, oculi, vultus saepe mentuntur. 7. Tarquinius Superbus potius est regno. 8. Puniamini, quod mentiti estis. 9. Bellum civis in Italia orsum est. 10. Patres bona sua cum liberis partantur.

1. We will try the fortune of war. 2. The Romans often tried the fortune of war. 3. It is extremely-base (*superl.*) to lie. 4. We will share our goods with our children. 5. There is no doubt that the enemy *pl.* have obtained possession of the city. 6. Let us try our valour: let us obtain possession of the camp of the enemy. 7. There is no doubt that pleasure wins upon our senses. 8. We ought to measure men by (their) virtue, not by (their) fortune. 9. Very many (people) measure all things by fortune. 10. The consuls will measure (out) lands to the soldiers.

### XXIX.—PREPOSITIONS.

Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or Ablative.

#### I. With the Accusative alone.

|                                |                                |                   |                                                        |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Ad</b> ,                    | <i>to.</i>                     | <b>Ob</b> ,       | <i>on account of.</i>                                  |
| <b>Adversus</b> ,              | } <i>against, against.</i>     | <b>Potius</b> ,   | <i>in the power of.</i>                                |
| <b>Adversum</b> ,              |                                | <b>Per</b> ,      | <i>through.</i>                                        |
| <b>Antè</b> ,                  | <i>before.</i>                 | <b>Post</b> ,     | <i>behind.</i>                                         |
| <b>Apud</b> ,                  | <i>at, near.</i>               | <b>Post</b> ,     | <i>after.</i>                                          |
| <b>Circà</b> , <i>circum</i> , | <i>around.</i>                 | <b>Præter</b> ,   | <i>beside.</i>                                         |
| <b>Circiter</b> ,              | <i>about.</i>                  | <b>Prope</b> ,    | <i>near.</i>                                           |
| <b>Cis &amp; citrà</b> ,       | <i>on this side of.</i>        | <b>Propter</b> ,  | <i>on account of.</i>                                  |
| <b>Contrà</b> ,                | <i>against, contrary to.</i>   | <b>Secundum</b> , | { <i>following, in accord-</i><br><i>ance with.</i>    |
| <b>Ergà</b> ,                  | <i>towards (only of the</i>    | <b>Suprà</b> ,    |                                                        |
| <b>Extrà</b> ,                 | <i>outside of. [feelings].</i> | <b>Trans</b> ,    | <i>across.</i>                                         |
| <b>Infrà</b> ,                 | <i>below.</i>                  | <b>Ultrà</b> ,    | <i>on the farther side of.</i>                         |
| <b>Inter</b> ,                 | <i>between, among.</i>         | <b>Versùs</b> ,   | <i>towards (only of place</i><br><i>or direction).</i> |
| <b>Intrà</b> ,                 | <i>inside of, within.</i>      |                   |                                                        |
| <b>Juxtà</b> ,                 | <i>near, hard by, next to.</i> |                   |                                                        |

Versùs is put after the word it governs.

#### EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Exercitus hostium ad portas urbis venit. 2. Multi homines contra naturam vivunt. 3. Iudices secundum leges hunc hominem puniverunt. 4. Multae aves ante hiemem in alias terras migrant. 5. Hac aestate extra urbem habitabimus. 6. Romani trans Rhenum multa oppida vastaverunt. 7. Hoc bellum intra paucos dies finitum erit. 8. Vir sapiens non propter metum legibus parebit. 9. Rhodanus primo occidentem versùs fluit. 10. Equitatum præter fluminis ripas contra hostem ducit.

1. Hannibal led (his) army to the gates of the city. 2. Who doubts that it is contrary-to virtue to lie? 3. All these things are in-the-power-of the consuls. 4. The general led his army towards the river. 5. Very many birds migrate into Britain in the summer. 6. The river Rhone flows through the lake. 7. A good judge will judge according to the laws. 8. We (nos) shall dwell within the city, but you (vos) will depart into the country (agri). 9. The camp of Hannibal was near the walls of the city. 10. The night-gale migrates across the sea in winter.

## II. With the Ablative alone.

|                              |                                     |                        |                                    |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Ā,</b> <i>āh, or abs,</i> | <i>by or from.</i>                  | <b>Ex</b> or <b>ē,</b> | <i>out of.</i>                     |
| <b>Absquē</b> (rare),        | <i>without.</i>                     | <b>Præ,</b>            | <i>before, in comparison with.</i> |
| <b>Cōram,</b>                | <i>in the presence of.</i>          | <b>Prō,</b>            | <i>before, for, on behalf of.</i>  |
| <b>Cum,</b>                  | <i>with.</i>                        | <b>Sinē,</b>           | <i>without.</i>                    |
| <b>Dē,</b>                   | <i>down from, from, concerning.</i> | <b>Tēnūs,</b>          | <i>reaching to, as far as.</i>     |

Tēnūs is put after the word it governs.

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Magna cum voluptate avium cantum audivimus. 2. A Cicero liber de senectute scriptus est. 3. Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit. 4. Romani ex Gallia trans Rhenum veniunt. 5. Pro salute reipublicae et pro liberis pugnabimus. 6. Magna gloria nemini venit sine virtute. 7. Coram parentibus dixi quae scripseram. 8. Incolae urbis de pace legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 9. Cato in senectute prae ceteris floruit. 10. Alexander omnes terras Oceano tenus vicit.

1. The songs of birds are heard with pleasure by all. 2. Cicero has written a very beautiful book concerning old age. 3. The ocean separates Britain from Gaul. 4. He said these things in-the-presence-of all the soldiers. 5. The general marched (duco) his army out of the city. 6. Before all others Demosthenes and Cicero are the most renowned orators. 7. There is no true glory without virtue. 8. Along with thee (tecum\*) we will depart into another land. 9. We are fighting for (pro) our country, for our wives, for our children. 10. He has said this in-the-presence-of his father.

## III. With the Accusative or Ablative.

|                                                         |                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>In,</b> <i>in, into.</i>                             | <b>Sūper,</b> <i>over.</i>   |
| <b>Sūb,</b> <i>up to, under; of time, about.</i>        | <b>Sūbter,</b> <i>under.</i> |
| <b>Clām,</b> <i>secretly, without the knowledge of.</i> |                              |

*In* and *Sub* with the *Acc.* answer to the question *Whither?* with the *Abl.*, the question *Where?*

\* *Mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum,* are used instead of *cum me, cum te, etc.*

## EXERCISE XL.

1. Multi homines in varias terras itinera faciunt. 2. In magno flumine magni capiuntur pisces. 3. In hortum meum non venisti, in urbe autem fuisti. 4. Sub terra est magna rerum utilium multitudo. 5. Equitatus hostium sub noctem in castra venit. 6. Plurimae aves sub hiemem in alias terras volant. 7. Pompeius in Aegypto sub oculis uxoris et liberorum mortuus est. 8. Caesar super Indos proferet imperium. 9. Super tabernaculum Darii imago solis fulgebat. 10. Etiam sub marmore et auro habitat servitus.

1. We were coming into the city; you were dwelling in it. 2. The camp of Hannibal was under the walls of Rome. 3. We were walking in the garden. 4. It is not pleasant to all to dwell in the city. 5. Large fishes are not caught in a small river. 6. The nightingale does not always remain in the same lands. 7. They slay Pompey beneath the very (ipse) eyes of his wife. 8. The Romans will extend their empire beyond the boundaries of Europe. 9. Beneath the earth (there) are many beautiful things. 10. Towards (versus) winter these birds migrate into other lands.

## XXX.—ADVERBS.

Adverbs are formed from Adjectives and Participles, by means of the terminations *-ē* and *-tēr*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the First and Second Declensions end in *-ē*, as *doctē*, *learnedly*, from *doctus*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the Third Declension end in *-tēr*, as *fortītēr*, *bravely*, from *fortis*.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in *iūs*.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into *ē*.

## ADJECTIVES.

## ADVERBS.

|          |            | Positive.  |              | Comparative. | Superlative. |
|----------|------------|------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| doctus,  | learned.   | doctē,     | learnedly.   | doctius      | doctissimē   |
| liber,   | free.      | libērē,    | freely.      | liberius     | liberrimē    |
| pulcher, | beautiful. | pulchrē,   | beautifully. | pulchrius    | pulcherrimē  |
| fortis,  | brave.     | fortītēr,  | bravely.     | fortius      | fortissimē   |
| similis, | like.      | similītēr, | alike.       | similius     | simillimē    |
| acer,    | keen.      | acritēr,   | keenly.      | acrius       | acerrimē     |
| felix,   | lucky.     | felicītēr, | luckily.     | feliccius    | felicissimē  |
| prudens, | prudent.   | prudētēr,  | prudently.   | prudētius    | prudētissimē |

Adverbs are irregular in their Comparison, if the Adjectives from which they are derived are also irregular.

| ADJECTIVES. |             | ADVERBS.   |               |         |                     |
|-------------|-------------|------------|---------------|---------|---------------------|
|             |             | Positive.  |               | Comp.   | Sup.                |
| bōnus,      | good.       | bēnē,      | well.         | mēlius  | optimē              |
| mālus,      | bad.        | mālē,      | badly, ill.   | pējus   | pessimē             |
| multus,     | much, many. | multum,    | much.         | plūs    | plūrimum            |
| magnus,     | great.      | magnōpērē, | greatly.      | māgis   | maximē              |
| prōpinquus, | near.       | prōpē,     | near, nearly. | prōpius | proximē             |
| (prō)       | before.     | —          |               | prius   | primum &<br>[primē] |

## EXERCISE XLI.

**A.**—1. Germani cum Romanis fortiter pugnaverunt. 2. Milites audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare incipiunt. 3. Miles hostibus fortissime restitit. 4. Galli Italiam longe lateque vastaverunt. 5. Cicero Roscium audacissime defendit. 6. Judicem ii timere debent, qui male egerunt. 7. Deus mundum sapientissime regit. 8. Leones facilius vincuntur quam tigres. 9. Nunquam jucundius viximus quam nunc. 10. Orationes Demosthenis ab Atheniensibus attentissime audiebantur.

1. Fight bravely, soldiers; ye are fighting for your country. 2. Now we shall live most delightfully. 3. The Germans fought very bravely. 4. Hear the speech more attentively, citizens! 5. The Gauls laid waste the lands (ager) of the Romans far and wide. 6. Ye have acted most wisely, citizens! 7. Who doubts that the soldiers have fought most bravely? 8. In this matter (res) Cicero acted most prudently. 9. The Gauls were not easily conquered. 10. Who doubts that God rules the world most wisely?

**B.**—1. Non satis est vivere, debemus bene vivere. 2. Multum prodest juventuti libros veterum legere. 3. Eo tempore Cicero maxime omnium reipublicae profuit. 4. Quis reipublicae plus quam Cicero profuit? 5. Orator est (he is) magis quam poeta. 6. Hannibal, dux Poenorum, proxime ad urbem accessit. 7. Primum Latinam linguam discere incipiam. 8. Propius ad portas urbis accessit Hannibal quam Hasdrubal. 9. Pessime omnium egisti! bonos cives perdidisti; improbis bene fecisti. 10. Prius linguam Latinam quam Graecam didicit.

1. It is easy to write; it is not easy to write well. 2. (He) who does not read attentively, reads ill. 3. It was difficult to approach near to the gates. 4. Hannibal approached very-near to (ad) the gates of Rome. 5. There is no doubt that you have acted very-ill. 6. You have acted worse than all the others. 7. It is not a great thing to write much, it is a very-great thing to write well. 8. First of all (things), reverence the celestial gods. 9. We have lived most pleasantly. 10. There is no doubt that to write well is extremely-difficult.

## XXXI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

## 1. Possum, pōtūi, possē,—to be able; can.

[Possum is compounded of pot, able, and sum, I am, the t in pot being changed into s before another s.]

| INDICATIVE.       | SUBJUNCTIVE. | INDICATIVE.        | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1. Present.       |              | 4. Perfect.        |              |
| S. Pos-sum        | Pos-sim      | S. Pōt-ūi          | Pōt-uērim    |
| Pōt-ēs            | Pos-sis      | Pōt-uisti          | Pōt-uēris    |
| Pōt-est           | Pos-sit      | Pōt-uīt            | Pōt-uērit    |
| P. Pos-simūs      | Pos-simūs    | P. Pōt-uimūs       | Pōt-uērimūs  |
| Pōt-estis         | Pos-sitis    | Pōt-uistis         | Pōt-uēritis  |
| Pos-sunt          | Pos-sint     | Pōt-uērunt (ērē)   | Pōt-uērint   |
| 2. Future-Simple. |              | 5. Future-Perfect. |              |
| S. Pōt-ēro        | (wanting.)   | S. Pōt-uēro        | (wanting.)   |
| Pōt-ēris          |              | Pōt-uēris          |              |
| Pōt-ērit          |              | Pōt-uērit          |              |
| P. Pōt-ērimūs     |              | P. Pōt-uērimūs     |              |
| Pōt-ēritis        |              | Pōt-uēritis        |              |
| Pōt-ērunt         |              | Pōt-uērint         |              |
| 3. Imperfect.     |              | 6. Pluperfect.     |              |
| S. Pōt-eram       | Pos-sem      | S. Pōt-ueram       | Pōt-uissem   |
| Pōt-erās          | Pos-sēs      | Pōt-uērās          | Pōt-uissēs   |
| Pōt-erāt          | Pos-sēt      | Pōt-uērāt          | Pōt-uissēt   |
| P. Pōt-erāmūs     | Pos-sēmūs    | P. Pōt-uērāmūs     | Pōt-uissēmūs |
| Pōt-erātis        | Pos-sētis    | Pōt-uērātis        | Pōt-uissētis |
| Pōt-erant         | Pos-sent     | Pōt-uērant         | Pōt-uissent  |

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imp.—Possē. Perf. and Plup.—Pōtuisse. Future—wanting.  
(Participle pōtens, used only as Adjective, powerful.)

## EXERCISE XLII.

1. Ego possum legere, tu potes scribere, soror potest acu pingere.  
2. Tyrannus animum sapientis infringere non poterat. 3. Cur heri nobiscum ambulare non poterat? 4. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. 5. Nemo dubitat, quin milites urbem defendere possint. 6. Mores tyranni ei amicos parare non potuerunt. 7. Non dubitamus, quin urbs a civibus defendi potuerit. 8. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum hostes impetum fecerunt. 9. Quid melius hominibus dari potuit quam ratio? 10. Virtutis splendor nunquam obscurari poterit.

1. We are all able to be serviceable to (our) friends. 2. You will not be able to be a friend to all. 3. Hannibal was not able to

obtain-possession-of the city. 4. Cornelia was able to train her sons most wisely. 5. No one doubted that the soldiers were able to defend the city. 6. We cannot all be kings; we can all be good citizens. 7. You will not be able to read Sallust easily: he is a difficult author. 8. Caesar was able to conquer his enemies; he was not able to conquer envy. 9. Those wicked men will not be able to quit life with even mind. 10. Restrain (thy) tongue; so thou wilt be able to restrain also thy temper (animus).

2. Völo, völuī, vellē,—to be willing, to wish.

3. Nölo, nöluī, nollē,—to be unwilling, not to wish.

4. Mälo, mäluī, mallē,—to be more willing, to prefer, to have rather.

INDICATIVE.

1. Present.

|                      |            |          |
|----------------------|------------|----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Völo    | Nölo       | Mälo     |
| Vīs                  | Nōn vīs    | Māvīs    |
| Vult                 | Nōn vult   | Māvult   |
| <i>Plur.</i> Völümūs | Nölümūs    | Mälümūs  |
| Vultīs               | Nōn vultīs | Māvultīs |
| Völunt               | Nölunt     | Mälunt   |

2. Future-Simple.

|                       |          |          |
|-----------------------|----------|----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Völ-am   | Nöl-am   | Mäl-am   |
| Völ-ēs                | Nöl-ēs   | Mäl-ēs   |
| Völ-ēt                | Nöl-ēt   | Mäl-ēt   |
| <i>Plur.</i> Völ-ēmūs | Nöl-ēmūs | Mäl-ēmūs |
| Völ-ētīs              | Nöl-ētīs | Mäl-ētīs |
| Völ-ent               | Nöl-ent  | Mäl-ent  |

3. Imperfect.

|                         |            |            |
|-------------------------|------------|------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Völ-ēbam   | Nöl-ēbam   | Mäl-ēbam   |
| Völ-ēbās                | Nöl-ēbās   | Mäl-ēbās   |
| Völ-ēbāt                | Nöl-ēbāt   | Mäl-ēbāt   |
| <i>Plur.</i> Völ-ēbāmūs | Nöl-ēbāmūs | Mäl-ēbāmūs |
| Völ-ēbātīs              | Nöl-ēbātīs | Mäl-ēbātīs |
| Völ-ēbant               | Nöl-ēbant  | Mäl-ēbant  |

4. Perfect.

|                        |                     |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Völ-uī    | Nöl-uī              | Mäl-uī              |
| Völ-uistī              | Nöl-uistī           | Mäl-uistī           |
| Völ-uīt                | Nöl-uīt             | Mäl-uīt             |
| <i>Plur.</i> Völ-uīmūs | Nöl-uīmūs           | Mäl-uīmūs           |
| Völ-uistīs             | Nöl-uistīs          | Mäl-uistīs          |
| Völ-uērunt or -uērē    | Nöl-uērunt or -uērē | Mäl-uērunt or -uērē |

5. *Future-Perfect.*

*Sing.* Völ-uëro  
Völ-uëris  
Völ-uërit  
*Plur.* Völ-uërimûs  
Völ-uëritîs  
Völ-uërint

Nöl-uëro  
Nöl-uëris  
Nöl-uërit  
Nöl-uërimûs  
Nöl-uëritîs  
Nöl-uërint

Mäl-uëro  
Mäl-uëris  
Mäl-uërit  
Mäl-uërimûs  
Mäl-uëritîs  
Mäl-uërint

6. *Pluperfect.*

*Sing.* Völ-uëram  
Völ-uërás  
Völ-uërát  
*Plur.* Völ-uëramûs  
Völ-uërátîs  
Völ-uërant

Nöl-uëram  
Nöl-uërás  
Nöl-uërát  
Nöl-uëramûs  
Nöl-uërátîs  
Nöl-uërant

Mäl-uëram  
Mäl-uërás  
Mäl-uërát  
Mäl-uëramûs  
Mäl-uërátîs  
Mäl-uërant

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

*Sing.* Völ-im  
Völ-is  
Völ-ît  
*Plur.* Völ-imûs  
Völ-îtîs  
Völ-int

Nöl-im  
Nöl-is  
Nöl-ît  
Nöl-imûs  
Nöl-îtîs  
Nöl-int

Mäl-im  
Mäl-is  
Mäl-ît  
Mäl-imûs  
Mäl-îtîs  
Mäl-int

2. *Imperfect.*

*Sing.* Vel-lem  
Vel-lës  
Vel-lët  
*Plur.* Vel-lëmûs  
Vel-lëtîs  
Vel-lent

Nol-lem  
Nol-lës  
Nol-lët  
Nol-lëmûs  
Nol-lëtîs  
Nol-lent

Mal-lem  
Mal-lës  
Mal-lët  
Mal-lëmûs  
Mal-lëtîs  
Mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*

*Sing.* Völ-uërim  
Völ-uëris  
Völ-uërit  
*Plur.* Völ-uërimûs  
Völ-uëritîs  
Völ-uërint

Nöl-uërim  
Nöl-uëris  
Nöl-uërit  
Nöl-uërimûs  
Nöl-uëritîs  
Nöl-uërint

Mäl-uërim  
Mäl-uëris  
Mäl-uërit  
Mäl-uërimûs  
Mäl-uëritîs  
Mäl-uërint

4. *Pluperfect.*

*Sing.* Völ-uissëm  
Völ-uissës  
Völ-uissët  
*Plur.* Völ-uissëmûs  
Völ-uissëtîs  
Völ-uissent

Nöl-uissëm  
Nöl-uissës  
Nöl-uissët  
Nöl-uissëmûs  
Nöl-uissëtîs  
Nöl-uissent

Mäl-uissëm  
Mäl-uissës  
Mäl-uissët  
Mäl-uissëmûs  
Mäl-uissëtîs  
Mäl-uissent

## IMPERATIVE.

*Present.*

(wanting.)

Nōl-I  
Nōl-Itē

(wanting.)

*Future.*Nōl-Itō  
Nōl-Itō  
Nōl-Itētē  
Nōl-untō

## INFINITIVE.

*Present and Imperfect.*

Vel-lē

Nol-lē

Mal-lē

*Perfect and Pluperfect.*

Vēl-uissē

Nōl-uissē

Māl-uissē

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Vēl-ens

Nōl-ens

(wanting.)

## EXERCISE XLIII.

**A.**—1. Ego volo legere, tu vis scribere, frater vult pingere. 2. Ego domi sedere nolo, tu ambulare non vis. 3. Tu ambulare mavis quam domi sedere. 4. Soror saltare mavult quam ambulare. 5. Oro te, ut mecum ludere velis. 6. Dic, cur me comitari nolis. 7. Orabam te, ut mecum ludere velles. 8. Nesciebam, cur me comitari nolles. 9. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse debemus. 10. Si vis amari, ama!

1. We do not wish to walk in the fields; we prefer to remain at home. 2. We wished to read, you wished to write, (our) brother wished to paint. 3. I knew-not (how) to dance; I preferred to write and to read. 4. I wished to read; but my sister wished to sing and to dance. 5. If you wish to be happy, imitate the examples of good men. 6. Alexander wished to extend his empire beyond the Indi. 7. We do not all obtain those-things which we wish. 8. I had-rather (*pres.*) fight (*inf.*) against enemies than against envy. 9. Pompey was unwilling to depart from the city. 10. I entreat you to (ut) be willing to accompany me.

**B.**—1. Ego tibi prodesse malo quam obesse. 2. Non dubito, quin mihi prodesse malis quam obesse. 3. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles quam obesse. 4. Amicus maluit diligere quam metui. 5. Secundum naturam volent vivere. 6. Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat. 7. Boni esse mavultis quam nobiles et divites. 8. Pythagoras Apollini hostiam immolare noluit. 9. Nolite dolori nimis indulgere. 10. Amici eadem velle debent.

1. I prefer to be good (rather) than to seem (so). 2. Do not\* deceive; do not\* lie; those things (res) very greatly injure friendship. 3. Epaminondas was unwilling to lie. 4. You wish the same things which I (wish). 5. We had-rather (*pres.*) be (*inf.*) useful to our country than be (*inf.*) rich. 6. A good man will prefer to be loved (rather) than to be feared. 7. I had-rather be loved by true friends than be rich. 8. The ancient Romans sacrificed very many victims to the gods. 9. Pythagoras was unwilling to indulge anger: he preferred to restrain it. 10. Be unwilling to follow bad examples, my son!

\* Say, *Be unwilling to . . . .* Compare No. 9 of the Latin sentences.

5. *Fēro, tūli, ferrē, lātum,—to bear, carry, endure.*

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

| INDICATIVE.              | SUBJUNCTIVE.        | INDICATIVE.                    | SUBJUNCTIVE.           |
|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Present.</i>       |                     | 4. <i>Perfect.</i>             |                        |
| S. <i>Fēr-o</i>          | <i>Fēr-am</i>       | S. <i>Tūl-i</i>                | <i>Tūl-ērim</i>        |
| <i>Fēr-s</i>             | <i>Fēr-ās</i>       | <i>Tūl-istī</i>                | <i>Tūl-ērīs</i>        |
| <i>Fēr-t</i>             | <i>Fēr-āt</i>       | <i>Tūl-īt</i>                  | <i>Tūl-ērīt</i>        |
| P. <i>Fēr-imūs</i>       | <i>Fēr-īmūs</i>     | P. <i>Tūl-imūs</i>             | <i>Tūl-ērimūs</i>      |
| <i>Fēr-tīs</i>           | <i>Fēr-ātīs</i>     | <i>Tūl-istīs</i>               | <i>Tūl-ērītīs</i>      |
| <i>Fēr-unt</i>           | <i>Fēr-ant</i>      | <i>Tūl-ērunt</i> or <i>ērō</i> | <i>Tūl-ērint</i>       |
| 2. <i>Future-Simple.</i> |                     | 5. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>      |                        |
| S. <i>Fēr-am</i>         | (wanting.)          | S. <i>Tūl-ēra</i>              | (wanting.)             |
| <i>Fēr-ēs</i>            |                     | <i>Tūl-ērīs</i>                |                        |
| <i>Fēr-ēt</i>            |                     | <i>Tūl-ērīt</i>                |                        |
| P. <i>Fēr-ēmūs</i>       |                     | P. <i>Tūl-ērimūs</i>           |                        |
| <i>Fēr-ētīs</i>          |                     | <i>Tūl-ērītīs</i>              |                        |
| <i>Fēr-ent</i>           |                     | <i>Tūl-ērint</i>               |                        |
| 3. <i>Imperfect.</i>     |                     | 6. <i>Pluperfect.</i>          |                        |
| S. <i>Fēr-ēbam</i>       | <i>Fēr-rem</i>      | S. <i>Tūl-ēram</i>             | <i>Tūl-issem</i>       |
| <i>Fēr-ēbās</i>          | <i>Fēr-rēs</i>      | <i>Tūl-ērās</i>                | <i>Tūl-issēs</i>       |
| <i>Fēr-ēbāt</i>          | <i>Fēr-rēt</i>      | <i>Tūl-ērāt</i>                | <i>Tūl-issēt</i>       |
| P. <i>Fēr-ēbāmūs</i>     | <i>Fēr-rēmūs</i>    | P. <i>Tūl-ērāmūs</i>           | <i>Tūl-issēmūs</i>     |
| <i>Fēr-ēbātīs</i>        | <i>Fēr-rētīs</i>    | <i>Tūl-ērātīs</i>              | <i>Tūl-issētīs</i>     |
| <i>Fēr-ēbant</i>         | <i>Fēr-rent</i>     | <i>Tūl-ērant</i>               | <i>Tūl-issent</i>      |
| IMPERATIVE.              |                     | PARTICIPLES.                   |                        |
| <i>Present.</i>          | <i>Fēr</i>          | <i>Present.</i>                | <i>Fēr-ens</i>         |
|                          | <i>Fēr-tē</i>       | <i>Future.</i>                 | <i>Lātūrūs (a, um)</i> |
| <i>Future.</i>           | <i>Fēr-to</i>       |                                |                        |
|                          | <i>Fēr-to</i>       |                                |                        |
|                          | <i>Fēr-tōtē</i>     |                                |                        |
|                          | <i>Fēr-unto</i>     |                                |                        |
| INFINITIVE.              |                     | SUPINES.                       |                        |
| <i>Pres. and Imp.</i>    | <i>Fēr-rē</i>       |                                | <i>Lātum</i>           |
| <i>Perf. and Plup.</i>   | <i>Tūl-issē</i>     |                                | <i>Lātū</i>            |
| <i>Future.</i>           | <i>Lātūrūs esse</i> |                                |                        |
|                          |                     | GERUND.                        |                        |
|                          |                     | <i>Aco.</i>                    | <i>Fēr-endum</i>       |
|                          |                     |                                | &c.                    |

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

| INDICATIVE.              |                  | SUBJUNCTIVE.    |  | INDICATIVE.               |             | SUBJUNCTIVE. |  |
|--------------------------|------------------|-----------------|--|---------------------------|-------------|--------------|--|
| 1. <i>Present.</i>       |                  |                 |  | 4. <i>Perfect.</i>        |             |              |  |
| S.                       | Fēr-ār           | Fēr-ār          |  | S.                        | Lātūs sum   | Lātūs sim    |  |
|                          | Fer-rīs, -rē     | Fēr-ārīs, -ārē  |  |                           | Lātūs es    | Lātūs sis    |  |
|                          | Fer-tūr          | Fēr-ātūr        |  |                           | Lātūs est   | Lātūs sit    |  |
| P.                       | Fēr-īmūr         | Fēr-āmūr        |  | P.                        | Lāti sumūs  | Lāti simūs   |  |
|                          | Fēr-īmīni        | Fēr-āmīni       |  |                           | Lāti estis  | Lāti sitis   |  |
|                          | Fēr-untūr        | Fēr-antūr       |  |                           | Lāti sunt   | Lāti sint    |  |
| 2. <i>Future-Simple.</i> |                  |                 |  | 5. <i>Future-Perfect.</i> |             |              |  |
| S.                       | Fēr-ār           | (wanting.)      |  | S.                        | Lātūs ēro   | (wanting.)   |  |
|                          | Fēr-ārīs, -ārē   |                 |  |                           | Lātūs ēris  |              |  |
|                          | Fēr-ātūr         |                 |  |                           | Lātūs ērit  |              |  |
| P.                       | Fēr-ēmūr         |                 |  | P.                        | Lāti ērimūs |              |  |
|                          | Fēr-ēmīni        |                 |  |                           | Lāti ēritis |              |  |
|                          | Fēr-entūr        |                 |  |                           | Lāti ērunt  |              |  |
| 3. <i>Imperfect.</i>     |                  |                 |  | 6. <i>Pluperfect.</i>     |             |              |  |
| S.                       | Fēr-ēbār         | Fer-rēr         |  | S.                        | Lātūs ēram  | Lātūs essem  |  |
|                          | Fēr-ēbārīs, -ārē | Fer-rērīs, -ērē |  |                           | Lātūs ērās  | Lātūs esēs   |  |
|                          | Fēr-ēbātūr       | Fer-rētūr       |  |                           | Lātūs ērāt  | Lātūs esēt   |  |
| P.                       | Fēr-ēbāmūr       | Fer-rēmūr       |  | P.                        | Lāti ērāmūs | Lāti esēmūs  |  |
|                          | Fēr-ēbāmīni      | Fer-rēmīni      |  |                           | Lāti ērātīs | Lāti esētīs  |  |
|                          | Fēr-ēbantūr      | Fer-rentūr      |  |                           | Lāti ērānt  | Lāti essent  |  |

---

| IMPERATIVE.     |                                 | INFINITIVE.            |                   |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | Fer-rē<br>Fēr-īmīni             | <i>Pres. and Imp.</i>  | Fer-ri            |
|                 |                                 | <i>Perf. and Plup.</i> | Lātūs esē         |
| <i>Future.</i>  | Fer-tūr<br>Fer-tōr<br>Fēr-untōr | <i>Future.</i>         | Lātum iri         |
|                 |                                 | PARTICIPLES.           |                   |
|                 |                                 | <i>Perfect.</i>        | Lātūs (a, um)     |
|                 |                                 | <i>Gerundive.</i>      | Fēr-endūs (a, um) |

The Compounds of *fēro* are conjugated in the same way, *e. g.* :

|                        |                     |            |            |                  |
|------------------------|---------------------|------------|------------|------------------|
| Affēro (ad, fero),     | attūli,             | allātum,   | afferrē,   | bring to.        |
| Aufēro (ab, fero),     | abstūli,            | ablātum,   | auferrē,   | carry away.      |
| Effēro (ex, fero),     | extūli,             | elātum,    | efferrē,   | carry out.       |
| Inferō (in, fero),     | intūli,             | illātum,   | inferre,   | carry into.      |
| Offēro (ob, fero),     | obtūli,             | oblātum,   | offerrē,   | present.         |
| Perfēro (per, fero),   | pertūli,            | perlātum,  | perferrē,  | bear through,    |
| Praefēro (prae, fero), | praetūli,           | praelātum, | praeferrē, | prefer. [endure. |
| Rēfēro (re, fero),     | {rētūli<br>rettūli} | rēlātum,   | rēferrē,   | bring back.      |

## EXERCISE XLIV.

1. Senectus affert prudentiam. 2. Laudo vos, quod misero atque inopi auxilium fertis. 3. Ferre laborem consuetudo docet. 4. Nihil  
PR. L. 1. G

potest praeferri virtuti. 5. Curabamus, ut vobis auxilium ferremus. 6. Rex curabat, ut inopibus civibus auxilium ferretur. 7. Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges. 8. Agricola paupertatis onus patienter tulit. 9. Fer patienter laborem. 10. Milites in itineribus multas aerumnas pertulerunt.

1. Socrates bore hardships most patiently. 2. Learn thou to bear well pleasure and pain. 3. Cato bore old age excellently-well (*superl. of bene*). 4. There is no doubt that old age brings many sorrows with it (*secum*). 5. Caesar ordered two cohorts to bring assistance to the cavalry. 6. I have learned to bring assistance to the wretched. 7. A sailor ought to be able to bear patiently the hardships of the sea. 8. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life. 9. Who can endure the discourse of this unlearned man? 10. The Romans knew (*how*) to bear with even mind the greatest disasters.

6. *Ēo, ivi, irē, itam, —to go.*

| INDICATIVE.              |                | SUBJUNCTIVE.              |                          | INDICATIVE.                             |                    | SUBJUNCTIVE. |  |
|--------------------------|----------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|--|
| 1. <i>Present.</i>       |                |                           |                          | 4. <i>Perfect.</i>                      |                    |              |  |
| S. <i>Ē-o</i>            | <i>Ē-am</i>    | S. <i>Ī-vi or Ī-i</i>     | <i>Ī-vērim or Ī-ērim</i> | <i>Ī-visti</i>                          | <i>ēo. Ī-vēris</i> | <i>ēo.</i>   |  |
| <i>Ī-s</i>               | <i>Ē-ās</i>    | <i>Ī-vit</i>              | <i>ēo. Ī-vērit</i>       | <i>ēo.</i>                              |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī-t</i>               | <i>Ē-āt</i>    | P. <i>Ī-vimūs</i>         | <i>ēo. Ī-vērimūs</i>     | <i>ēo.</i>                              |                    |              |  |
| P. <i>Ī-mūs</i>          | <i>Ē-āmūs</i>  | <i>Ī-vistis</i>           | <i>ēo. Ī-vēritis</i>     | <i>ēo.</i>                              |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī-tis</i>             | <i>Ē-ātis</i>  | <i>Ī-vērunt</i>           | <i>ēo. Ī-vērint</i>      | <i>ēo.</i>                              |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ē-unt</i>             | <i>Ē-ant</i>   | <i>or Ī-vērē</i>          |                          |                                         |                    |              |  |
| 2. <i>Future-Simple.</i> |                |                           |                          | 5. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>               |                    |              |  |
| S. <i>Ī-bo</i>           | (wanting.)     | S. <i>Ī-vēro or Ī-ēro</i> | (wanting.)               | <i>Ī-vēris</i>                          | <i>ēo.</i>         |              |  |
| <i>Ī-bis</i>             |                | <i>Ī-vērit</i>            | <i>ēo.</i>               |                                         |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī-bīt</i>             |                | P. <i>Ī-vērimūs</i>       | <i>ēo.</i>               | <i>Ī-vēritis</i>                        | <i>ēo.</i>         |              |  |
| P. <i>Ī-bimūs</i>        |                | <i>Ī-vērint</i>           | <i>ēo.</i>               |                                         |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī-bītis</i>           |                |                           |                          | 6. <i>Pluperfect.</i>                   |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī-bunt</i>            |                |                           |                          | S. <i>Ī-vēram or Ī-vissem, Ī-issem,</i> |                    |              |  |
| 3. <i>Imperfect.</i>     |                |                           |                          | <i>Ī-eram or Ī-aeam</i>                 | <i>or Ī-aeem</i>   |              |  |
| S. <i>Ī-bam</i>          | <i>Ī-rem</i>   | <i>Ī-vēras</i>            | <i>ēo. Ī-vissēs</i>      | <i>ēo.</i>                              |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī-bās</i>             | <i>Ī-rēs</i>   | <i>Ī-vērāt</i>            | <i>ēo. Ī-vissēt</i>      | <i>ēo.</i>                              |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī-bāt</i>             | <i>Ī-rēt</i>   | P. <i>Ī-vērāmūs</i>       | <i>ēo. Ī-vissēmūs</i>    | <i>ēo.</i>                              |                    |              |  |
| P. <i>Ī-bāmūs</i>        | <i>Ī-rēmūs</i> | <i>Ī-vērātis</i>          | <i>ēo. Ī-vissētis</i>    | <i>ēo.</i>                              |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī-bātis</i>           | <i>Ī-rētis</i> | <i>Ī-vērant</i>           | <i>ēo. Ī-vissent</i>     | <i>ēo.</i>                              |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī-bant</i>            | <i>Ī-rent</i>  |                           |                          |                                         |                    |              |  |
| IMPERATIVE.              |                |                           |                          |                                         |                    |              |  |
| Present.                 |                |                           |                          | Future.                                 |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī</i>                 |                |                           |                          | <i>Ī-to</i>                             |                    |              |  |
| <i>Ī-tē</i>              |                |                           |                          | <i>Ī-tōtē</i>                           |                    |              |  |
|                          |                |                           |                          | <i>Ē-unto</i>                           |                    |              |  |

| INFINITIVE.            |                                | PARTICIPLES.    |                              |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Pres. and Imp.</i>  | <i>Ī-rē</i>                    | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Ī-ens (Gen. ē-untils)</i> |
| <i>Perf. and Plup.</i> | <i>Ī-vissē, vissē, or issē</i> | <i>Future.</i>  | <i>Ī-tūrs (ā, um)</i>        |
| <i>Future.</i>         | <i>Ī-tūrus esse</i>            |                 |                              |
| GERUND.                |                                | SUPINE.         |                              |
| <i>Acc.</i>            | <i>Ī-undum, &amp;c.</i>        |                 | <i>Ī-tum</i>                 |

The Compounds of *ēo* are conjugated in the same way. The following are the principal:—

|                         |                |                 |                                             |
|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>āb-ēo,</i>           | <i>āb-īi,</i>  | <i>āb-ītum,</i> | <i>to go away.</i>                          |
| <i>ād-ēo,</i>           | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to go to.</i>                            |
| <i>oō-ēo,</i>           | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to join together.</i>                    |
| <i>ex-ēo,</i>           | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to go out.</i>                           |
| <i>īn-ēo, intrō-ēo,</i> | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to go into, enter.</i>                   |
| <i>intēr-ēo,</i>        | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to perish.</i>                           |
| <i>ōb-ēo,</i>           | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to meet; esp. to meet death; to die.</i> |
| <i>pēr-ēo,</i>          | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to perish.</i>                           |
| <i>prae-ēo,</i>         | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to go before.</i>                        |
| <i>praetēr-ēo,</i>      | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to pass by.</i>                          |
| <i>rēd-ēo,</i>          | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to return.</i>                           |
| <i>stīb-ēo,</i>         | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to go up to.</i>                         |
| <i>trans-ēo,</i>        | <i>&amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>to cross over.</i>                       |

N.B. In the Compounds the form *īi* is used in preference to *ivi*.

#### EXERCISE XLV.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis. 2. Post mortem corpus interit, animus nunquam interibit. 3. Quum animi nostri ex corporibus exierint, non interibunt. 4. In pugna atrocissima multi fortissimi milites perierunt. 5. Curare debemus, ne vitam ignave transeamus. 6. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt. 7. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo diem supremum obiit. 8. Magna pars militum fame et frigore interiit. 9. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat. 10. Alexander adire ad Jovis oraculum statuit.

1. Very many (persons) spend their life indolently. 2. Let us go-out (*pres. subj.*) from the camp; let us return (*pres. subj.*) into the city. 3. Caesar threw a bridge over the river, in-order-that his soldiers might cross on foot (*pedibus*). 4. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind. 5. Fifteen thousand of the Romans perished in that sanguinary battle. 6. We ought all to be able to meet (our) last day with even mind. 7. After the battle very many perished of hunger (*abl.*) and cold (*abl.*). 8. Let us go-to (*pres. subj.*) the temples of the gods. 9. I pass-by very many things in silence. 10. Italy is fortified by the Alps, (those) most lofty mountains, which an army will not easily cross.

7. *Fia, factus sum, fieri*,—to become, or be made, to happen.

| INDICATIVE.                | SUBJUNCTIVE.   | INDICATIVE.                 | SUBJUNCTIVE.                 |
|----------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Present.</i>         |                | 3. <i>Imperfect.</i>        |                              |
| S. <i>Fi-o</i>             | <i>Fi-am</i>   | S. <i>Fi-ebam</i>           | <i>Fi-erem</i>               |
| · <i>Fi-es</i>             | <i>Fi-ās</i>   | · <i>Fi-ebis</i>            | <i>Fi-erēs</i>               |
| <i>Fi-t</i> or <i>fi-t</i> | <i>Fi-āt</i>   | · <i>Fi-ebit</i>            | <i>Fi-erēt</i>               |
| P. [ <i>Fi-ens</i> ]       | <i>Fi-ēns</i>  | P. <i>Fi-ebāns</i>          | <i>Fi-erēns</i>              |
| [ <i>Fi-tis</i> ]          | <i>Fi-ātis</i> | · <i>Fi-ebātis</i>          | <i>Fi-erētis</i>             |
| <i>Fi-unt</i>              | <i>Fi-ant</i>  | · <i>Fi-ebant</i>           | <i>Fi-erent</i>              |
| 2. <i>Future.</i>          |                | 4. <i>Perfect.</i>          |                              |
| S. <i>Fi-am</i>            | (wanting.)     | <i>Factus sum, &amp;c.</i>  | <i>Factus sim, &amp;c.</i>   |
| <i>Fi-ēs</i>               |                | 5. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>   |                              |
| <i>Fi-ēt</i>               |                | <i>Factus ēro, &amp;c.</i>  | (wanting.)                   |
| P. <i>Fi-ēns</i>           |                | 6. <i>Pluperfect.</i>       |                              |
| <i>Fi-ētis</i>             |                | <i>Factus eram, &amp;c.</i> | <i>Factus essem, &amp;c.</i> |
| <i>Fi-ent</i>              |                |                             |                              |

|                   | IMPERATIVE.              |                        | INFINITIVE.        |
|-------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>   | <i>Fi, Fi-tē</i>         | <i>Pres. and Imp.</i>  | <i>Fi-ri</i>       |
|                   | PARTICIPLES.             | <i>Perf. and Plup.</i> | <i>Factus esse</i> |
| <i>Perfect.</i>   | <i>Factus (a, um)</i>    | <i>Future.</i>         | <i>Factum iri</i>  |
| <i>Gerundive.</i> | <i>Faciendus (a, um)</i> |                        |                    |

*Fio* is used as the Passive of *facio*.

#### EXERCISE XLVI.

1. Nemo fit casu bonus. 2. Ex amico inimicus, ex inimico amicus fieri potest. 3. Senectute prudentior fis. 4. Nemo ignavia immortalis factus est. 5. Deus dixit: fiat, et factus est mundus. 6. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis fiebant consules. 7. Themistoclis consilio factum est, ut Athenienses urbem relinquerent. 8. Onus quod bene fertur leve fit. 9. Quod factum est, infectum fieri non potest. 10. Qui noxium adjuvabit, fiet socius culpae.

1. No one becomes altogether-base (*superl.*) by chance. 2. This heavy burden was made light by patience. 3. There is no doubt that the heaviest griefs become lighter by patience. 4. Bear these things through, citizens: (things) done cannot be made undone. 5. In time our soldiers will be made more daring. 6. Two consuls were appointed (made). 7. There is no doubt that the danger has become more severe with time. 8. In the winter (*hibernus, adj.*) time the days become shorter and the nights longer. 9. In the time of Philip, the Athenians had become the allies of the Romans. 10. Do not assist a guilty-person; in-that-way you will become a partner in (= of) his fault.

## 8. NEUTER-PASSIVE VERBS.

Besides *Fio* several other Intransitive Verbs form their Perfect tenses after the manner of Passives. The principal of these are the following:—

|                                                  |                          |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,</i>                 | <i>to dare, venture.</i> |
| <i>Fido, fides sum, fidēre (usu. with Dat.),</i> | <i>to trust.</i>         |
| <i>Gaudeo, gāvissus sum, gaudēre,</i>            | <i>to rejoice.</i>       |
| <i>Sōleo, sōlītus sum, sōlēre,</i>               | <i>to be accustomed.</i> |

So too *coeno*, *to sup* or *dine*, often takes *coenātus sum*, and *jūro*, *to swear*, *jurātus sum*, instead of *coenāvi*, *jurāvi*. Such Verbs are called Semi-Deponents or Neuter-Passives.

NOTE.—The Future Infinitive of these Verbs is formed as in the Active voice : *ausūrus essē*, &c.

## EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Nonnullae aves prope ad domicilia hominum accedere audent. 2. Optimus ille vir mori ausus est; non autem mentiri. 3. Canes solebant currentes bibere in flumine Nilo. 4. Jam coenati eramus, et in horto ambulabamus. 5. Maxime gavisi sunt cives quod urbs servata erat. 6. In has leges jurati estis, et debetis jusjurandum vestrum conservare. 7. Solitus est Solon aliquid quotidie addiscere. 8. Multum gavisi sunt Romani quod Poenos navali praelio vicerant. 9. Caesar fides est rebus suis. 10. Gavisus est consul quod illum tam fidelem socium repererat.

1. The ancient Britons were accustomed to clothe themselves with skins. 2. Some animals are accustomed to dwell both (et) in the water and on (in) land. 3. The Helvetii were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them). 4. The Romans rejoiced when Cicero returned to the city. 5. The general trusted to himself. 6. Dare to die, citizens! 7. When you return (*fut.-perf.*), we shall already have dined. 8. All the magistrates had sworn to (*in* with *acc.*) the laws. 9. We ought to rejoice because the war has been brought-to-an-end (*finio*). 10. The whole city rejoiced that (*quod*) the conspiracy had been discovered.

## XXXII.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs :—

## I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES.

|                                                              |                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>Dēōt,</b> <i>dēōuit, dēōērē,</i>                          | <i>it is seemly, becomes.</i>       |
| <b>Dēdēōt,</b> <i>dēdēōuit, dēdēōērē,</i>                    | <i>it is unseemly, unbecomes.</i>   |
| <b>Lībēt,</b> <i>lībuit &amp; lībītum est, lībērē,</i>       | <i>it pleases. [coming.</i>         |
| <b>Llōēt,</b> <i>llōuit &amp; llōītum est, llōērē,</i>       | <i>it is lawful, it is allowed.</i> |
| <b>Liquēt,</b> <i>liquērē,</i>                               | <i>it is clear.</i>                 |
| <b>Misērēt</b> or <i>misērētūr, misērītum est, misērērē,</i> | <i>it excites pity.</i>             |
| <b>Ōportēt,</b> <i>ŏportuit, ŏportērē,</i>                   | <i>it behoves; (one) ought.</i>     |
| <b>Pigēt,</b> <i>pīguit &amp; pīgītum est, pigērē,</i>       | <i>it vexes.</i>                    |
| <b>Plācēt,</b> <i>plācuit or plācītum est, plācērē,</i>      | <i>it pleases.</i>                  |
| <b>Poenitēt,</b> <i>poenituit, poenitērē,</i>                | <i>it causes sorrow, repents.</i>   |
| <b>Pūdēt,</b> <i>pūduit or pūdītum est, pūdērē,</i>          | <i>it shames.</i>                   |
| <b>Taedēt,</b> <i>(pertaesum est,) taedērē,</i>              | <i>it disgusts, wearies.</i>        |

The Persons are expressed in the following way :—

## INDICATIVE.

|                    |                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present.</b>    | <b>Pūdēt mē,</b> <i>it shames me, or I am ashamed.</i>                                                                                   |
|                    | <b>Pūdēt tē,</b> <i>it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.</i>                                                                             |
|                    | <b>Pūdēt eum,</b> <i>it shames him, or he is ashamed.</i>                                                                                |
|                    | <b>Pūdēt nōs,</b> <i>it shames us, or we are ashamed.</i>                                                                                |
|                    | <b>Pūdēt vōs,</b> <i>it shames you, or ye are ashamed.</i>                                                                               |
|                    | <b>Pūdēt eōs,</b> <i>it shames them, or they are ashamed.</i>                                                                            |
| <b>Fut.-Simp.</b>  | <b>Pūdēbit mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs,</b> <i>it will shame me, thee, him us, &amp;c., or I, thou, he, we, &amp;c., will be ashamed.</i> |
| <b>Imperfect.</b>  | <b>Pūdēbat mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs,</b> <i>it shamed me, thee, him, us, &amp;c. or I, thou, he, we, &amp;c., were ashamed.</i>        |
| <b>Perfect.</b>    | <b>Pūdūit mē, tē, eum, &amp;c.,</b> <i>I, thou, he, &amp;c., was ashamed.</i>                                                            |
| <b>Fut.-Perf.</b>  | <b>Pūdūerit mē, tē, eum, &amp;c.,</b> <i>I, thou, he, &amp;c., will have been ashamed.</i>                                               |
| <b>Pluperfect.</b> | <b>Pūdūerāt mē, tē, eum, &amp;c.,</b> <i>I, thou, he, &amp;c., had been ashamed.</i>                                                     |

And similarly for the Subjunctive Mood. The Imperative is not found; the Pres. of the Subjunctive being used instead; as, *pudeat te, let it shame thee, or be ashamed!*

All these Verbs govern the subject in the Accusative Case, except *libet, licet, liquet*, and *placet*, which govern the Dative: as, *mihī libet, it pleases me; mihī licet, it is lawful for me, I am at liberty, &c.*

## II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

|                                        |                          |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Grandināt, āvīt, ārē,                  | <i>it hails.</i>         |
| Ningīt, ninxīt, ningērē,               | <i>it snows.</i>         |
| Plūīt, plūīt or plāvīt, pluērē,        | <i>it rains.</i>         |
| Tōnāt, tōnuīt, tōnārē,                 | <i>it thunders.</i>      |
| Lūcescīt, (illuxit,) lūcescērē,        | <i>it becomes light.</i> |
| Vespērascīt, vespērāvīt, vespēraseērē, | <i>evening comes on.</i> |

## EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. Me pudet poenitetque stultitiae meae. 2. Homines infamiae suae neque pudet neque taedet. 3. Nos oportet hoc facere. 4. Nobis non licebit castris exire. 5. Me civitatis morum piget taedetque. 6. Oratorem irasci minime decet. 7. Non libet mihi deplorare vitam. 8. Placuit Caesari, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret. 9. Pueros decet tacere. 10. Si forte tonuerat, veteres tribuere solebant Jovi.

1. That wicked man (*acc.*) repents not of his crime (*scelus*). 2. What does it behove us to do? 3. It behoved you to maintain the laws. 4. It-is-unbecoming-in a citizen to deceive his fellow-citizens. 5. I am vexed and disgusted at the folly (*gen.*) of these men. 6. In the winter it seldom thunders; in the summer it seldom snows. 7. Evening-is-coming-on; let us go-out-from the fields and let us return to the city. 8. On the same day it thundered, hailed, snowed, (and) rained. 9. You may (it is allowed to you) go forth (*inf.*) from the city, citizens! 10. Dare to be free, Romans! it is allowed to all to die!

## PART II.

## SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

The pupil should repeat the Syntactical Rules already given:—

| Page   |    |    | Page   |    |    | Page    |    |    |
|--------|----|----|--------|----|----|---------|----|----|
| RULE 1 | .. | 4  | RULE 7 | .. | 13 | RULE 13 | .. | 48 |
| " 2    | .. | 4  | " 8    | .. | 21 | " 14    | .. | 49 |
| " 3    | .. | 4  | " 9    | .. | 25 | " 15    | .. | 62 |
| " 4    | .. | 4  | " 10   | .. | 36 | " 16    | .. | 70 |
| " 5    | .. | 6  | " 11   | .. | 46 | " 17    | .. | 71 |
| " 6    | .. | 10 | " 12   | .. | 48 |         |    |    |

## XXXIII.—THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE COMPARATIVE.

RULE 18.—After Adjectives in the Comparative degree *quam* may be omitted and the Ablative used instead of the Nominative or Accusative: as, *vilius argentum est auro*, *silver is more common than gold*.

## EXERCISE XLIX.

1. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* 2. *Deus major et potentior est cunctis.* 3. *Nihil est majus amicitia, nihil jucundius.* 4. *Homini Deus nihil mente praestabilius dedit.* 5. *Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior esse videtur scientia.* 6. *Elephanto nulla belluarum prudentior est.* 7. *Tullus Hostilius non solum proximo regi dissimilis, sed ferocior etiam Romulo fuit.* 8. *Humana omnia inferiora sunt virtute.* 9. *Phidiae simulacris nihil est perfectius.* 10. *Sol major et splendidior est luna.*

1. What is brighter than the sun? What more excellent than virtue? 2. Who doubts that the sun is larger than the moon? 3. The earth is greater than the moon; the sun than the earth. 4. Silver and gold are brighter than iron. 5. The elephant is more sagacious than all (other) beasts. 6. There is no doubt that the knowledge of these things is better than the ignorance (of them). 7. Caesar was more powerful than all (the rest of) the citizens.

8. What is commoner than water? yet (autem) what is more useful? 9. Hatred is better than pretence of friendship. 10. No-one of the Athenians is more renowned than Socrates.

### XXXIV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

RULE 19.—When a subordinate clause has a different subject from the subject of the principal clause, the English Verb in the subordinate clause is in Latin expressed by a Substantive and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: as, *sōlē ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vidērunt*, *when the sun had risen* [lit. *the sun having risen*] *the Romans saw the enemy*.

There is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs. But the English Perfect Participle Active may often be expressed by means of the Latin Perfect Participle Passive, in the Ablative Absolute: as, *Caesār, expōsitō exercitū, ad hostēs contendit*, *Caesar, having landed the army* [lit. *the army having been landed*], *hastens against the enemy*.

N.B. The pupil must carefully observe that it is not the Subject of the principal sentence, but the Accusative after the Verb which becomes the Ablative Absolute.

#### EXERCISE L.

A.—1. Sole oriente, nox fugit. 2. Recuperatā pace, artes efflorescunt. 3. Alpibus superatis, Hannibal in Italiam venit. 4. Labitur aetas, nobis non sentientibus. 5. Pompeius, ineunte vere, bellum susceperat. 6. His paratis rebus, Caesar milites naves conscendere jubet. 7. Cognito hostium adventu, Caesar naves ex portu educit. 8. Caesar, exposito exercitu, ad hostes contendit. 9. Nivibus solutis, intumescere solent flumina. 10. Solon et Pisistratus, Servio Tullio regnante, vixerunt.

NOTE.—In the two following Exercises, the words which are to be expressed by the Ablative Absolute are put in italics.

1. *When the sun rises*, (*the sun rising*), all (things) become brighter. 2. *When the moon had risen*, the night was made brighter. 3. *When Cato was slain*, the commonwealth perished. 4. *When these things were done*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark. 5. Caesar, *after he had overcome the Gauls*, waged war with Pompeius. 6. *Having heard these things*, he led his army to the banks of the river. 7. *Whilst Servius Tullius was king* (*Serv. Tull. being-king*), the city was fortified with a wall of stone. 8. *Having learned these things*, he hastened into the territory of the enemy.

9. *Having thrown a bridge across the river (the river being joined by a bridge),* he orders the soldiers to cross. 10. *Having disembarked his soldiers,* he began to lay waste the lands of the enemy.

B.—1. Bello Punico confecto, triumphavit Scipio cum summo honore. 2. Dario apud Arbelam victo, Alexander Asia potitus est. 3. His literis perlectis, consul comprehendere eos jubet. 4. Conjuratio detecta, jam servata esse videbatur civitas. 5. Senatu convocato, Cicero literas recitat quas de conjuratione acceperat. 6. His rebus paratis, contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in agros Helvetiorum. 7. Delectu habito, consul ad exercitum statim proficiscitur. 8. Catone mortuo, nulla jam erat respublica. 9. Caesare occiso, gravissime vexata est respublica bello civili. 10. Proelio commisso, conantur Galli aciem Romanorum perumpere.

1. *Having learned these things,* Caesar orders his soldiers to embark immediately. 2. *Having learned their (eorum) plan,* Caesar led his army into the territories of Cassivellaunus. 3. Caesar, *having sent forward his cavalry,* ordered the legions immediately to follow up. 4. Our men, *having slain many of (ex) the enemy,* returned to the camp. 5. Cassivellaunus, *having heard of this disaster,* sends ambassadors to (ad) Caesar concerning peace. 6. *Having extended (his) empire as far as the Indus,* Alexander returned towards the west. 7. *When this war is finished,* we shall be able to enjoy peace. 8. *(With) you (for) our leader,* we shall be safe. 9. *When old age is attained (adeptus\*),* our bodies become more feeble. 10. *Having slain many of (ex) the enemy,* he led his army into winter quarters.

\* *Adeptus*, with a few other Perf. Participles of Deponent Verbs, is used both in an Active and Passive sense.

### XXXV.—THE ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING DURATION OR EXTENT OF TIME, DISTANCE, AND DIMENSION.

RULE 20.—The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in Latin in the Accusative case: as, *sex et viginti annos regnavit, he reigned twenty-six years; aggregem latum pedes trecentos, altum pedes quinquaginta extruxerunt, they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.*

The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the accusative of *duration of time*.

#### EXERCISE LI.

1. Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit. 2. Quaedam bestiolae unum diem vivunt. 3. Augustus septem horas dormiebat. 4. Troja decem annos a Graecis obsessa est. 5. Cato annos quinque et octoginta natus excessit e vita. 6. Dionysius annos quinque et

viginti natus dominatum occupavit. 7. Turris pedes ducentos alta est. 8. Saguntini aggerem duxerunt trecentos pedes longum et viginti pedes altum. 9. Hanno tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit. 10. Campus Marathon abest ab oppido Atheniensium circiter millia passuum decem.

1. Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh king of the Romans, reigned twenty-four years. 2. They build a wall fifty feet high, and eight feet broad. 3. The walls of Athens were-distant about four thousand paces (*gen.*) from the sea. 4. The towers were about a hundred feet high. 5. Socrates was put-to-death, aged seventy years. 6. Plato lived eighty-one years. 7. It is not enough to have lived many years; it behoves (us) to have lived (them) well. 8. The city (of) Troy was besieged ten years on-account-of (ob) a single (unus) woman. 9. Socrates lived seventy years. 10. Some men live a hundred years.

### XXXVI.—CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

RULE 21.—In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative case without prepositions: as, Consul Rōmam prōfectus est, *the Consul set out for Rome.*

In like manner are used, dōmum (*to one's*) home; rūs, *to the country.*

In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative case without prepositions: as, Consul Rōmā Athēnās prōfectus est, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

In like manner are used, dōmō, *from home*; rūrē, *from the country.*

#### EXERCISE LII.

1. Curius primus Romam elephantos quattuor duxit. 2. Pompeius Luceriā proficiscitur Canusium. 3. Lycurgus Cretam profectus est, ibique perpetuum exilium egit. 4. Aeschines cessit Athenis et se Rhodum contulit. 5. Legati Atheniensium Lacedaemonem profecti sunt, ut auxilium contra Persas peterent. 6. Acceptis mandatis, Roscius cum Lucio Caesare Capuam pervenit. 7. Alcibiades, maximis rebus gestis, domum reversus est. 8. Leonidas cum trecentis iis, quos eduxerat Spartā, se opposuit hostibus. 9. Tiberius domo cessit, et se rus contulit. 10. Alexander, Dario apud Arbelam victo, Babylonem profectus est.

1. In the summer I shall set out for Venusia. 2. He departed from Athens and returned to Rome. 3. We will go to Crete, you to Rhodes, but the others will remain in the city. 4. Caesar having done these things (*ablative absolute*), returned immediately home. 5. He departed from Rome and set out for Luceria. 6. I will

betake myself to Lacedaemon; there I shall be safe. 7. Do not set out to the country. 8. The consuls had already arrived at Luceria (*acc.*). 9. The ambassadors of the Carthaginians came to Rome in-order-to (ut) seek-for peace. 10. Pompeius having been slain (*abl. absol.*), Caesar was unwilling to return immediately to Rome.

**RULE 22.**—In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive case, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition; as,

Rōmae Consūlēs, Athēnīs Archontēs, Carthāgīnē Suffētēs, sive iudicēs, quōtannis creābantur, *At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually.*

Diōnysīūs Cōrīnthī puērōs docēbāt, *Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*

In like manner are used hūmī, *on the ground*; dōmī, *at home*; rūrī, *in the country*.

#### EXERCISE LIII.

1. Pompeius hiemare Dyrrachii et Apolloniae constituerat. 2. Delphis Apollinis oraculum fuit. 3. Conon plurimum Cypri vixit, Timotheus Lesbi. 4. Multos annos domi nostrae vixit. 5. Alexander Magnus Babylone morbo consumptus est. 6. Dionysius multos annos Corinthi vixit. 7. Horatius Venusiae natus est. 8. Catilina humi jacet. 9. Talis (*such*) Romae Fabricius, qualis (*as*) Aristides Athenis fuit. 10. Lycurgus Cretae perpetuum exilium egit.

1. Marius and Cicero were born at Arpinum. 2. Atticus, a friend of Cicero, lived many years at Athens. 3. Your friend lived many years at my house. 4. Dionysius, having been driven-out-of Syracuse, used-to-teach (*imperf.*) boys at Corinth. 5. Many apples and pears lay on the ground. 6. At Cannae a sanguinary battle was fought (*committo*) between the Romans and Hannibal. 7. I had-rather dwell\* at home than in the country. 8. Tiberius retired from Rome and lived in exile at Rhodes. 9. Very many great generals, few poets were born at Rome. 10. At Lacedaemon, both (*et*) boys and girls were most carefully trained up (*imperf.*).

\* Say, I prefer to dwell.

### XXXVII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE MOOD.

**RULE 23.**—The Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood are used:

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing*: as, *hīstōriā narrāt Rōmā ā Rōmūlō conditam essē, history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus*; *sentimūs cālērē ignem,*

nivem esse albam, dulcē (essē) mēl, *we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.*

- II. After such expressions as nōtum est, *it is known*; justum est, *it is just*; vērissimilē est, *it is probable*; constāt, *it is agreed, it is certain, &c.*: as, constāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam esse, *it is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus.*

## EXERCISE LIV.

**A.**—1. Equitatum Caesaris advenire videmus. 2. Thales aquam dixit esse initium rerum. 3. Solon rempublicam praemiis et poenis contineri dixit. 4. Nemo negabit mundum a Deo conservari. 5. Vox quondam audita est, Romam a Gallis captum iri. 6. Epaminondas animadvertibat, totum exercitum propter ducum imprudentiam peritum esse. 7. Pollicebaris te venturum esse. 8. Helvetii polliciti sunt se Caesari obsides duros (esse). 9. Videmus aves auctumno in alias terras migrare. 10. Scio haec vera esse.

1. We know that the sun is larger than the moon. 2. Caesar learns that the enemy are-gathering-together all their forces. 3. The oracle of Delphi said that Socrates was (*infin. pres.*) the wisest of all men. 4. We see that the flowers blossom forth. 5. We know that the body perishes, but that the soul is immortal. 6. Socrates thought (*imperf.*) that knowledge was more excellent than all (other) things. 7. Who has not heard that the Romans were conquered by Hannibal at (*apud*) Cannae? 8. We see that all things are done by the wisdom of God. 9. We know that the sun is very-far distant (*absum*) from the earth. 10. We promise that we will be faithful to you.

**B.**—1. Credibile est hominum causā factum esse mundum. 2. Verum est amicitiam nisi inter bonos esse non posse. 3. Traditum est Homerum caecum fuisse. 4. Hannibalem in Asia mortuum esse constat. 5. Bestiis rationem deesse manifestum est. 6. Omnes cives legibus parere aequum est. 7. Certum est liberos a parentibus amari. 8. Sororem tuam hac aestate reversuram esse non verisimile est. 9. Constat Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Corinthum, delevisse. 10. Memoriae proditum est, Latonam confugisse Delum atque ibi Apollinem Dianamque peperisse.

1. It is just that you (should) punish me. 2. It is probable that the stars are suns. 3. It is true that we have been conquered. 4. It has been handed down to us that Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. 5. It is manifest that the world was not made by chance. 6. It is agreed amongst all writers that Romulus was (*perf.*) the first king of the Romans. 7. It is manifest that you make-a-mistake. 8. It is handed down (*perf.*) to us by the poets that a woman was the cause of the Trojan war. 9. It is certain that the soul ought to obey reason. 10. It is manifest that we shall be conquered unless we remain (*fut.-perf.*) in the city.

## XXXVIII.—DIRECT QUESTIONS.

**RULE 24.**—Questions are usually put in Latin with the help of Interrogative words or particles: as, *Quid agis? What are you doing? Pūtas-nē? Do you think? Non-nē pūtās? Do you not think?*

The principal Interrogative particles are *nē*, *num*, *utrum*, *ān*. Of these *nē* is always written as an enclitic like the Conjunction *que*. *Utrum* and *an* are used only when two alternatives are spoken of; and *an* always with the second alternative.

*Nē* does not need to be expressed by any English word, as *Visnē? Do you wish? Nonnē pūtās? Do you not think?*

*Utrum . . . ān* may be translated by *whether . . . or*, as *Utrum sōl ān lūnā mājōr est? Whether is the sun or the moon the greater?*

*Num* has a negative force, as *Num itā pūtās = You don't think so, do you?* and is to be used when the answer *No* is looked for.

## EXERCISE LV.

**A.**—1. *Estne voluptas summum bonum?* 2. *Nonne fuit Socrates antiquorum sapientissimus?* 3. *Nonne sol longe major est quam luna?* 4. *Num ita audes dicere?* 5. *Utrum est aurum gravius an argentum?* 6. *Utrum Socrates an Plato sapientior fuit?* 7. *Suntne haec vera bona?* 8. *Num tu has res melius quam magister tuus intelligis?* 9. *Nonne omnes discere oportet vitam tranquillo animo relinquere?* 10. *Num putas argentum et aurum cariora esse virtute et prudentiā?*

1. Are these things true? 2. Do you believe that pain is the greatest evil? 3. Was not (begin with *nonne*) Pythagoras a very great (*summus*) philosopher? 4. You don't think that I am a liar, do you? 5. Is gold more excellent than wisdom? (*No*.) 6. Are you wiser than (your) father? (*No*.) 7. Whether is iron or gold more useful? 8. Is not (begin with *nonne*) iron far more useful than gold? 9. Whether do you prefer this or that? 10. Is not (begin with *nonne*) the world governed by the Divine wisdom?

**B.**—1. *Nonne urbs Roma a Gallis capta et direpta est?* 2. *Nonne omnes consentiunt Scipionem primum fuisse virum?* 3. *Num audes dicere haec benevolō animo facta esse?* 4. *Utrum Romae an ruri hibernis mensibus manere mavis?* 5. *Utrum est turpitudine omnium malorum maximum an non?* 6. *Utrum haec benevolō animo malevolō animo fecisti?* 7. *Utrum Cato an Caesar tibi praestantior et clarior vir esse videtur?* 8. *Utrum esse an videri bonus mavis?*

9. Num audes dicere, Lucreti, haec casu facta esse? tune ita credis?  
 10. Estne verum, quod nonnulli dicunt, animos ex aliis (*corporibus*) in alia corpora migrare?

1. Is it true that the sun is made-of-fire? 2. Is not Plato the most eloquent of philosophers? 3. Are not Livy and Sallust most elegant writers? 4. Does it not do good to all to read the works [books] of that (*ille*) most excellent writer? 5. Are you so foolish that (*ut*) you should believe all these things to have been made by chance? 6. Is the body mortal? Is the soul immortal? 7. Are not the books of Plato full of these subjects (*res*)? 8. Is Sallust or Livy (begin with *utrum*) the more elegant writer? Are-you-able to answer? 9. Does it (*num*) become a philosopher to lament-over his life? Does it not behove him to act bravely? 10. Do all the philosophers agree concerning these subjects?

### XXXIX.—INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

RULE 25.—Indirect questions are those which are quoted as having been asked, or are dependent upon some word expressing doubt, uncertainty, or wonder, in the former part of the sentence: as, Rōgābo quid factum sit, *I will ask what has been done*; Mirum est quae fūerit causā, *It is strange what the reason may have been*; Vidēbo num rediērīt, *I will see whether he has returned*. The dependent verb is always put in the Subjunctive Mood.

RULE 26.—The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood is determined by that of the verb in the former part of the sentence upon which it depends. (1.) If the verb in the former clause expresses *Present* or *Future Time*, the verb in the dependent clause is put in the Present or Perfect Tense Subjunctive. (2.) If the verb in the principal clause expresses *Past Time*, the verb in the dependent clause is put in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense Subjunctive.

#### *Present, Perfect, and Future Time.*

PRESENT. { Scio quid agās,  
 Scio quid egērīs,  
 Scio quid actūrus sis,

*I know what you are doing.*  
*I know what you have done.*  
*I know what you are going to do.*

PERFECT. { Cognōvī quid agās,  
 Cognōvī quid egērīs,  
 Cognōvī quid actūrus sis,

*I have learnt what you are doing.*  
*I have learnt what you have done.*  
*I have learnt what you are going to do.*

|         |                          |                                               |
|---------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| FUTURE. | (Audiam quid agās,       | <i>I shall hear what you are doing.</i>       |
|         | Audiam quid egēris,      | <i>I shall hear what you have done.</i>       |
|         | Audiam quid actūrus sis, | <i>I shall hear what you are going to do.</i> |

*Past Time.*

|                |                                |                                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| IMPERF.        | (Sciēbam quid agērēs,          | <i>I knew what you were doing.</i>             |
|                | Sciēbam quid egissēs,          | <i>I knew what you had done.</i>               |
|                | Sciēbam quid actūrus essēs,    | <i>I knew what you were going to do.</i>       |
| PERFECT.       | (Cognōvī quid agērēs,          | <i>I learnt what you were doing.</i>           |
|                | Cognōvī quid egissēs,          | <i>I learnt what you had done.</i>             |
|                | Cognōvī quid actūrus essēs,    | <i>I learnt what you were going to do.</i>     |
| PLUP. PERFECT. | (Cognōvēram quid agērēs,       | <i>I had learnt what you were doing.</i>       |
|                | Cognōvēram quid egissēs,       | <i>I had learnt what you had done.</i>         |
|                | Cognōvēram quid actūrus essēs, | <i>I had learnt what you were going to do.</i> |

The same Rule is applicable to the sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive Mood universally. See Exercises xxv., xxvi., xxvii., xxviii. (the Subjunctive Mood).

N.B. In single Indirect Questions *whether* is generally expressed by *num*, which then ceases to have a negative force. In double Indirect Questions it is expressed either by *utrum* or *-ne*.

## EXERCISE LVI.

N.B. In the following examples the Subjunctive must in English be rendered by the Indicative.

**A.**—1. Rogo quid agatis. 2. Rogavit quid agerent. 3. Rogavit quid egissent. 4. Roga tu quid acturi sint. 5. Nescio quare me ex civitate expuleritis. 6. Cognoscere non potuit quantae essent hostium copiae. 7. Speculabimur quot homines in urbem ineant et quot exeant. 8. Dic mihi, Catilina, cur patriam prodere volueris. 9. Dic mihi, Blaese, ubi corpus abjeceris. 10. Chaerephon ex oraculo quaesivit quis omnium Graecorum sapientissimus esset.

1. I will ask how great the forces of the enemy are. 2. Xenophon inquired of (ex) the oracle what it behoved him to do. 3. I wish to learn where the camp of the enemy is. 4. I do-not-know what it behoves me to do. 5. Tell me, my son, what you are going to do. 6. The son was unwilling to tell what he was going-to-do. 7. Count how many darts have been thrown (*conjicio*) into the tent. 8. I will inquire which-of-the-two has conquered. 9. Socrates used-to-inquire (*imperf.*) what was just, what unjust. 10. It is a great thing to know what things are just, what unjust.

**B.**—1. Quaeram num omnia feliciter evenierint. 2. Jussit eos speculari num hostes ex castris exirent. 3. Visam num adventent

- hostes. 4. Subdifficilis est quaestio num unquam novi amici sint veteribus anteponendi? 5. Rogavit nonne haec improba et infamia essent? 6. Rogabo num credat omnia casu facta esse? 7. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus, utrum ipse an Cyrus superaturus esset. 8. Saepe numero quaerebant antiqui philosophi mortalitatisne esset animus an immortalis. 9. Num dubium est casune an consilio factus sit mundus? 10. Plane incertum est vicerintne hostes an victi sint.

1. Inquire of (*ex*) him whether he knows these things. 2. It is doubtful whether these things are true. 3. It is uncertain whether (*utrum* or *ne*) he is a good man or a wicked (one). 4. It is doubtful whether he deserve praise (*laudemne*) or blame. 5. He asked whether the dead felt cold and hunger. 6. I know not whether you are sleeping or waking. 7. I doubt whether he will return (*subj.-pres.*) immediately. 8. He asked whether the city was very strongly fortified. 9. This I ask you, whether you were or not (*nonne*) that (*ille*) night in the house of M. Laeca? 10. Do you doubt whether it behoves a good citizen to side-with his country in time of danger?

## XL.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

RULE 27.—Besides *ut*, *nē*, and *quā* (see Ex. xxv., &c.), the Conjunctions *quō*, *that*, and *quōmīnūs*, *that not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

1. *Ut* = *that*, *in order that*, *granting that*, is used to express either a *purpose* or a *consequence*; as, *eo ut spectem lūdōs*, *I am going in order that I may look at the games*; *accidit ut nōn dōmī essem*, *it happened that I was not at home*.

2. *Nē* = *that not*, is used to express a *purpose*, but not a mere consequence; as, *Haec facio nē mē inimicum tibi pūtēs*, *these things I do that you may not think me your enemy*; but, *sēquitur ut haec nōn vērā sint*, *it follows that these things are not true*.

Obs. After verbs of fearing, *ut* has the meaning of *that not*, and *nē* of *that*: as, *tīmēo ut dux militēs ē castris educāt*, *I fear that the general will not lead the soldiers out of the camp*; *tīmēo nē dux militēs ē castris educāt*, *I fear that the general will lead the soldiers out of the camp*.

3. *Quā* is used after negative propositions and propositions expressing doubt: as, *diēs nullūs est, quā littēras scribam*,

*there is no day that I do not write a letter ; nōn dūbīto quān vērūm dixērīs, I do not doubt you have spoken the truth. (See Ex. xxv., C, &c.)*

4. Quō is used for ūt ēō, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that* : haec lex dātā est, quō mālēfīcī dēterrēntūr, *this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred* ; portās oppīdī obstruxīt, quō fāciliūs impētum hostiū rētardārēt, *he barricaded the gates of the town in order that he might more easily retard the attack of the enemy.*

5. Quōmīnūs, *that not*, is used after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting, &c.*, and must be frequently translated in English by *from* with a verbal substantive : as, aetās nōs non impēdīt quōmīnūs littēras tractēmus, *age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

#### EXERCISE LVII.

**A.**—1. Enitar ut in omnibus rebus tibi prosim. 2. Hoc te rogo atque oro, ne rempublicam deseras. 3. Contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in fines Nerviorum ut consilia eorum praeveniret. 4. Magnopere tibi suadeo ne improbis illis hominibus confidas. 5. Accidit ut milites impransi essent quum signum datum est. 6. Milites cohortatus est ut fortiter castra defenderent. 7. Nonne omnes cives oportet eniti ut reipublicae prosint? 8. Accidit ut inter Labienum et hostes esset flumen praealtum. 9. Sequitur ut non possim tibi confidere. 10. Enitar ne possis mihi diffidere.

1. I will strive-hard to (*ut*) persuade him. 2. It follows that pleasure is not the highest good. 3. I entreat you to (*ut*) learn to bear patiently bad fortune. 4. We ought to strive-hard that we may be serviceable to (*our*) native-country. 5. The Helvetii determined to depart from their own territories, in order that they might obtain-possession-of all Gaul. 6. Does it not follow that these things are unjust? 7. So it came to pass (*fio*) that out of (*them*) all, no one returned to the city. 8. The Helvetii have been so trained (*instituo*) by their ancestors that they are accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them. 9. I will strive earnestly that you may be able to think me a friend. 10. The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to Rome to (*ut*) beg-for peace.

**N.B.** In future the pupil will be left to himself to discover when the English infinitive denotes a purpose, and must therefore be translated with *ut*.

**B.**—1. Constituit Caesar pontem in flumine Rheno facere, quo copias suas transduceret. 2. Milites cohortatus est quo mortem fortius obirent. 3. Quid obstat quominus moenia statim oppugne-

mus? 4. Nullo modo introire possum quin me videant. 5. Nullo modo exire potuit quin eum viderent. 6. Minimum abest quin sim miserrimus. 7. Dies fere nullus est quin Satrius domum meam ventitet. 8. Facere non possum quin tibi dolores meos enarrem. 9. Quis dubitat quin omnes oporteat patriae suae adesse? 10. Recusare non possum quin me comiteris.

1. He resolved to carry a wall round the camp that (*quo*)\* the army might be more secure (*tutus*). 2. He fortified the camp that he might the more easily keep off the enemy. 3. There is no day that I do not hear many wonderful things. 4. Who can doubt that Hannibal was a very great (*summus*) general? 5. There was nobody who did not (*quin*) rejoice greatly. 6. I cannot but hope that we shall be conquerors. 7. Nobody is so brave but (*quin*) he sometimes feels fear. 8. We are preparing arms, not that (*ut*) we may attack others, but that (*quo*) we may better defend our country. 9. There was nothing wanting that I should be very wretched. 10. Our soldiers could not go forth from the camp but (*quin*) they were overwhelmed with missiles.

\* *Quo* is used in preference to *ut* when there is a comparative in the clause which it introduces.

C.—1. Per Trebonium stetit quominus oppido potirentur. 2. Me infirmitas valetudinis tenuit quominus ad ludos venirem. 3. Hiems prohibuit quominus a te literas haberemus. 4. Bibulum deterruerunt quominus domo exiret. 5. Deterrent me latrones quominus in illam partem urbis eam. 6. Quid tibi obstabat quominus nobiscum adesses? 7. Quis audebit miseros prohibere quominus fleant? 8. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. 9. Unum vereor ne senatus Pompeium nolit dimittere. 10. Quis est quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus?

1. It was owing to you (*per te stetit*) that we did not obtain possession of the town. 2. No weakness of health shall prevent me from coming to you. 3. Nothing ought to deter a citizen from siding with his country in time of danger. 4. They attempted to deter Cato from appearing (*adsum*) in the forum. 5. Nothing shall prevent me from siding with you. 6. Nobody can prohibit us from worshipping God. 7. Nothing ought to deter children from obeying their parents. 8. I fear that we may be cast out of the city. 9. I fear that we may not be able to defend ourselves and our country. 10. I cannot but think that Caesar was the greatest of the Romans.

## XLI.—USE OF THE SUPINES.

RULE 28.—The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion: as, *Lācēdaēmōnīī Āgēsīlāum bellātum in Āsiam mīsērunt, the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in *ū* is used after many adjectives: as, *fācīlis, easy, difficīlis, difficult, dulcīs, sweet, &c., and with fās est, it is lawful, nēfās est, it is unlawful, ōpūs est, it is necessary: as, rēs difficīlis factū est, the thing is difficult to be done.*

## EXERCISE LVIII.

1. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum. 2. Veientes, pacem petitem, oratores Romam mittunt. 3. Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium. 4. Milites pabulum et aquatum longius progressi erant. 5. Divitiacus Romam ad senatum venit, auxilium postulat. 6. Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. 7. Pira dulcia sunt gustatu. 8. Difficile dictu est. 9. Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies. 10. Nefas est dictu, miseram fuisse Fabii Maximi senectutem.

1. We will set out for Rome, to look-at the games. 2. Croesus sent ambassadors to Delphi to inquire concerning the fortune of the war. 3. Chaerephon went to Delphi to ask who was (*subj.*) the wisest of men. 4. The general dismissed the soldiers to forage and get-water. 5. These things are very difficult to be done. 6. Very many things are easier to be said than done. 7. Old wines are not always sweet to taste (*supine in u*). 8. The Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to inquire concerning Hannibal and the Saguntines. 9. It would be impious to say that the life of a good man can be miserable. 10. We have come to consult you (as to) what may be best to be done.

## XLII.—USE OF THE GERUND.

RULE 29.—The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing*; as *writing, walking.*

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in

the Nominative case, the Present of the Infinitive mood taking the place of the Nominative : as,

*Nom.* Lēgēre pulchrā carminā suāve est, *reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.*

*Acc.* Nātis ad āgendum, *born for acting.*

*Gen.* Ars pūērōs ēdūcandī difficilis est, *the art of educating boys is difficult.*

*Dat.* Scribendō opēram dāt, *he devotes his care to writing.*

*Abl.* Littērās tractandō mens acūtūr, *the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.*

*Obs.* The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, disco nātāre, *I learn swimming.*

### EXERCISE LIX.

1. Saepissime pernicioſa est plura habendi cupiditas. 2. Vehementer ardebat juvenis studio omnia cognoscendi et experiendi. 3. Quidam canes venandi gratia comparantur. 4. Beate vivendi studiosi sumus omnes. 5. Aqua marina haud utilis est bibendo. 6. Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt. 7. Hominis mens discendo et cogitando alitur. 8. Caesari dare jucundissimum erat. 9. Inter bibendum de variis rebus colloquebamur. 10. Quid potest esse jucundius quam inter ambulandum libere de variis rebus colloqui?

1. Very many persons burn with the desire of having more (*pl.*). 2. Epaminondas was eager-after hearing (*gen.*). 3. All are not zealous of living well. 4. He got together very many horses and (que) dogs for the sake of hunting. 5. Do not attempt to obtain friends by flattering. 6. Do not attempt to preserve your life by lying. 7. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 8. The soul is nourished by thinking (*cogito*), feeling, acting. 9. Conversing (*infin.*) about (de) these things is most delightful. 10. It is becoming in a youth (*acc.*) to burn with a zeal for knowledge (*gen. of gerund*).

### XLIII.—USE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

**RULE 30.**—The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective : as, scribendus, a, um, *to be written, necessary or fit to be written.*

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Case of its Noun : as, scribenda est mihi epistola, *a letter must be or ought to be written by me, or I must or ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is *to be done* is put in the Dative (see preceding example).

## EXERCISE LX.

1. Diligenter sunt emendandi puerorum mores. 2. Sapientia non solum paranda est nobis, sed etiam fruenda. 3. Præ omnibus rebus adhibenda est prudentia. 4. Agenda est omnibus ætas non sine periculis. 5. Ciceroni in arduis temporibus gerenda erat respublica. 6. Strenue nobis excolenda sunt corpus, mens, animus. 7. Habendus est delectus, comparandæ sunt naves. 8. Non sunt ea nobis contemnenda; sunt diligentissime providenda. 9. Præ omnibus aliis observandi et colendi sunt pueris parentes. 10. Utrum amandi an timendi reges sunt?

1. Virtue must be cultivated. 2. Who doubts that the gods are to be feared? 3. A parent (*dat.*) ought so (*ita*) to train-up (*his*) son that he may obey the laws of virtue. 4. Those persons are to be admired who have dared to die for (*pro*) their-country. 5. (*We*) must preserve the state; (*we*) must crush the conspiracy. 6. Virtue must not only be cultivated, but also loved. 7. These things must not be passed over by us (*dat.*). 8. Before (*præ*) all other things (*res*) the war must be carried on vigorously. 9. We (*dat.*) ought to read the orators and poets. 10. A man (*dat.*) should not despise death.

RULE 31.—But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other Case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Nominative Case Singular Neuter. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject in the Dative Case: as, obtemperandum est nobis (*dative*) virtutis praeceptis (*dative*), *we must obey the lessons of virtue*: cuique (*dative*) utendum est iudicio suo (*ablative*), *each one must use his own judgment*.

N.B. The Dative of the Agent is not always expressed.

## EXERCISE LXI.

1. Omnibus moriendum est. 2. Ita bellandum est ut pax peti videatur. 3. Mihi utendum est iudicio meo. 4. Nobis quoque ingrediendum est istuc quo pervenisti. 5. Ita nobis vivendum est ut ad mortem parati simus. 6. Non longius progrediendum est, commilitones, ne commeatibus nostris intercludamur. 7. Non dubium est quin bono civi legibus sit obtemperandum. 8. Proficiscendum mihi erat illo ipso die. 9. Magnopere est curandum ne nobis consilium defuisse videatur. 10. Cognoscendum est quid de illo homine factum sit.

1. Must (*we*) not (*nonne*) all die? 2. We must die bravely, fellow-soldiers! 3. Boys ought to strive-hard to please their

parents. 4. We must strive with (our) utmost zeal that the commonwealth may be preserved. 5. We must not believe all men in everything. 6. We must set out immediately. 7. It is greatly to be desired that the war may be brought-to-an-end. 8. We must take great care (see No. 9 above) *that* we are *not* (ne) shut off from all help. 9. What must we do, citizens? Which-of-the-two (*dat.*) should we trust? 10. We ought so to learn as (ut) not immediately to forget.

## EXERCISE LXII.

N.B. The Gerundive is employed more frequently than the Gerund. The Gerund is chiefly used where an ambiguity would be occasioned by the use of the Gerundive: as, *stūdium plūrā cognoscendi*, *the desire of learning more*, rather than *stūdium plūrium cognoscendorum*, which would leave it doubtful whether *things* or *men* were meant.

1. Bellum suscepit Catilina reipublicae delendae causa. 2. Timotheus erat civitatis regendae peritus. 3. Consilium iniit Catilina urbis incendendae. 4. Conservandae libertatis gratiā initio creabantur consules. 5. Tiberius quasi ad firmandam valetudinem in Campaniam concessit. 6. Occupatus sum in litteris scribendis. 7. Studiosi solent esse juvenes equorum canumque alendorum. 8. Consilium inierunt Brutus et Cassius libertatis recuperandae. 9. Hostes in spem venerant potiendorum castrorum. 10. Oculus probe affectus est ad suum munus fungendum.

1. The Roman youth (*pl.*) were trained-up for (*ad*) managing the commonwealth. 2. Cicero formed a plan for crushing the conspiracy (*gen.*). 3. Nature has endowed (*instruo*) the mind with senses prepared for perceiving objects (*res*). 4. He burned with the desire of destroying his country. 5. Those wicked men formed a design of slaying the consul. 6. Virtue is especially (*maxime*) discerned in despising pleasure. 7. The first book is written (*perf.*) on-the-subject-of (*de*) despising death. 8. The utmost pleasure is derived (*capio*) from (*ex*) reading books. 9. A husbandman ought (*oportet*) to devote himself to cultivating his lands. 10. Cicero devoted himself with the utmost zeal to preserving the commonwealth.

## A SHORT SYNTAX.

## A RECAPITULATION OF THE RULES ALREADY GIVEN.

## First Concord.

§ 1. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in Number and Person : as, *puellā currīt, the girl runs; puellae currunt, the girls run.*

## Second Concord.

§ 2. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in Gender, Number, and Case: as, *servūs timīdūs, a timid slave; puellā timīdā, a timid girl; parvum oppīdum, a small town.*

## Third Concord.

§ 3. The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case: as, *Fēlix est rex quem omnēs civēs laudant, Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

## Apposition.

§ 4. When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are put in the same case by *Apposition* : as, *Rōmūlūs, rex Rōmānōrum, Romulus, king of the Romans.*

## Nominative Case.

§ 5. The Nominative case denotes the Subject.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by *sum, fīo, vīdēor, vōcōr*, and similar Verbs, they are put in the same case: as, *Britannīā est insulā, Britain is an island.*

## Accusative Case.

§ 6. The Accusative case denotes the Object.—Transitive Verbs govern the Accusative: as, *āquilā ālās hābēt, the eagle has wings.*

§ 7. The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in the Accusative: as, *sex ēt viginti annōs regnāvīt, he reigned twenty-six years; aggērem lātum pēdēs trēcentōs, altum pēdēs quinquāgintā exstruxērunt, they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.*—The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the Accusative of *duration of time.*

**Genitive Case.**

§ 8. The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive when one is dependent upon the other : as, *Britanniā est insulā Eurōpae*, *Britain is an island of Europe.*

§ 9. Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity*, are commonly followed by the Genitive : as, *misērōrum hōm-inum misērēbimūr*, *we will pity the wretched men.*

**Dative Case.**

§ 10. The Dative indicates the person who gains or receives anything : as, *māgistēr cōlumbam pūērō dāt*, *the master gives a dove to the boy.*

**Ablative Case.**

§ 11. The Ablative indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done : as, *dōmīnūs hastā servum occidīt*, *the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place : as, *noctēs hiēmē longae sunt*, *the nights are long in winter.*

§ 12. But when the Ablative indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *in, in* : as, *hostēs in plānitīē ērant*, *the enemies were in the plain.*

§ 13. *Ūtōr, frūōr, vescōr, fungōr*, govern the Ablative : as, *sāpiētēr ūtīmīni tempōrē*, *use time wisely.*

§ 14. When a subordinate clause has a different subject from the subject of the principal clause, the English Verb in the subordinate clause is in Latin often expressed by a Substantive and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE : as, *sōlē ortō, Rōmāni hostēs vidērunt*, *when the sun had risen* [lit. *the sun having risen*], *the Romans saw the enemy.* (See also p. 89.)

**Construction of the Names of Towns.**

§ 15. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without prepositions : as, *Consul Rōmam prōfectūs est*, *the Consul set out for Rome.*

§ 16. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without prepositions : as, *Consul Rōmā Athēnās prōfectūs est*, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

§ 17. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition; as, *Rōmae Consūlēs, Athēnis Archontes, Carthāginē Suffētēs, sīvē jūdīcēs, quōtannis crēābantūr, At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually; Diōnysius Cōrinthi puērōs dōcēbāt, Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*

### Comparative Degree.

§ 18. The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin *quam*: as, *aestātē diēs longiorēs sunt quam noctēs, in summer the days are longer than the nights.*

§ 19. The Ablative is also used after the Comparative instead of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative: as, *viliūs argentum est aurō, silver is more common than gold.*

### Indicative Mood.

§ 20. The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing without any condition or doubt: as, *aedifico dōmum, I am building a house; hābitābo in eā, I shall dwell in it.*

### Subjunctive Mood.

§ 21. The Subjunctive Mood speaks of a thing with some condition or doubt: as, *[aedifico dōmum] ūt in eā hābitem, [I am building a house] in order that I may dwell in it.* Here there is no doubt about the act of *building*; but whether the person building will *dwell* in the house or not is uncertain and depends upon circumstances.

§ 22. The Conjunctions *ūt, that, in order that,* and *nē, that not,* are construed with the Subjunctive: as, *ēo ūt spectem lūdōs, I am going in order that I may look at the games; haec facio nē mē inimicum tibi putēs, these things I do that you may not think me your enemy.*

§ 23. The Conjunction *quīn* is used with the Subjunctive after *negative propositions and propositions expressing doubt*: as, *diēs nullūs est, quīn littērās scribam, there is no day that I do not write a letter; nōn dūbito quīn vērūm dixēris, I do not doubt that you have spoken the truth.*

§ 24. The Conjunction *quo* is used for *ūt* *ēō* with the

Subjunctive, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that*: *haec lex dātā est, quō mālēfici dēterrērentūr, this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred.*

§ 25. The Conjunction *quōmīnūs*, *that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting, &c.*, and must be frequently translated in English by *from* and a verbal substantive: *as, aetās nōs non impēdit quōmīnūs littērās tractēmūs, age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

§ 26. The Subjunctive is used in an Indirect Question; that is, a question quoted as having been asked, or one dependent upon some word expressing doubt, uncertainty, or wonder, in the former part of the sentence: *as, Rōgābo quīd factum sīt, I will ask what has been done; Mirum est quae fūērīt causā, It is strange what the reason may have been; Vidēbo num rēdiērīt, I will see whether he has returned.*

NOTE.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on pp. 95, 96.

### Infinitive Mood.

§ 27. The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive: *as, Caesār hostēs sup̄erārē pōtest, Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

§ 28. The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used:

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing*: *as, histōriā narrāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē, history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus: sentimūs cālērē ignem, nīvem essē albam, dulcē (essē) mēl, we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.*

II. After such expressions as *nōtum est, it is known; justum est, it is just; vērīsīmīlē est, it is probable; constāt, it is agreed, it is certain, &c.*: *as, constāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē, it is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus.*

### The Supines.

§ 29. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion: *as, Lacedaemoniī Agēsīlāum bellātum in Āsiam misērunt, the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in *ū* is used after many adjectives: *as, faciīs,*

*easy, difficilis, difficult, dulcis, sweet, &c.*, and with *fās est, it is lawful, nefās est, it is unlawful, ōpūs est, it is necessary* : as, *rēs difficilis factū est, the thing is difficult to be done.*

### The Gerund.

§ 30. The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing* ; as *writing, walking.*

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in the Nominative case, the Present of the Infinitive mood taking the place of the Nominative : as,

|             |                                            |                                                         |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Lēgere pulchrā carminā suāve est,</i>   | <i>reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Nātūs ad agendum,</i>                   | <i>born for acting.</i>                                 |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Ars puerōs edūcandī difficilis est,</i> | <i>the art of educating boys is difficult.</i>          |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Scribendō ōpēram dāt,</i>               | <i>he devotes his care to writing.</i>                  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Littērās tractandō mens acūlītūr,</i>   | <i>the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.</i>  |

*Obs.* The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions ; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used : as, *disco natāre, I learn swimming.*

### The Gerundive.

§ 31. The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective : as, *scribendus, a, um, to be written, necessary or fit to be written.*

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Case of its Noun : as, *scribenda est mihi epistolā, a letter must be or ought to be written by me, or I must or ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is to be done is put in the Dative (see preceding example).

§ 32. But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Nominative Case Singular Neuter. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject in the Dative Case : as, *obtempērandum est nobis (dative) virtūtis praeceptis (dative), we must obey the lessons of virtue* : *cuique (dative) utendum est iudiciō suō (ablative), each one must use his own judgment.*

N.B. The Dative of the Agent is not always expressed.

## APPENDIX.

## A. GREEK NOUNS.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

|             | Fem.                               | Masc.                    | Masc.                      |
|-------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Ēpītōm-ē, <i>abridg-<br/>ment.</i> | Aenē-ās (proper<br>name) | Anchis-ēs (proper<br>name) |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Ēpītōm-ē                           | Aenē-ā                   | Anchis-ē (ā, ā)            |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Ēpītōm-ēn                          | Aenē-ān (am)             | Anchis-ēn (am)             |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Ēpītōm-ēs                          | Aenē-ae                  | Anchis-ae                  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Ēpītōm-ae                          | Aenē-ae                  | Anchis-ae                  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Ēpītōm-ē.                          | Aenē-ā.                  | Anchis-ē (ā).              |

## SECOND DECLENSION.

|                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Orphēus        | Orphēus             |
| <i>Voc.</i> Orphēū         | Orphēū              |
| <i>Acc.</i> Orphēum        | Orphēa              |
| <i>Gen.</i> Orphēi, Orphēi | Orphēōs             |
| <i>Dat.</i> Orphēō         | Orphēi, Orphēi.     |
| <i>Abl.</i> Orphēō.        |                     |
| <i>Nom.</i> Dēlōs          | Andrōgēōs           |
| <i>Voc.</i> Dēlē           | Andrōgēōs           |
| <i>Acc.</i> Dēlōn, Dēlum   | Andrōgēōn, Andrōgēō |
| <i>Gen.</i> Dēli           | Andrōgēi, Andrōgēō  |
| <i>Dat.</i> Dēlō           | Andrōgēō            |
| <i>Abl.</i> Dēlō.          | Andrōgēō.           |

*Obs.* Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnā* : so, *Nom.* Athōs, *Acc.* Athōnā. •

## THIRD DECLENSION.

|                                         | Sing.                | Sing.              |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Pēriclēś                    | Pallas               | Pallas             |
| <i>Voc.</i> Pēriclēś, Pēriclēś, Pēriclē | Pallas               | Pallādem, Pallādā  |
| <i>Acc.</i> Pēriclem, Pēriclēā          | Pallādē              | Pallādīs, Pallādōs |
| <i>Gen.</i> Pēriclēś, Pēriclēi          | Pallādē              | Pallādi            |
| <i>Dat.</i> Pēriclēi                    |                      | Pallādē.           |
| <i>Abl.</i> Pēriclē.                    |                      |                    |
| <i>Nom.</i> Pārīs                       | Sapphō               |                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> Pārī                        | Sapphō               |                    |
| <i>Acc.</i> Pārīdem, Pārīdā, Pārīn      | Sapphō, Sapphōnem    |                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> Pārīdīs, Pārīdōs            | Sapphūs, Sapphōnīs   |                    |
| <i>Dat.</i> Pārīdi                      | Sapphō, Sapphōni     |                    |
| <i>Abl.</i> Pārīdē.                     | Sapphōnē.            |                    |
|                                         |                      | Plur.              |
| <i>Nom.</i> chlāmŷs, <i>a cloak.</i>    | chlāmŷdēs or -ēs     |                    |
| <i>Acc.</i> chlāmŷdem, chlāmŷdā         | chlāmŷdēs, chlāmŷdās |                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> chlāmŷdis, chlāmŷdōs        | chlāmŷdum            |                    |
| <i>Dat.</i> chlāmŷdi                    | chlāmŷdībūs          |                    |
| <i>Abl.</i> chlāmŷdē.                   | chlāmŷdībūs.         |                    |

## B. THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

## GENERAL RULES.

1. Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers, are *Masculine*.

2. Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees, are *Feminine*.

3. Indeclinable Nouns, as, *fās*, *permitted by heaven*, *něfās*, *not permitted by heaven*, *nīhīl*, *nothing*, are *Neuter*.

4. Nouns denoting both the male and the female, as, *conjux*, *husband or wife*, are *Common*.

## SPECIAL RULES RELATING TO THE DECLENSIONS.

I. FIRST DECLENSION.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, *nauta*, *a sailor*.

II. SECOND DECLENSION.—Nouns in *us* and *er* are Masculine; those in *um* are Neuter.

A few Nouns in *us* are Feminine: names of trees, as *mālus*, *an apple-tree*; also, *alvus*, *the belly*; *cōlus*, *a distaff*; *hūmus*, *the ground*; *vannus*, *a winnowing fan*; *arctus*, *the constellation Bear*; *carbāsus*, *fine flax*.

Three Nouns in *us* are Neuter: as, *vīrus*, *poison*; *vulgus*, *the multitude*; *pēlāgus*, *the (open) sea*.

III. THIRD DECLENSION.—Nouns of the Third Declension are Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter. Their gender must be learned by practice. But the following terminations indicate genders:—

1. *Masculine*.—(a) Nouns in *or* derived from verbs: as, *ām-or*, *love*, from *āmo*, *I love*.

(b) Nouns in *tor* derived from verbs: as, *āmā-tor*, *a lover*, from *āmo*, *I love*; *vic-tor*, *a conqueror*, from *vinco*, *I conquer*.

2. *Feminine*. — (a) Nouns in *io* and *tio* derived from verbs: *as*, *audī-tio*, *hearing*, from *audio*, *I hear*.
- (b) Nouns in *tās* derived from Nouns: *as*, *vir-tus*, *manliness*, from *vir*, *a man*.
- (c) Nouns in *tās* derived from Nouns and Adjectives: *as*, *cīvī-tas*, *citizenship*, from *cīvis*, *a citizen*; *crūdēlī-tas*, *cruelty*, from *crūdēlis*, *cruel*.
- (d) Nouns in *tūdo* derived from Adjectives: *as*, *longī-tūdo*, *length*, from *longus*, *long*.
- (e) Nouns in *trix* derived from Nouns in *tor*: *as*, *vic-trix*, *a female conqueror*, from *vic-tor*.
3. *Neuter*. — (a) Nouns in *e*: *as*, *mārē*, *the sea*.
- (b) Nouns in *mēn* derived from Verbs: *as*, *flū-men*, *a river*, from *flu-ere*, *to flow*.
- (c) Nouns in *ūs* and *ūr*: *as*, *opus*, *a work*; *fulgur*, *lightning*.

IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.—Nouns in *ūs* are Masculine: those in *u* are Neuter.

A few Nouns in *us* are Feminine: namely, *tribus*, *a tribe* (a division of the Roman people); *ācus*, *a needle*; *porticus*, *a portico*; *dōmus*, *a house*; *nūrus*, *a daughter-in-law*; *ānus*, *an old woman*; *socrus*, *a mother-in-law*; *īdūs* (*pl.*), *the Ides* (a division of the Roman month); *mānus*, *a hand*.

V. FIFTH DECLENSION.—All are Feminine except *dīēs* (*day*), which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural; and *mēridīēs*, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

---

## C. PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

## I. THE FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.

The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in *āvī*, *ātum*: *as*, *āmo*, *āmāvi*, *āmātum*, *āmāre*, *to love*. The following are exceptions:—

|                    |         |                          |          |                    |
|--------------------|---------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------|
| Crēpo,             | crēpui, | crēpītum,                | crēpāre, | <i>to creak.</i>   |
| Cūbo,              | cūbui,  | cūbītum,                 | cūbāre,  | <i>to lie.</i>     |
| Dōmo,              | dōmui,  | dōmītum,                 | dōmāre,  | <i>to tame.</i>    |
| Sōno, <sup>1</sup> | sōnui,  | sōnītum,                 | sōnāre,  | <i>to sound.</i>   |
| Vēto,              | vētui,  | vētītum,                 | vētāre,  | <i>to forbid.</i>  |
| Tōno,              | tōnui,  | —                        | tōnāre,  | <i>to thunder.</i> |
| Mīco,              | mīcui,  | —                        | mīcāre,  | <i>to glitter.</i> |
| Plico,             | plīcui, | {plīcītum,<br>plīcātum,} | plīcāre, | <i>to fold.</i>    |
| Frīco,             | frīcui, | frictum,                 | frīcāre, | <i>to rub.</i>     |
| Sēco, <sup>2</sup> | sēcui,  | sectum,                  | sēcāre,  | <i>to cut.</i>     |
| Jūvo, <sup>3</sup> | jūvi,   | jūtum,                   | jūvāre,  | <i>to assist.</i>  |
| Lāvo,              | lāvī,   | {lāvātum,<br>lautum,}    | lāvāre,  | <i>to wash.</i>    |
| Do,                | dēdi,   | dātum,                   | dāre,    | <i>to give.</i>    |
| Sto,               | stēti,  | statum,                  | stāre,   | <i>to stand.</i>   |

NOTE.—*Future Participles*, as a general rule, are formed from the Supines; but

|         |            |            |
|---------|------------|------------|
| 1. Sōno | <i>has</i> | sōnātūrus. |
| 2. Sēco | "          | sēcātūrus. |
| 3. Jūvo | "          | jūvātūrus. |

## II. THE SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.

The Perfects and Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in *uī* and *ītum*: *as*, *mōneo*, *mōnui*, *mōnītum*, *mōnēre*, *to advise*. The following are exceptions:—

1. Perfect—*ui*. Supine—*tum*.

|         |                      |                      |          |                         |
|---------|----------------------|----------------------|----------|-------------------------|
| Dōceo,  | dōcui,               | doctum,              | dōcēre,  | <i>to teach.</i>        |
| Tēneo,  | tēnui,               | tentum,              | tēnēre,  | <i>to hold.</i>         |
| Misceo, | miscui,              | {mixtum,<br>mistum,} | miscēre, | <i>to mix.</i>          |
| Torreo, | torrui,              | tostum,              | torrēre, | <i>to roast.</i>        |
| Sorbeo, | {sorbui,<br>sorpui,} | —                    | sorbēre, | <i>to suck up.</i>      |
| Censeo, | censui,              | censum,              | censēre, | <i>to assess, think</i> |

2. Perfect—*ēvi*. Supine—*ētum*.

|                            |           |            |           |                              |
|----------------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|------------------------------|
| Dēleo,                     | dēlēvi,   | dēlētum,   | dēlēre,   | <i>to blot out, destroy.</i> |
| Fleo,                      | flēvi,    | flētum,    | flēre,    | <i>to weep.</i>              |
| Neo,                       | nēvi,     | nētum,     | nēre,     | <i>to spin.</i>              |
| {Pleo only in composition. |           |            |           |                              |
| Compleo,                   | complēvi, | complētum, | complēre, | <i>to fill up.</i>           |
| Abōleo,                    | abōlēvi,  | abōlītum,  | abōlēre,  | <i>to abolish.</i>           |

3. *Perfect—i (di). Supine—sum.*

|          |         |          |           |                      |
|----------|---------|----------|-----------|----------------------|
| Prandeo, | prandi, | pransum, | prandēre, | <i>to breakfast.</i> |
| Sēdeo,   | sēdi,   | sessum,  | sēdēre,   | <i>to sit.</i>       |
| Vīdeo,   | vidi,   | visum,   | vidēre,   | <i>to see.</i>       |
| Strideo, | stridi, | —        | stridēre, | <i>to creak.</i>     |

*With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.*

|          |           |          |           |                    |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|--------------------|
| Mordeo,  | mōmordi,  | morsum,  | mordēre,  | <i>to bite.</i>    |
| Pendeo,  | pēpendi,  | pensum,  | pendēre,  | <i>to hang.</i>    |
| Spondeo, | spōpondi, | sponsum, | spondēre, | <i>to promise.</i> |
| Tondeo,  | tōtondi,  | tonsum,  | tondēre,  | <i>to shear.</i>   |

4. *Perfect—i (vi). Supine—tum.*

|        |       |          |         |                          |
|--------|-------|----------|---------|--------------------------|
| Cāveo, | cāvi, | cautum,  | cāvēre, | <i>to guard oneself.</i> |
| Fāveo, | fāvi, | faustum, | fāvēre, | <i>to favour.</i>        |
| Fōveo, | fōvi, | fōtum,   | fōvēre, | <i>to cherish.</i>       |
| Mōveo, | mōvi, | mōtum,   | mōvēre, | <i>to move.</i>          |
| Vōveo, | vōvi, | vōtum,   | vōvēre, | <i>to vow.</i>           |

*Without Supine.*

|           |            |   |            |                 |
|-----------|------------|---|------------|-----------------|
| Pāveo,    | pāvi,      | — | pāvēre,    | <i>to fear.</i> |
| Ferveo,   | { fervi,   | — | fervēre,   | <i>to boil.</i> |
|           | { ferbui,  |   |            |                 |
| Connīveo, | { connīvi, | — | connīvēre, | <i>to wink.</i> |
|           | { connixi, |   |            |                 |

5. *Perfect—si. Supine—tum and sum.*

|           |          |           |            |                      |
|-----------|----------|-----------|------------|----------------------|
| Augeo,    | auxi,    | auctum,   | augēre,    | <i>to increase.</i>  |
| Indulgeo, | indulsi, | indultum, | indulgēre, | <i>to indulge.</i>   |
| Torqueo,  | torsi,   | tortum,   | torquēre,  | <i>to twist.</i>     |
| Ardeo,    | arsi,    | arsum,    | ardēre,    | <i>to blaze.</i>     |
| Haereo,   | haesi,   | haesum,   | haerēre,   | <i>to stick.</i>     |
| Jūbeo,    | jussi,   | jussum,   | jūbēre,    | <i>to order.</i>     |
| Māneo,    | mansi,   | mansum,   | mānēre,    | <i>to remain.</i>    |
| Mulceo,   | mulsi,   | mulsum,   | mulcēre,   | <i>to stroke.</i>    |
| Mulgeo,   | mulsi,   | mulotum,  | mulgēre,   | <i>to milk.</i>      |
| Rīdeo,    | risi,    | risum,    | ridēre,    | <i>to laugh.</i>     |
| Suādeo,   | suāsi,   | suāsum,   | suādēre,   | <i>to advise.</i>    |
| Tergeo,   | tersi,   | tersum,   | tergēre,   | <i>to wipe.</i>      |
| Algeo,    | alsi,    | —         | algēre,    | } <i>to be cold.</i> |
| Frigeo,   | frixi,   | —         | frigēre,   |                      |
| Fulgeo,   | fulsi,   | —         | fulgēre,   | <i>to shine.</i>     |
| Lūceo,    | luxi,    | —         | lūcēre,    | <i>to be light.</i>  |
| Lūgeo,    | luxi,    | —         | lūgēre,    | <i>to grieve.</i>    |
| Turgeo,   | (tursi), | —         | turgēre,   | <i>to swell.</i>     |
| Urgeo,    | ursi,    | —         | urgēre,    | <i>to press.</i>     |

6. *The Neuter-Passives.*

|         |              |   |          |                          |
|---------|--------------|---|----------|--------------------------|
| Audeo,  | ausus sum,   | — | audēre,  | <i>to dare.</i>          |
| Gaudeo, | gāvisus sum, | — | gaudēre, | <i>to rejoice.</i>       |
| Sōleo,  | sōlītus sum, | — | sōlēre,  | <i>to be accustomed.</i> |

## III. THE THIRD (CONSONANT OR U) CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials B, P.*(a). *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—*B* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

|         |          |           |           |             |
|---------|----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| Carpō,  | carpsi,  | carptum,  | carpēre,  | to pluck.   |
| Glūbō,  | glupsi,  | gluptum,  | glūbēre,  | to peel.    |
| Nūbō,   | nupsi,   | nuptum,   | nūbēre,   | to marry.   |
| Rēpō,   | repsi,   | reptum,   | rēpēre,   | to creep.   |
| Scalpō, | scalpsi, | scalptum, | scalpēre, | to scratch. |
| Scribō, | scripsi, | scriptum, | scribēre, | to write.   |
| Serpō,  | serpsi,  | serptum,  | serpēre,  | to crawl.   |

(b). *Perfect—si. Supine—tum or itum.*

|            |          |            |            |                  |
|------------|----------|------------|------------|------------------|
| { Cumbo,   |          |            |            |                  |
| { Incumbo, | incūbui, | incūbītum, | incumbēre, | to lie upon.     |
| Strēpō,    | strēpui, | strēpītum, | strēpēre,  | to make a noise. |

(c). *Perfect—i. Supine—tum or wanting.*

|        |        |         |          |             |
|--------|--------|---------|----------|-------------|
| Rumpō, | rūpi,  | ruptum, | rumpēre, | to burst.   |
| Bībō,  | bībi,  | —       | bībēre,  | to drink.   |
| Lambō, | lambi, | —       | lambēre, | to lick.    |
| Scābō, | scābi, | —       | scābēre, | to scratch. |

2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Gutturals C, G, H, Q, X.*(a). *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—*Cs* and *gs* become *x*. *G* becomes *c* before *t*.

|                      |          |              |            |                          |
|----------------------|----------|--------------|------------|--------------------------|
| Dico,                | dixi,    | dictum,      | dīcēre,    | to say.                  |
| Dūco,                | duxi,    | ductum,      | dūcēre,    | to lead.                 |
| Cōquo,               | coxi,    | coctum,      | cōquēre,   | to cook.                 |
| Cingo,               | cinxī,   | cinctum,     | cingēre,   | to surround.             |
| { (Fligo, not used,  |          | —            | —          | to strike.)              |
| { Affligo,           | afflixī, | afflictum,   | affligēre, | to strike to the ground. |
| Frigo,               | frixī,   | { frictum, } | frīgēre,   | to parch, to fry.        |
|                      |          | { frixum, }  |            |                          |
| Jungo,               | junxi,   | junctum,     | jungēre,   | to join.                 |
| Lingo,               | linxi,   | linctum,     | lingēre,   | to lick.                 |
| { (Mungo, not used.) |          |              |            |                          |
| { Emungo,            | ēmunxi,  | ēmunctum,    | ēmungēre,  | to blow the nose.        |
| Plango,              | planxi,  | planetum,    | plangēre,  | to beat.                 |

|                       |           |             |              |                     |
|-----------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|---------------------|
| Rēgo,                 | rexī,     | rectum,     | rēgēre,      | to direct, rule.    |
| Sūgo,                 | suxī,     | suctum,     | sūgēre,      | to suck.            |
| Tēgo,                 | texī,     | tectum,     | tēgēre,      | to cover.           |
| {Tingo,               | {tinxi,   | {tinctum,   | {tingēre,    | {to dip.            |
| {Tinguo,              | {         | {           | {tinguēre,   | {                   |
| {Ungo,                | {unxi,    | {unctum,    | {ungēre,     | {to anoint.         |
| {Unguo,               | {         | {           | {unguēre,    | {                   |
| ((Stinguo, not used.) |           |             |              |                     |
| Exstinguo,            | exstinxi, | exstinctum, | exstinguēre, | to extinguish.      |
| Trāho,                | traxī,    | tractum,    | trāhēre,     | to drag.            |
| Vēho,                 | vexī,     | vectum,     | vēhēre,      | to carry, to draw.  |
| Ango,                 | anxi,     | —           | angēre,      | to vex.             |
| Ningit,               | ninxit,   | —           | ningēre,     | to snow.            |
| Fingo,                | finxi,    | fictum,     | figēre,      | to form, to invent. |
| Pingo,                | pinxi,    | pictum,     | pingēre,     | to paint.           |
| Stringo,              | strinxi,  | strictum,   | stringēre,   | to grasp.           |

## (b). Perfect—si. Supine—sum and xum.

|         |         |          |           |             |
|---------|---------|----------|-----------|-------------|
| Mergo,  | mersi,  | mersum,  | mergēre,  | to sink.    |
| Spargo, | sparsi, | sparsum, | spargēre, | to scatter. |
| Tergo,  | tersi,  | tersum,  | tergēre,  | to wipe.    |
| Figo,   | fixi,   | fixum,   | figēre,   | to fix.     |
| Flecto, | flexi,  | flexum,  | flectēre, | to bend.    |
| Necto,  | nexi,   | nexum,   | nectēre,  | to bind.    |
| Pecto,  | pexi,   | pexum,   | pectēre,  | to comb.    |
| Plecto, | plexi,  | plexum,  | plectēre, | to plait.   |

## (c). Perfect—i (with Reduplication). Supine—sum and tum.

|        |          |          |          |            |
|--------|----------|----------|----------|------------|
| Pango, | pēpigi,  | paetum,  | pangēre, | to fix.    |
| Parco, | pēperci, | parsum,  | parcēre, | to spare.  |
| Pungo, | pūpigi,  | punctum, | pungēre, | to prick.  |
| Tango, | tētigi,  | tactum,  | tangēre, | to touch.  |
| Disco, | dīdici,  | —        | discēre, | to learn.  |
| Posco, | pōposci, | —        | poscēre, | to demand. |

## (d). Perfect—i (with vowel of Stem lengthened).

|         |        |           |           |             |
|---------|--------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| Ago,    | ēgi,   | actum,    | āgēre,    | to do.      |
| Frango, | frēgi, | fractum,  | frangēre, | to break.   |
| Ico,    | ici,   | ictum,    | icēre,    | to strike.  |
| Lēgo,   | lēgi,  | lectum,   | lēgēre,   | to read.    |
| Linquo, | līqui, | (lictum), | linquēre, | to leave.   |
| Vinco,  | vici,  | victum,   | vincēre,  | to conquer. |

## (e). Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.

|       |        |         |         |           |
|-------|--------|---------|---------|-----------|
| Texo, | texui, | textum, | texēre, | to weave. |
|-------|--------|---------|---------|-----------|

## (f). Guttural Stem disguised.

|        |         |           |          |             |
|--------|---------|-----------|----------|-------------|
| Fluo,  | fluxi,  | fluctum,  | fluēre,  | to flow.    |
| Struo, | struxi, | structum, | struēre, | to pile up. |
| Vivo,  | vixi,   | victum,   | vivēre,  | to live.    |

## 3. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals D, T.

## (a). Perfect—si. Supine—tum.

NOTE.—D and t are generally dropped before s, but are sometimes changed into s.

|          |                        |          |           |                       |
|----------|------------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------------|
| Claudo,  | clausi,                | clausum, | claudēre, | to shut.              |
| Divido,  | divisi,                | divisum, | dividēre, | to divide.            |
| Laedo,   | laesi,                 | laesum,  | laedēre,  | to strike, to injure. |
| Lūdo,    | lūsi,                  | lūsum,   | lūdēre,   | to play.              |
| Plaudo,  | plausi,                | plausum, | plaudēre, | to clap the hands.    |
| Rādo,    | rāsi,                  | rāsum,   | rādēre,   | to scrape.            |
| Rōdo,    | rōsi,                  | rōsum,   | rōdēre,   | to gnaw.              |
| Trūdo,   | trūsi,                 | trūsum,  | trūdēre,  | to thrust.            |
| {Vādo,   | {compounds, -si, -sum] |          | vādēre,   | to go.                |
| {Invādo, | invāsi,                | invāsum, | invādēre, | to go against.        |
| Cēdo,    | cessi,                 | cessum,  | cēdēre,   | to yield.             |
| Mitto,   | mīsi,                  | missum,  | mittēre,  | to send.              |

## (b). Perfect with Reduplication.

|                |          |           |           |                                     |
|----------------|----------|-----------|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| Cādo,          | cēcīdi,  | cāsum,    | cādēre,   | to fall.                            |
| Caedo,         | cēcīdi,  | caesum,   | caedēre,  | to strike, to cut.                  |
| Pendo,         | pēpendi, | pensum,   | pendēre,  | to hang, to weigh.                  |
| Tendo,         | tētendi, | {tensum,  | {tendēre, | to stretch.                         |
|                |          | {tentum,  |           |                                     |
| Tundo,         | tūtūdi,  | {tunsum,  | {tundēre, | to beat.                            |
|                |          | {tūsum,   |           |                                     |
| Do in compos., |          |           |           | to put.                             |
| Abdo,          | abdīdi,  | abdītum,  | abdēre,   | to put away, to hide.               |
| Addo,          | addīdi,  | addītum,  | addēre,   | to put to, to add.                  |
| Condo,         | condīdi, | condītum, | condēre,  | to put together, to build, conceal. |
| Dēdo,          | dēdīdi,  | dēdītum,  | dēdēre,   | to put down, to surrender.          |
| Ēdo,           | ēdīdi,   | ēdītum,   | ēdēre,    | to put forth, to publish.           |
| Indo,          | indīdi,  | indītum,  | indēre,   | to put on.                          |
| Perdo,         | perdīdi, | perdītum, | perdēre,  | to ruin, to lose.                   |
| Prōdo,         | prōdīdi, | prōdītum, | prōdēre,  | to betray.                          |
| Reddo,         | reddīdi, | reddītum, | reddēre,  | to put back, to restore.            |
| Subdo,         | subdīdi, | subdītum, | subdēre,  | to put under, to substitute.        |
| Trādo,         | trādīdi, | trādītum, | trādēre,  | to put across, to deliver.          |
| Crēdo,         | crēdīdi, | crēdītum, | crēdēre,  | to believe.                         |
| Vendo,         | vendīdi, | vendītum, | vendēre,  | to sell.                            |
| Sisto,         | stīti,   | stātum,   | sistēre,  | to cause to stand.                  |

## (c). Perfect—i. Supine—sum.

|          |          |           |            |                 |
|----------|----------|-----------|------------|-----------------|
| Accendo, | accendi, | accensum, | accendēre, | to set on fire. |
| Cūdo,    | cūdi,    | cūsum,    | cūdēre,    | to hammer.      |

|                   |               |                          |             |                                       |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Ēdo,              | ēdi,          | ēsum,                    | ēdēre,      | <i>to eat.</i>                        |
| (Fendo, not used, |               |                          |             | <i>to strike.)</i>                    |
| Dēfendo,          | dēfendi,      | dēfensum,                | dēfendēre,  | <i>to ward off, to defend.</i>        |
| Offendo,          | offendi,      | offensum,                | offendēre,  | <i>to strike against, to assault.</i> |
| Fundo,            | fudi,         | fūsum,                   | fundēre,    | <i>to pour.</i>                       |
| Incendo,          | incendi,      | incensum,                | incendēre,  | <i>to burn.</i>                       |
| Mando,            | mandi (rare), | mansum,                  | mandēre,    | <i>to chew.</i>                       |
| Pando,            | pandi,        | { pansum or<br>passum, } | pandēre,    | <i>to spread.</i>                     |
| Prēhendo,         | prēhendi,     | prēhensum,               | prēhendēre, | <i>to grasp.</i>                      |
| Scando,           | scandi,       | scansum,                 | scandēre,   | <i>to climb.</i>                      |
| (Strido,          | stridi,       | —                        | stridēre,   | <i>to creak.</i>                      |
| Strideo,          |               |                          |             |                                       |
| Verto,            | verti,        | versum,                  | vertēre,    | <i>to turn.</i>                       |
| Findo,            | fidi,         | fissum,                  | findēre,    | <i>to cleave.</i>                     |
| Scindo,           | scidi,        | scissum,                 | scindēre,   | <i>to tear.</i>                       |
| (Frendo,          | —             | fressum,                 | frendēre,   | <i>to gnash the teeth.</i>            |
| Freudeo,          | —             | frēsum,                  |             |                                       |

## (d). Other Forms.

|         |                            |          |           |                     |
|---------|----------------------------|----------|-----------|---------------------|
| Mēto,   | messui,                    | messum,  | mētēre,   | <i>to move.</i>     |
| Pēto,   | { pētivi or<br>pētī,       | pētītum, | pētēre,   | <i>to seek.</i>     |
| Sido,   | { sēdi (rarely<br>sidi), } | —        | sīdēre,   | <i>to sit down.</i> |
| Sterto, | stertui,                   | —        | stertēre, | <i>to snore.</i>    |
| Fido,   | fisus sum,                 | —        | fidēre,   | <i>to trust.</i>    |

## 4. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquids L, M, N.

## (a). Perfect—ui. Supine—ītum or tum.

|          |           |                         |             |                    |
|----------|-----------|-------------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| Ālo,     | ālui,     | { ālītum or<br>altum, } | ālēre,      | <i>to nourish.</i> |
| Cōlo,    | cōlui,    | cultum,                 | cōlēre,     | <i>to till.</i>    |
| Consūlo, | consūlui, | consultum,              | constilēre, | <i>to consult.</i> |
| Mōlo,    | mōlui,    | mōlītum,                | mōlēre,     | <i>to grind.</i>   |
| Ocūlo,   | ocūlui,   | occultum,               | ocūlēre,    | <i>to conceal.</i> |
| Vōlo,    | vōlui,    | —                       | velle,      | <i>to wish.</i>    |
| Frēmo,   | frēmui,   | frēmītum,               | frēmēre,    | <i>to roar.</i>    |
| Gēmo,    | gēmui,    | gēmītum,                | gēmēre,     | <i>to groan.</i>   |
| Trēmo,   | trēmui,   | —                       | trēmēre,    | <i>to tremble.</i> |
| Vōmo,    | vōmui,    | vōmītum,                | vōmēre,     | <i>to vomit.</i>   |
| Gigno,   | gēnui,    | gēnītum,                | gignēre,    | <i>to produce.</i> |

## (b). Perfect with Reduplication.

|        |          |         |          |                    |
|--------|----------|---------|----------|--------------------|
| Fallo, | fēfelli, | falsum, | fallēre, | <i>to deceive.</i> |
| Pello, | pēpūli,  | pulsum, | pellēre, | <i>to drive.</i>   |
| Cāno,  | cēcini,  | cantum, | cānēre,  | <i>to sing.</i>    |

(c). *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

|        |          |           |           |                |
|--------|----------|-----------|-----------|----------------|
| Cōmo,  | comp̄si, | comptum,  | cōm̄ere,  | to adorn.      |
| Dēmo,  | demp̄si, | demptum,  | dēm̄ere,  | to take away.  |
| Prōmo, | prom̄si, | promptum, | prōm̄ere, | to take forth. |
| Sūmo,  | sump̄si, | sumptum,  | sūm̄ere,  | to take up.    |
| Temno, | temp̄si, | temptum,  | temn̄ere, | to despise.    |

(d). *Other Forms.*

|           |              |            |              |                                   |
|-----------|--------------|------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| Percello, | perot̄li,    | perculsum, | percell̄ere, | to strike down.                   |
| Psallo,   | psalli,      | —          | psall̄ere,   | to play on a stringed instrument. |
| Vello,    | velli,       | vulsum,    | vell̄ere,    | to pluck.                         |
| Tollo,    | sustūli,     | sublātum,  | toll̄ere,    | to raise up.                      |
| Ēmo,      | ēm̄i,        | emptum,    | ēm̄ere,      | to take or buy.                   |
| Prēmo,    | pressi,      | pressum,   | prēm̄ere,    | to press.                         |
| Līno,     | lēvi or livi | lītum,     | līn̄ere,     | to smear.                         |
| Sīno,     | sivi,        | sītum,     | sīn̄ere,     | to permit.                        |

5. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquid R.*

|         |             |             |             |                           |
|---------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| Cerno,  | crēvi,      | crētum,     | cern̄ere,   | to sift, to divide.       |
| Sperno, | spr̄vi,     | spr̄tum,    | sp̄rn̄ere,  | to despise.               |
| Sterno, | str̄vi,     | str̄tum,    | st̄rn̄ere,  | to strew.                 |
| Gēro,   | gessi,      | gestum,     | gēr̄ere,    | to carry.                 |
| Ūro,    | uss̄i,      | ustum,      | ūr̄ere,     | to burn.                  |
| Curro,  | cūc̄ur̄i,   | cursum,     | cūrr̄ere,   | to run.                   |
| Fēro,   | tūli,       | lātum,      | fer̄ere,    | to bear, carry.           |
| Quaero, | qūaesīvi, | qūaesitum, | qūaer̄ere, | to seek.                  |
| Sēro,   | s̄erui,     | s̄ertum,    | s̄ēr̄ere,   | to put in rows, to plant. |
| Sēro,   | s̄ēvi,      | s̄ātum,     | s̄ēr̄ere,   | to sow.                   |
| Tēro,   | tr̄ivi,     | tritum,     | tēr̄ere,    | to rub.                   |
| Verro,  | verri,      | versum,     | verr̄ere,   | to sweep.                 |

6. *Verbs the Stems of which end in S, X.*

|          |             |             |             |                    |
|----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------------|
| Depso,   | depsui,     | depstum,    | deps̄ere,   | to knead.          |
| Piŕso,   | pinsui,     | pinsitum,   | pins̄ere,   | to pound.          |
| Piso,    | pinsi,      | pinsum,     | pīs̄ere,    | to pound.          |
| Viso,    | visi,       | —           | vis̄ere,    | to visit.          |
| Pōno,    | pōsui,      | pōsitum,    | pōn̄ere,    | to place.          |
| Arcesso, | arcessīvi, | arcessitum, | arcess̄ere, | to send for.       |
| Cāpesso, | cāpessīvi, | cāpessitum, | cāpess̄ere, | to take in hand.   |
| Fācesso, | fācessi,    | fācessitum, | fācess̄ere, | to make, to cause. |
| Lācesso, | lācessīvi, | lācessitum, | lācess̄ere, | to provoke.        |

7. *Verbs the Stems of which end in U, V.**Perfect—i. Supine—tum.*

|        |        |          |           |             |
|--------|--------|----------|-----------|-------------|
| Ācuo,  | ācui,  | ācūtum,  | ācūere,  | to sharpen. |
| Arguo, | argui, | argūtum, | argūere, | to prove.   |

|                    |                         |                 |            |                |
|--------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|------------|----------------|
| Imbuo,             | imbui,                  | imbūtum,        | imbuere,   | to soak.       |
| Induo,             | indui,                  | indūtum,        | induere,   | to put on.     |
| Exuo,              | exui,                   | exūtum,         | exuere,    | to put off.    |
| Mīnuo,             | mīnuī,                  | mīnūtum,        | mīnuere,   | to lessen.     |
| Rūo,*              | ruī,                    | <u>rūtum</u> ,  | ruere,     | to rush.       |
| Spuo,              | spui,                   | <u>spūtum</u> , | spuere,    | to spit.       |
| Stātuo,            | stātui,                 | stātūtum,       | stātuere,  | to set up.     |
| Suo,               | sui,                    | sūtum,          | suere,     | to sew.        |
| Tribuo,            | tribui,                 | tribūtum,       | tribuere,  | to distribute. |
| Lāvo,              | lāvi,                   | lautum,         | lāvere,    | to wash.       |
| (See also 1 Conj.) |                         | lōtum,          |            |                |
| Solvo,             | solvi,                  | sōlūtum,        | solvere,   | to loosen.     |
| Volvo,             | volvi,                  | vōlūtum,        | volvère,   | to roll.       |
| Congruo,           | congrui,                | —               | congruere, | to agree.      |
| Luo,†              | lui,                    | —               | luere,     | to atone.      |
| (Nuo,              |                         |                 |            | to nod.)       |
| Abnuo,             | abnuī,                  | —               | abnuere,   | to refuse.     |
| Annuo,             | annui,                  | —               | annuere,   | to assent.     |
| Mētno,             | mētui,                  | —               | mētuere,   | to fear.       |
| Pluit,             | { pluit or<br>plūvit, } | —               | pluere,    | to rain.       |
| Sternuo,           | sternui,                | —               | sternuere, | to sneeze.     |

\* rūo, *Fut. Participle* rūtūrus.

† lūo, *Fut. Participle* lūtūrus.

### 8. Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in *sco*.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*; that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Nouns, and Adjectives. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines: as, *incālesco*, *incālui*, *incālescere*, *to grow warm*, from *cāleo*, *cālui*, *cālere*, *to be warm*. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines:—

|            |          |           |             |                     |
|------------|----------|-----------|-------------|---------------------|
| Ābōlesco,* | ābōlēvi, | ābōlītum, | ābōlescere, | to grow out of use. |
| Ādōlesco,* | ādōlēvi, | ādultum,  | ādolescere, | to grow up.         |
| Exōlesco,* | exōlēvi, | exōlītum, | exōlescere, | to grow old.        |
| Cōalesco,  | cōālui,  | cōālītum, | cōālescere, | to grow together.   |

(ālo)

Concupisco, concupīvi, concupītum, concupiscere, to desire.  
(cupio)

Convalesco, convālui, convālītum, convālescere, to grow strong.  
(vāleo)

Exardesco, exarsi, exarsum, exardescere, to take fire.  
(ardeo)

Invetērasco, invētērāvi, invētērātum, invētērascere, to grow old.  
(invētēro)

Rēvivisco, rēvixi, rēvictum, rēviviscere, to come to life again.  
(vivo)

Scisco, scīvi, scītum, sciscere, to seek to know, to enact.  
(scio)

\* Ābōlesco, ādōlesco, exōlesco are formed from an obsolete verb *ōleo*, *to grow*.

Inceptives formed from Nouns and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines : as,

|                                   |   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| Consenesco, consēnui,<br>(sēnex)  | — | consēnescēre, to grow old.   |
| Ingravesco, —<br>(gravis)         | — | ingravescēre, to grow heavy. |
| Juvenesco, —<br>(jūvénis)         | — | jūvānescēre, to grow young.  |
| Maturesco, mātūriui,<br>(mātūrus) | — | mātūrescēre, to grow ripe.   |
| Obmutesco, obmūtui,<br>(mūtus)    | — | obmūtescēre, to grow dumb.   |

The following Verbs in *scō* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as underived Verbs :—

|                  |          |            |                     |
|------------------|----------|------------|---------------------|
| Cresco, crēvi,   | crētum,  | crescēre,  | to grow.            |
| Glisco, —        | —        | gliscēre,  | to swell.           |
| Hisco, —         | —        | hiscēre,   | to gape.            |
| Nosco,* nōvi,    | nōtum,   | noscēre,   | to learn, to know.  |
| Pasco, pāvi,     | pastum,  | pascēre,   | to feed.            |
| Quiesco, quīēvi, | quiētum, | quiescēre, | to become quiet.    |
| Suesco, suēvi,   | suētum,  | suescēre,  | to grow accustomed. |

\* The Present signifies *I learn* ; the Perfect, *I know* ;  
the Pluperfect, *I knew*.

### THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES.

|                       |          |          |                           |
|-----------------------|----------|----------|---------------------------|
| Cāpio, cāpi,          | captum,  | cāpēre,  | to take.                  |
| Fācio, fēcī,          | factum,  | fācēre,  | to make.                  |
| Jācio, jēcī,          | jactum,  | jācēre,  | to throw.                 |
| Fūgio, fūgi,          | fūgitum, | fūgēre,  | to flee.                  |
| Fōdio, fōdi,          | fossum,  | fōdēre,  | to dig.                   |
| Rāpio, rāpui,         | raptum,  | rāpēre,  | to seize.                 |
| Pārio,* pēpēri,       | partum,  | pārēre,  | to bring forth.           |
| Quātio, (no perfect), | quassum, | quātēre, | to shake.                 |
| Cūpio, cūpīvi,        | cūpītum, | cūpēre,  | to desire.                |
| Sāpio, sāpīvi,        | —        | sāpēre,  | to taste.                 |
| Lācio, —              | —        | lācēre,  | to draw } rare, except in |
| Spēcio, —             | —        | spēcēre, | to look } composition.    |

\* pārio, *Future Participle* pāritūrus.

### IV. THE FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.

In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in *ivi*, the Supine in *itum* : as, *audio, audīvi, auditum, audire, to hear*. The following are exceptions :—

|                |                         |          |          |
|----------------|-------------------------|----------|----------|
| Farcio, farsī, | {fartum,<br>(farcitum)} | farcīre, | to cram. |
| Fulcio, fulsi, | fultum,                 | fulcīre, | to prop. |

|          |                          |                             |            |                    |
|----------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|--------------------|
| Haurio,  | hausi,                   | haustum,                    | haurire,   | to draw (water).   |
| Sancio,  | sanxi,                   | { sancitum or<br>sanctum, } | sancire,   | to ratify.         |
| Sarcio,  | sarsi,                   | sartum,                     | sarcire,   | to patch.          |
| Sentio,  | sensi,                   | sensum,                     | sentire,   | to feel, to think. |
| Saepio,  | saepsi,                  | saeptum,                    | saepire,   | to fence in.       |
| Vincio,  | vinxi,                   | vinctum,                    | vincire,   | to bind.           |
| Eo,      | ivi,                     | itum,                       | ire,       | to go.             |
| Salio,   | { salui or<br>salii, }   | saltum,                     | salire,    | to leap.           |
| Sépelio, | sépélivi,                | sépultum,                   | sépélire,  | to bury.           |
| Vénio,   | vēni,                    | ventum,                     | vénire,    | to come.           |
| Amicio,  | { amifoui or<br>amixi, } | amictum,                    | amicioire, | to clothe.         |
| Apéro,   | ápérui,                  | ápertum,                    | ápérire,   | to open.           |
| Opéro,   | ópérui,                  | ópertum,                    | ópérire,   | to cover.          |

## V. DEONENTS.

1. In the First Conjugation the Perfects and Supines are all regular.

## 2. Second Conjugation :

|            |                                       |             |                      |
|------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| Fáteor,    | fassus sum,                           | fâtéri,     | to confess.          |
| Líceor,    | lióitus sum,                          | lióéri,     | to bid at a sale.    |
| Médeor,    | —                                     | médéri,     | to heal.             |
| Méreor,    | mérítus sum,                          | méréri,     | to earn, to deserve. |
| Miséreor,  | { misérítus sum or<br>misertus sum, } | { miséréri, | to take pity on.     |
| Pollíceor, | polliόitus sum,                       | polliόéri,  | to promise.          |
| Reor,      | rátus sum,                            | réri,       | to think.            |
| Tueor,     | túitus sum,                           | tuéri,      | to protect.          |
| Véreor,    | vérítus sum,                          | véréri,     | to fear.             |

## 3. Third Conjugation :

|          |                                    |        |              |
|----------|------------------------------------|--------|--------------|
| Fruor,*  | { fruítus sum or<br>fructus sum, } | frui,  | to enjoy.    |
| Fungor,  | functus sum,                       | fungi, | to perform.  |
| Grádior, | gressus sum,                       | grádi, | to step.     |
| Lábor,   | lapeus sum,                        | lābi,  | to slip.     |
| Liquor,  | —                                  | liqui, | to melt.     |
| Lóquor,  | lócútus sum,                       | lóqui, | to speak.    |
| Mórior,† | mortuus sum,                       | móri,  | to die.      |
| Nitor,   | { nixus sum or<br>nisus sum, }     | níti,  | to strain.   |
| Páttior, | passus sum,                        | páti,  | to suffer.   |
| Quéror,  | questus sum,                       | quéri, | to complain. |

\* fruor, Future Participle fruítúrus.  
† mórior, " " móritúrus.

|               |                 |              |                                         |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Ringor,       | —               | ringi,       | <i>to show the teeth,<br/>to snarl.</i> |
| Sēquor,       | sēcūsus sum,    | sēqui,       | <i>to follow.</i>                       |
| Ūtor,         | ūsus sum,       | ūti,         | <i>to use.</i>                          |
| {(Verto)      |                 |              |                                         |
| {Rēvertor,    | (rēversus sum), | rēverti,     | <i>to return.</i>                       |
| {(Plecto)     |                 |              |                                         |
| {Amplector,   | amplexus sum,   | amplecti,    | <i>to embrace.</i>                      |
| {Complector,  | complexus sum,  | complecti,   | <i>to embrace.</i>                      |
| {Āpiscor,     | aptus sum,      | āpisci,      | <i>to obtain.</i>                       |
| {Ādipiscor,   | ādeptus sum,    | ādipisci,    | <i>to obtain.</i>                       |
| Commīniscor,  | commentus sum,  | commīnisci,  | <i>to devise.</i>                       |
| Rēmīniscor,   | —               | rēmīnisci,   | <i>to remember.</i>                     |
| Dēfētiscor,   | dēfessus sum,   | dēfētisci,   | <i>to grow weary.</i>                   |
| Expērgiscor,  | expērectus sum, | expērgisci,  | <i>to wake up.</i>                      |
| {Irascor,     | —               | īrasci,      | <i>to be angry.</i>                     |
| {Nānciscor,   | nactus sum,     | nāncisci,    | <i>to obtain by chance.</i>             |
| Nāscor,       | nātus sum,      | nāsci,       | <i>to be born.</i>                      |
| Obliviscor,   | oblītus sum,    | oblīvīsci,   | <i>to forget.</i>                       |
| Pāciscor,     | pactus sum,     | pācisci,     | <i>to make an agreement.</i>            |
| Prōficiāscor, | prōfectus sum,  | prōficiāsci, | <i>to set out.</i>                      |
| Ulciscor,     | ultus sum,      | ulcisci,     | <i>to avenge.</i>                       |
| Vescor,       | —               | vesci,       | <i>to eat.</i>                          |

## 4. Fourth Conjugation :

|            |                                   |            |                                 |
|------------|-----------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Assentior, | assensus sum,                     | assentiri, | <i>to agree to.</i>             |
| Blandior,  | blanditus sum,                    | blandiri,  | <i>to flatter.</i>              |
| Expērior,  | expertus sum,                     | expēriri,  | <i>to try.</i>                  |
| Largior,   | largitus sum,                     | largiri,   | <i>to give bountifully.</i>     |
| Mentior,   | mentitus sum,                     | mentiri,   | <i>to lie.</i>                  |
| Mētior,    | mensus sum,                       | mētiri,    | <i>to measure.</i>              |
| Molior,    | molitus sum,                      | moliri,    | <i>to labour.</i>               |
| Oppērior,  | {oppertus sum,<br>{oppēritus sum, | {oppēriri, | <i>to wait for.</i>             |
| Ordior,    | orsus sum,                        | ordiri,    | <i>to begin.</i>                |
| Orior,*    | ortus sum,                        | ōriri,     | <i>to rise.</i>                 |
| Partior,   | partitus sum,                     | partiri,   | <i>to divide.</i>               |
| Pōtior,†   | pōtītus sum,                      | pōtiri,    | <i>to obtain possession of.</i> |
| Sortior,   | sortitus sum,                     | sortiri,   | <i>to take by lot.</i>          |

\* *Orior, Future Participle* ōritūrus. In some tenses the forms are borrowed from the 3rd Conjugation: *Pres. Indic.* ōrēris or ōrīris, ōritur, ōrimur. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both ōrērer and ōrīrer are found.

† In the *Imperf. Subj.* both pōtīrer and pōtērer are found.

## D. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

- I. Coepi, *I began.*  
 II. Mēmīni, *I remember.*  
 III. Ōdi, *I hate.*

## INDICATIVE.

|                   |          |           |         |
|-------------------|----------|-----------|---------|
| <i>Perfect.</i>   | Coepī    | Mēmīni    | Ōdi.    |
| <i>Fut.-Perf.</i> | Coepēro  | Mēmīnēro  | Ōdēro.  |
| <i>Pluperf.</i>   | Coepēram | Mēmīnēram | Ōdēram. |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                 |           |            |          |
|-----------------|-----------|------------|----------|
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Coepērim  | Mēmīnērim  | Ōdērim.  |
| <i>Pluperf.</i> | Coepissem | Mēmīnissem | Ōdissem. |

## IMPERATIVE.

|                |            |                     |            |
|----------------|------------|---------------------|------------|
| <i>Future.</i> | (wanting.) | Memento<br>Mēmētōtē | (wanting.) |
|----------------|------------|---------------------|------------|

## INFINITIVE.

|                 |          |           |         |
|-----------------|----------|-----------|---------|
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Coepissē | Mēmīnissē | Ōdissē. |
|-----------------|----------|-----------|---------|

## PARTICIPLE.

|                |          |            |        |
|----------------|----------|------------|--------|
| <i>Future.</i> | Coeptūrs | (wanting.) | Ōsūrs. |
|----------------|----------|------------|--------|

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE.

|                 |                 |                   |              |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Coeptūs sum.    | <i>Fut.-Perf.</i> | Coeptūs ēro. |
|                 | <i>Pluperf.</i> | Coeptūs ēram.     |              |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                 |              |                 |                |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Coeptūs sim. | <i>Pluperf.</i> | Coeptūs essem. |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|

## INFINITIVE.

|                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Coeptūs essē. |
|-----------------|---------------|

N.B.—The Passive forms are used when the Infinitive which follows is in the Passive voice: as, Sāguntum coeptum est oppugnāri, *Saguntum was begun to be besieged.*

IV. Āio, *I say* :—

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE.    | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE.      |
|-------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------------|
|             | <i>Present.</i> |             | <i>Imperfect.</i> |
| S. Āio      | —               | S. Āiēbam   | —                 |
| Āis         | Āiās            | Āiēbās      | —                 |
| Āit         | Āiāt            | Āiēbāt      | —                 |
| P. —        | —               | P. Āiēbāmūs | —                 |
| —           | —               | Āiēbātīs    | —                 |
| Āiunt       | Āiant           | Āiēbant.    | —                 |

PRESENT PARTICIPLE,—Āiens,

V. *Inquam, say I*:—

| INDICATIVE. |            | Future.     | Perfect. |
|-------------|------------|-------------|----------|
| Present.    | Imperfect. |             |          |
| Inquam      | Inquēbam   | Inquēs      | Inquisti |
| Inquis      | Inquēbas   | Inquēt      | Inquīt   |
| Inquit      | Inquēbāt   | IMPERATIVE. |          |
| Inquimās    | Inquēbāmās |             |          |
| Inquistis   | Inquēbātis | Present.    | Future.  |
| Inquunt     | Inquēbant  | Inquē       | Inquito. |

*Obs.* *Inquam*, like the English *say I*, *says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

VI. *Fārī, to speak*, a Deponent:—

| INDICATIVE.               | SUBJUNCTIVE.              | IMPERATIVE.                                                       | INFINITIVE. |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
|                           | Present.                  | Present. & <i>Fārē</i>                                            | <i>Fārī</i> |
| <i>Fārur</i>              | —                         | PARTICIPLES.                                                      |             |
|                           | Future.                   |                                                                   |             |
| <i>Fābūr, fābitūr</i>     | —                         | Present. <i>Fāntis, &amp;c.</i> (without a Nom.)                  |             |
|                           | Perfect.                  | Perfect. <i>Fātus (ā, um)</i>                                     |             |
| <i>Fātus sum, &amp;c.</i> | <i>Fātus sim, &amp;c.</i> | Gerundive. <i>Fandūs (ā, um)</i>                                  |             |
|                           | Pluperfect.               | SUPINE— <i>Fātū</i> .<br>GERUND— <i>Fandī</i> ,<br><i>Fandū</i> . |             |
| <i>Fātūs eram</i>         | <i>Fātūs essem</i>        |                                                                   |             |

## VII. THE FOLLOWING IMPERATIVES.

1. *Āvē* (or *hāvē*), *āvētē, hail.* INFIN. *āvērē*.
2. *Salvē, salvētē, hail.* INFIN. *salvērē*.
3. *Cēdō, cēditē* (or *cettē*), *give me.*
4. *Āpāgē, āpāgītē, begone.*

## VOCABULARIES.

- m. = masculine.  
 f. = feminine.  
 n. = neuter.  
 c. = common gender, that is, masculine and feminine.

## Vocabulary 1.

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| āla, f.     | a wing.          |
| āquila, f.  | an eagle.        |
| cōlōnia, f. | a colony.        |
| cōlumba, f. | a dove.          |
| cōrōna, f.  | a crown.         |
| fēmīna, f.  | a woman.         |
| filia, f.   | a daughter.      |
| insula, f.  | an island.       |
| mensa, f.   | a table.         |
| ōra, f.     | a coast.         |
| pēcūnia, f. | money.           |
| porta, f.   | a gate.          |
| pūella, f.  | a girl.          |
| rēgina, f.  | a queen.         |
| Rōma, f.    | Rome (the city). |
| rōsa, f.    | a rose.          |

## Vocabulary 2.

|                |                         |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| agrīcōla, m.   | a husbandman.           |
| amicitiā, f.   | friendship.             |
| Britanniā, f.  | Britain.                |
| causa, f.      | a cause.                |
| Eurōpa, f.     | Europe.                 |
| Galliā, f.     | Gaul (now France).      |
| glōria, f.     | glory.                  |
| Græciā, f.     | Greece.                 |
| incolā, c.     | an inhabitant.          |
| inimicitia, f. | enmity.                 |
| Italiā, f.     | Italy.                  |
| nauta, m.      | a sailor.               |
| patria, f.     | a native land, country. |
| pōeta, m.      | a poet.                 |
| pugna, f.      | a battle.               |
| Siciliā, f.    | Sicily.                 |
| vita, f.       | life.                   |

## Vocabulary 3.

|              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| amicus, m.   | a friend.       |
| avus, m.     | a grandfather.  |
| dōminus, m.  | a lord, master. |
| equus, m.    | a horse.        |
| fillus, m.   | a son.          |
| fluvius, m.  | a river.        |
| gladius, m.  | a sword.        |
| hortus, m.   | a garden.       |
| inimicus, m. | an enemy.       |
| Rhēnus, m.   | the Rhine.      |
| Rhōdānus, m. | the Rhone.      |
| ripa, f.     | a bank.         |
| servus, m.   | a slave.        |
| taurus, m.   | a bull.         |

## Vocabulary 4.

|              |                    |
|--------------|--------------------|
| ager, m.     | a field, land.     |
| gēner, m.    | a son-in-law.      |
| liber, m.    | a book.            |
| māgister, m. | a master, teacher. |
| mīnister, m. | a servant.         |
| pūer, m.     | a boy.             |
| sōcer, m.    | a father-in-law.   |

*Note.* Mīnister, liber, āger are declined like māgister. Sōcer, gēner are declined like pūer.

## Vocabulary 5.

|                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| argentum, n.   | silver.    |
| aurum, n.      | gold.      |
| bellum, n.     | war.       |
| coelum, n.     | heaven.    |
| diligentiā, f. | diligence. |
| dōnum, n.      | a gift.    |
| gaudium, n.    | joy.       |
| mētallum, n.   | a metal.   |
| oppidum, n.    | a town.    |

|                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| praemium, n.   | a reward.         |
| regnum, n.     | a kingdom.        |
| scutum, n.     | a shield.         |
| templum, n.    | a temple.         |
| deus, m.       | a god.            |
| discipulus, m. | a pupil, scholar. |
| morbus, m.     | a disease.        |
| murus, m.      | a wall.           |
| Romānus, m.    | a Roman.          |
| terra, f.      | the earth, land.  |

\* Vocative Singular same as Nominative.  
 Note: see p. 22.

### Vocabulary 6.

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| acutus, a, um,      | sharp.              |
| albus, a, um,       | white.              |
| altus, a, um,       | high, deep.         |
| bellicosus, a, um,  | warlike.            |
| bonus, a, um,       | good.               |
| gratus, a, um,      | pleasing.           |
| latus, a, um,       | wide, broad.        |
| longus, a, um,      | long.               |
| magnus, a, um,      | great.              |
| malus, a, um,       | bad, wicked.        |
| molestus, a, um,    | troublesome.        |
| multus, a, um,      | much, many.         |
| noxius, a, um,      | hurtful, injurious. |
| parvus, a, um,      | small, little.      |
| rapidus, a, um,     | rapid.              |
| splendidus, a, um,  | splendid, bright.   |
| timidus, a, um,     | timid.              |
| aeger, gra, grum,   | sick.               |
| aiseer, era, erum,  | scratched.          |
| niger, gra, grum,   | black.              |
| pulcher, era, erum, | beautiful.          |
| sacer, era, erum,   | sacred.             |
| tener, era, erum,   | tender.             |
| exemplum, n.        | an example.         |
| hasta, f.           | a spear.            |
| numerus, m.         | a number.           |
| periculum, n.       | danger.             |

Note. Gratus, molestus, noxius are followed by the Dative case.

### Vocabulary 7.

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| hiems, hiemis, f.  | winter.            |
| trahis, trahis, f. | a beam.            |
| urbs, urbis, f.    | a city.            |
| arx, arcis, f.     | a citadel.         |
| dux, ducis, c.     | a leader, general. |

|                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| pax, pacis, f.     | peace.    |
| iudex, iudicis, m. | a judge.  |
| lex, legis, f.     | a law.    |
| rex, regis, m.     | a king.   |
| linguis, a, um,    | kind.     |
| firmus, a, um,     | strong.   |
| iocundus, a, um,   | pleasant. |
| iustus, a, um,     | just.     |
| Romulus, m.        | Romulus.  |
| severus, a, um,    | severe.   |

### Vocabulary 8.

|                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| comes, comitis, c.   | a companion.          |
| custos, custodis, c. | a guardian.           |
| equus, equis, m.     | a horse-soldier.      |
| lapis, lapidis, m.   | a stone.              |
| miles, militis, m.   | a soldier.            |
| mors, mortis, f.     | death.                |
| obsecro, obsecra, c. | a hostage.            |
| pedes, pedis, m.     | a foot-soldier.       |
| sestas, tatis, f.    | a summer.             |
| civitas, tatis, f.   | a state, citizenship. |
| tempestas, tatis, f. | a tempest.            |
| voluntas, tatis, f.  | a wish, will.         |
| nox, noctis, f.      | night.                |
| auctumnus, i, m.     | autumn.               |
| natura, ae, f.       | nature.               |
| clarus, a, um,       | clear, renowned.      |

### Vocabulary 9.

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| frater, tris, m.    | a brother.          |
| mater, tris, f.     | a mother.           |
| pater, tris, m.     | a father.           |
| agger, tris, m.     | a mound.            |
| calor, oris, m.     | heat.               |
| clamor, oris, m.    | a shout.            |
| color, oris, m.     | colour.             |
| labor, oris, m.     | labour, hardship.   |
| odor, oris, m.      | a smell, scent.     |
| soror, oris, f.     | a sister.           |
| victor, oris, m.    | a conqueror.        |
| flos, oris, m.      | a flower.           |
| sol, solis, m.      | the sun.            |
| castra, orum, n.pl. | a camp.             |
| totus, a, um,       | whole.              |
| fossa, ae, f.       | a ditch.            |
| munimentum, i, n.   | a fortification.    |
| praeda, ae, f.      | looty.              |
| varius, a, um,      | different, various. |

## Vocabulary 10.

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| lĕo, ōnis, m.        | a lion.              |
| Jūno, ōnis, f.       | Juno.                |
| pāvo, ōnis, m.       | a peacock.           |
| sermo, ōnis, m.      | a discourse.         |
| consuetūdo, inis, f. | habit.               |
| hōmo, inis, c.       | { a man, a<br>woman. |
| multitūdo, inis, f.  | a multitude.         |
| virgo, inis, f.      | a maiden.            |
| ōrātor, ōris, m.     | an orator.           |
| *alter, ĕra, ĕrum,   | second.              |
| certus, a, um,       | certain.             |
| dĕa, æ, f.           | a goddess.           |
| doctus, a, um,       | learned.             |
| infinitus, a, um,    | unbounded, infinite. |
| Mīnerva, æ, f.       | Mīnerva.             |
| vālidus, a, um,      | strong.              |

\* The Genitive Singular of *alter* is *altĕrius*, Dat. *altĕri*: see p. 23.

## Vocabulary 11.

|                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| cīvis, is, c.      | a citizen.               |
| classis, is, f.    | a fleet.                 |
| hostis, is, c.     | an enemy (public enemy). |
| turris, is, f.     | a tower.                 |
| vallis, is, f.     | a valley.                |
| vestis, is, f.     | a garment.               |
| clādea, is, f.     | slaughter.               |
| nūbes, is, f.      | a cloud.                 |
| rūpes, is, f.      | a rock.                  |
| angustus, a, um,   | narrow.                  |
| āter, atra, atrum, | black.                   |
| dūrus, a, um,      | hard.                    |
| nix, nivis, f.     | snow.                    |
| nōtus, a, um,      | known.                   |
| pĕritus, a, um,    | skilful.                 |
| Rōmānus, a, um,    | Roman.                   |

## Vocabulary 12.

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| grāmen, inis, n. | grass.                 |
| nōmen, inis, n.  | a name.                |
| gĕnus, ĕris, n.  | a race, a class.       |
| ŏpus, ĕris, n.   | a work.                |
| sīdus, ĕris, n.  | a star, constellation. |
| scĕlus, ĕris, n. | a crime.               |
| dĕcus, ōris, n.  | an ornament.           |
| corpus, ōris, n. | a body.                |

|                    |                                     |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| frīgus, ōris, n.   | cold.                               |
| lītus, ōris, n.    | a shore.                            |
| tempus, ōris, n.   | time.                               |
| cāput, itis, n.    | a head.                             |
| crūs, crūris, n.   | a leg.                              |
| fulgur, ūris, n.   | lightning.                          |
| ŏs, ōris, n.       | a mouth.                            |
| rĕte, is, n.       | a net.                              |
| māre, is, n.       | the sea.                            |
| ānimāl, ālis, n.   | an animal.                          |
| calcār, āris, n.   | a spur.                             |
| vectigāl, ālis, n. | a tax.                              |
| annus, i, m.       | a year.                             |
| antiquus, a, um,   | ancient.                            |
| aurĕus, a, um,     | golden.                             |
| bālaena, æ, f.     | a whale.                            |
| Carthāgo, inis, f. | Carthage (a city of Africa).        |
| Cicĕro, ōnis, m.   | Cicero (a celebrated Roman orator). |

|                   |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| dŏmiciliūm, i, n. | abode.       |
| ēlēphantus, i, m. | an elephant. |
| īra, æ, f.        | anger.       |
| nŏvus, a, um,     | new.         |
| ŏculus, i, m.     | an eye.      |
| pisces, is, m.    | a fish.      |
| prŏfundus, a, um, | deep.        |

## Vocabulary 13.

|                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| ācer, cris, cre,   | keen, sharp.           |
| ŏcler, ĕris, ĕre,  | swift.                 |
| brĕvis, e,         | short.                 |
| dulcis, e,         | sweet.                 |
| difficilis, e,     | difficult.             |
| facilis, e,        | easy.                  |
| fidĕlis, e,        | faithful.              |
| lĕvis, e,          | light.                 |
| omnis, e,          | all, every.            |
| ūtīlis, e,         | useful.                |
| audax, ācis,       | bold.                  |
| rāpax, ācis,       | rapacious.             |
| fĕlix, icis,       | fortunate, successful. |
| vĕlox, ŏcis,       | swift.                 |
| ingĕnis, entis,    | immense.               |
| præsens, entis,    | present.               |
| præstans, antis,   | excellent.             |
| pŏtens, entis,     | powerful.              |
| prūdens, entis,    | prudent.               |
| arma, ōrum, n. pl. | arms.                  |
| carmĕn, inis, n.   | a song.                |

|                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| consilium, i, n. | plan, counsel. |
| fūror, ōris, m.  | madness.       |
| hūmānus, a, um,  | human.         |
| initium, i, n.   | a beginning.   |
| nāvis, is, f.    | a ship.        |
| Persa, ae, m.    | a Persian.     |
| sagitta, ae, f.  | an arrow.      |
| via, ae, f.      | a way, a road. |
| vetus, vētēris,  | old.           |
| vinum, i, n.     | wine.          |
| vulnus, ūris, n. | a wound.       |

## Vocabulary 14.

|                     |                                    |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| acus, ūs, f.        | a needle.                          |
| arcus, ūs, m.       | a bow.                             |
| auditus, ūs, m.     | hearing.                           |
| cursor, ūs, m.      | running.                           |
| equitatus, ūs, m.   | cavalry.                           |
| exercitus, ūs, m.   | an army.                           |
| ficus, ūs, f.       | a fig.                             |
| fructus, ūs, m.     | fruit.                             |
| māgistratus, ūs, m. | a magistrate.                      |
| manus, ūs, f.       | a hand.                            |
| peditatus, ūs, m.   | infantry.                          |
| portus, ūs, m.      | a harbour.                         |
| quercus, ūs, f.     | an oak.                            |
| sensus, ūs, m.      | a sense.                           |
| visus, ūs, m.       | seeing.                            |
| cornu, ūs, n.       | a horn.                            |
| genu, ūs, n.        | a knee.                            |
| auris, is, f.       | an ear.                            |
| cervus, i, m.       | a stag.                            |
| coelestis, e,       | belonging to the<br>heavens: hence |
| arcus coelestis,    | the rainbow.                       |
| instrumentum, i, n. | an instrument.                     |
| magnificus, a, um,  | magnificent.                       |
| tutus, a, um,       | safe.                              |
| Scythia, ae, m.     | a Scythian.                        |
| Scythae, ārum,      | the Scythians.                     |
| m. pl.              |                                    |
| sēdes, is, f.       | a seat.                            |
| volutas, tātis, f.  | pleasure.                          |

## Vocabulary 15.

|                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| acies, ēi, f.     | a line of battle. |
| dies, ēi, m. & f. | a day.            |
| facies, ēi, f.    | a countenance.    |
| fides, ēi, f.     | faith, fidelity.  |
| plānitēs, ēi, f.  | a plain.          |
| res, ēi, f.       | a thing.          |

|                   |             |
|-------------------|-------------|
| segnitēs, ēi, f.  | slowness.   |
| spes, ēi, f.      | hope.       |
| crēator, ōris, m. | a creator.  |
| dōmīna, ae, f.    | a mistress. |
| fortūna, ae, f.   | a fortune.  |
| rārus, a, um,     | rare.       |
| sērēnus, a, um,   | clear.      |
| victōria, ae, f.  | a victory.  |

## Vocabulary 16.

|                     |                              |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| arbor, ōris, f.     | a tree.                      |
| bestia, ae, f.      | a beast.                     |
| cānis, is, c.       | a dog.                       |
| conscientia, ae, f. | conscience.                  |
| dēbilis, e,         | feeble.                      |
| divitiae, ārum, f.  | riches.                      |
| (only pl.)          |                              |
| flūmen, inis, n.    | a current, river.            |
| fortis, e,          | strong, brave.               |
| fulmen, inis, n.    | lightning, a<br>thunderbolt. |
| fūnus, ūris, n.     | a funeral.                   |
| immortalis, e,      | immortal.                    |
| jūvenis, is, c.     | a young man or<br>woman.     |
| mōnimentum, i, n.   | a monument.                  |
| mortalis, e,        | mortal.                      |
| Neptūnus, i, m.     | Neptune.                     |
| paucus, a, um,      | few.                         |
| plēnus, a, um,      | full.                        |
| (with gen.)         |                              |
| silva, ae, f.       | a wood.                      |

## Vocabulary 17.

|                  |                                        |
|------------------|----------------------------------------|
| culpa, ae, f.    | blame, fault.                          |
| Graecus, a, um,  | Grecian, Greek.                        |
| hōnor, ōris, m.  | an honour.                             |
| indoctus, a, um, | unlearned.                             |
| inimicus, a, um, | unfriendly.                            |
| laus, laudis, f. | praise.                                |
| mēmōrābilis, e,  | to be remem-<br>bered, memor-<br>able. |
| vērū, a, um,     | true.                                  |
| virtūs, ūtis, f. | valour, virtue.                        |

## Vocabulary 18.

|                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| adulatio, ōnis, f. | flattery. |
| amābilis, e,       | lovely.   |
| amor, ōris, m.     | love.     |

|                     |                                               |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| asper, āra, ērum,   | rough, rugged.                                |
| Cāto, ōnis, m.      | Cato, a noble Roman.                          |
| ferrum, i, n.       | iron.                                         |
| Helvētia, ae, f.    | the country of the Helvetii (in Switzerland). |
| hibernus, a, um,    | wintery, of winter.                           |
| imāgo, inis, f.     | a likeness, portrait, image.                  |
| imprōbus, a, um,    | dishonest, wicked.                            |
| iter, itinēris, n.  | a journey.                                    |
| lēpus, ōris, m.     | a hare.                                       |
| lūna, ae, f.        | the moon.                                     |
| lux, lūcis, f.      | light.                                        |
| *mēs, a, um,        | my, mine.                                     |
| mons, montis, m.    | a mountain.                                   |
| nihil, indec. n.    | nothing.                                      |
| nōn, adv.           | not.                                          |
| odium, ii, n.       | hatred.                                       |
| perniciōsus, a, um, | destructive.                                  |
| quam, adv. & conj.  | than, as.                                     |
| rādix, icis, f.     | a root.                                       |
| sāplentia, ae, f.   | wisdom.                                       |
| semper, adv.        | always, ever.                                 |
| simulatio, ōnis, f. | a pretence.                                   |
| sonitus, ūs, m.     | a sound.                                      |
| spēratus, a, um,    | hoped for.                                    |
| sūavis, e,          | sweet, delightful.                            |
| sūus, a, um,        | his, hers, its, their own.                    |
| tranquillus, a, um, | calm.                                         |
| tūus, a, um,        | thy, thine.                                   |
| vēr, vēris, n.      | the spring.                                   |
| vultur, ūris, m.    | a vulture.                                    |

\* The Vocative Sing. Masc. of meus is mi.

## Vocabulary 19.

|                    |                                        |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Alexander, dri, m. | Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia. |
| †Augustus, i, m.   | Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.   |
| centūria, ae, f.   | a century.                             |
| cēraus, i, f.      | a cherry-tree.                         |
| cēraum, i, n.      | a cherry.                              |

+ The month of August, previously called Sextilis, was named after the emperor Augustus.

PR. L. I.

|                     |                                  |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| cōhors, rtis, f.    | a cohort.                        |
| consul, ūlis, m.    | a consul.                        |
| injustus, a, um,    | unjust.                          |
| lēgio, ōnis, f.     | a legion.                        |
| Mācedo, ōnis, m.    | a Macedonian.                    |
| mālus, i, f.        | an apple-tree.                   |
| mālum, i, n.        | an apple.                        |
| mānīptus, i, m.     | a maniple.                       |
| mensis, is, m.      | a month.                         |
| mīlis, e,           | mild.                            |
| os, ossis, n.       | a bone.                          |
| pars, partis, f.    | a part.                          |
| pīrus, i, f.        | a pear-tree.                     |
| pīrum, i, n.        | a pear.                          |
| prūnus, i, f.       | a plum-tree.                     |
| prūnum, i, n.       | a plum.                          |
| sāplens, ntis, adj. | wise, a wise-man.                |
| Xerxes, is, m.      | Xerxes, a famous king of Persia. |

## Vocabulary 20.

|                      |                                   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| attentus, a, um,     | attentive.                        |
| bēātus, a, um,       | happy.                            |
| cārus, a, um,        | dear.                             |
| contentus, a, um,    | contented.                        |
| diligens, ntis,      | diligent, careful.                |
| dives, itis,         | rich.                             |
| ignāvia, ae, f.      | cowardice.                        |
| iūs, jūris, n.       | right, law.                       |
| laetus, a, um,       | joyful.                           |
| liber, āra, ērum,    | free.                             |
| mēmor, ōris,         | mindful.                          |
| nostr, tra, trum,    | our, ours.                        |
| nunc, adv.           | now.                              |
| pauper, ēris,        | poor.                             |
| praeceptor, ōris, m. | a teacher.                        |
| prōbus, a, um,       | good, upright.                    |
| sālus, ūtis, f.      | safety.                           |
| sors, rtis, f.       | a lot.                            |
| Tītus, i (T.), m.    | Titus, a common Roman fore-named. |
| tristis, e,          | sad. [name.]                      |
| vester, tra, trum,   | your, yours.                      |
| si, conj.            | if.                               |

## Vocabulary to Ex. 21, 22, 23.

|               |                                                |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------|
| ānīmus, i, m. | mind, the soul, courage, temper, the feelings. |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------|

K

|                       |                                          |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| authoritas, atis, f.  | authority.                               |
| *autem, conj.         | but.                                     |
| auxilium, ii, n.      | help, aid.                               |
| captivitas, atis, f.  | deprive, passivum.                       |
| Demosthenes, is, m.   | Demosthenes, the famous Athenian orator. |
| industrius, a, um, m. | industrious, busy.                       |
| inermis, is, m.       | helpless, sluggish.                      |
| liberi, ōrum, m. pl.  | children.                                |
| memoria, ae, f.       | memory.                                  |
| pater, entis, c.      | a parent.                                |
| planta, ae, f.        | a sprout, plant.                         |
| proelium, ii, n.      | a battle.                                |

\* The proper position of *autem* is after the first word of the clause to which it belongs.

### Vocabulary 24.

|                     |                                           |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| addictus, a, um, m. | devoted.                                  |
| aeternus, a, um, m. | eternal.                                  |
| bellua, ae, f.      | a great beast.                            |
| Cimbri, ōrum, m.    | the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe. |
| cor, cordis, n.     | a heart.                                  |
| ēlégans, ntis, m.   | elegant, exquisite.                       |
| fidēlia, e, m.      | faithful.                                 |
| fidus, a, um, m.    | a fountain.                               |
| fons, ntis, m.      | a fountain.                               |
| *Līvius, ii, m.     | Livy, a Roman historian.                  |
| luscīnla, ae, f.    | a nightingale.                            |
| mūllier, ēris, f.   | a woman, wife.                            |
| *Sallustius, ii, m. | Sallust, a Roman historian.               |
| salvus, a, um, m.   | safe.                                     |
| sanguis, inis, m.   | blood.                                    |
| scriptor, ōris, m.  | a writer, author.                         |

\* Proper Names ending in *us* make *i* in the Vocative: e.g. Voc. *Līvi*, *Sallusti*. So also *filius* makes Voc. *fili*, and *genius*, a guardian deity, *gēni*.

### Vocabulary 25.

(A, B, C.)

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| aedifico, āvi, ātum, 1. | I build.            |
| ambulo, āvi, ātum, 1.   | I walk.             |
| castigo, āvi, ātum, 1.  | I chastise.         |
| creo, āvi, ātum, 1.     | I create, make.     |
| cūro, āvi, ātum, 1.     | I take care, pains. |

|                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| do, dedi, datum, 1.     | give.                     |
| dare, 1.                | give.                     |
| emendo, āvi, ātum, 1.   | I improve.                |
| emigro, āvi, ātum, 1.   | I depart from.            |
| expugno, āvi, ātum, 1.  | I take by storm.          |
| firmo, āvi, ātum, 1.    | I strengthen.             |
| flo, āvi, ātum, 1.      | I blow.                   |
| habito, āvi, ātum, 1.   | I dwell.                  |
| intro, āvi, ātum, 1.    | I enter.                  |
| iudico, āvi, ātum, 1.   | I judge.                  |
| lando, āvi, ātum, 1.    | I praise.                 |
| mitto, āvi, ātum, 1.    | I change.                 |
| oppugno, āvi, ātum, 1.  | I attack, assault.        |
| orno, āvi, ātum, 1.     | I adorn.                  |
| paro, āvi, ātum, 1.     | I prepare, get, gain.     |
| pugno, āvi, ātum, 1.    | I fight.                  |
| recreo, āvi, ātum, 1.   | I refresh.                |
| vasto, āvi, ātum, 1.    | I lay waste.              |
| vigilo, āvi, ātum, 1.   | I watch, I am awake.      |
| vitāpēro, āvi, ātum, 1. | I blame, find fault with. |

|                      |                                              |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| aedificium, ii, n.   | a building.                                  |
| Corinthus, i, f.     | Corinth.                                     |
| diligenter, adv.     | carefully.                                   |
| dum, conj.           | while.                                       |
| fraus, fraudis, f.   | dishonesty.                                  |
| jam, adv.            | now, already.                                |
| libertas, tātis, f.  | freedom, liberty.                            |
| littera, ae, f.      | a letter of the alphabet.                    |
| litterae, arum, f.   | letters, learning; also, an epistle, letter. |
| mōs, mōris, m.       | a manner, custom.                            |
| nemo, inis, c.       | nobody. [tom.]                               |
| opulentus, a, um, m. | wealthy.                                     |
| placidus, a, um, m.  | quiet.                                       |
| probitas, atis, f.   | honesty, integrity.                          |
| quum, adv. & conj.   | when. [rily.]                                |
| somnus, i, m.        | sleep.                                       |
| timor, ōris, m.      | fear.                                        |
| valētudo, inis, f.   | health.                                      |
| ventus, i, m.        | wind.                                        |

(D, E, F.)

|                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| advento, āvi, ātum, 1. | I am on the point of arriving. |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|

canto, āvi, ātum, *I sing.*  
 dēlecto, āvi, ātum, *I delight, amuse.*  
 dimīco, āvi, ātum, *I fight (a battle).*  
 dubīto, āvi, ātum, *I doubt.*  
 erro, āvi, ātum, *I err, make a*

*mistake.*  
 exhīlāro, āvi, ātum, *I cheer.*  
 impēro, āvi, ātum, *I command.*  
 (with *dat.*)

libēro, āvi, ātum, *I free, deliver.*  
 occūpo, āvi, ātum, *I seize upon.*  
 opto, āvi, ātum, *I wish, desire.*  
 porto, āvi, ātum, *I carry.*  
 rēdāmo, āvi, ātum, *I love in return.*  
 rēnovo, āvi, ātum, *I make new*

*again, restore.*  
 servo, āvi, ātum, *I preserve, save.*  
 supēro, āvi, ātum, *I overcome.*  
 tracto, āvi, ātum, *I handle, deal*

*with.*  
 āb (ā, abs), *prep. from, by.*  
 (with *abl.*)

dubīus, a, um, *doubtful.*  
 fortīter, *adv. bravely.*  
 fortissimē, *adv. very bravely.*  
 Hannībal, ālis, m. *Hannibal, the*

*great Carthaginian general.*  
 hērī, *adv. yesterday.*  
 interītus, ūs, m. *destruction.*  
 Itā, *adv. (from is, in that way,*

*id) thus.*  
 mājōres, um, m-pl. *ancestors.*  
 rectus, a, um, *straight, right.*  
 saepē, *adv. often.*  
 stātio, ōnis, f. *a post, station.*  
 terror, ōris, m. *terror, alarm.*

### Vocabulary 26.

cōerco, tū, Itum, 2. *I restrain, curb.*  
 dēbeo, tū, Itum, 2. *I owe, ought.*  
 dēlēo, ēvi, ētum, 2. *I destroy.*  
 displicēo, tū, Itum, *I displease.*

2. (with *dat.*)  
 docēo, tū, ctum, 2. *I teach.*  
 exerceo, tū, Itum, 2. *I exercise.*  
 flēo, flēvi, flētum, 2. *I weep.*  
 florēo, tū, 2. *I bloom, flourish.*  
 \*gaudēo, gāvīsus

*I rejoice.*  
 sum, 2.  
 \* The Verb *gaudeo* belongs to the class of Neuter-passives. (See p. 65.)

habēo, tū, Itum, 2. *I have.*  
 mēreō, tū, Itum, 2. *I deserve.*  
 mōnēo, tū, Itum, 2. *I advise, warn.*  
 nōcēo, tū, Itum, 2. *I hurt, harm.*

(with *dat.*)  
 pārēo, tū, Itum, 2. *I obey.*

(with *dat.*)  
 plācēo, tū, Itum, 2. *I please.*

(with *dat.*)  
 praebēo, tū, Itum, 2. *I furnish, af-*

*ford, exhibit.*  
 terrēo, tū, Itum, 2. *I terrify, fright-*

*en, alarm.*  
 vālēo, tū, Itum, 2. *I am strong, in*

*good health.*  
 ars, artis, f. *art, handicraft.*  
 avis, is, f. *a bird.*

Athēnīensis, e, *Athenian.*  
 bēnē, *adv. well.*

Caesar, āris, m. *Caesar, a fa-*

*mous Roman.*  
 cantus, ūs, m. *a song.*  
 dīū, *adv. a long time.*

divinus, a, um, *belonging to the*

*gods, divine.*  
 Lātīnus, a, um, *Latin.*  
 lingua, ae, f. *tongue, lan-*

*guage.*  
 praeceptum, i, n. *precept, instruc-*

*tion, lesson.*  
 Pompēius, ēii, m. *Pompey, the ri-*

*val of Caesar.*  
 quā, } *conjs. because.*  
 quōd, }

saepissimē, *adv. very often.*  
 sēnectūs, ūtis, f. *old age.*

Sōlon, ōnis, m. *Solon, the Athe-*

*nian law-*  
*giver.*  
 tēmērītas, ātis, f. *recklessness,*

*rashness.*

### Vocabulary 27.

absūmo, sumpsi, *I consume, cut*

*sumptum, 3. off.*  
 cingo, nxi, nctum, *I surround.*

3.  
 contemno, tempesi, *I despise.*

temptum, 3.  
 contrāho, traxi, *I draw together.*

tractum, 3.

convolo, avi, atum, *I fly or rush together.*

corrigo, rari, rec- *I correct.*

tum, 3.

defendo, di, sum, 3. *I defend.*

desero, rui, rtum, 3. *I abandon.*

dētego, xi, ctum, 3. *I discover.*

dico, xi, ctum, 3. *I say, speak.*

disco, didici, —, 3. *I learn.*

dūco, xi, ctum, 3. *I lead.*

ēmo, ēmi, emptum, *I buy.*

3.

excolo, colui, cul- *I cultivate carefully.*

instiitio, tui, utum, *I appoint, institute.*

instruo, xi, ctum, *I arrange, draw up in order.*

3.

jungo, nxi, nctum, *I join.*

3.

lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3. *I gather, read.*

narro, avi, atum, 1. *I relate.*

pingo, nxi, pictum, *I paint, embroider.*

3.

rēgo, xi, ctum, 3. *I rule.*

scribo, psi, ptum, 3. *I write.*

solve, vi, utum, 3. *I loosen, pay.*

specto, avi, atum, 1. *I look at, look on.*

tēgo, xi, ctum, 3. *I cover.*

trāho, traxi, trac- *I draw, drag.*

tum, 3.

\*triumpho, avi, *I triumph.*

atum, 1.

volo, avi, atum, 1. *I fly.*

Camillus, i, m. *Camillus, a Roman general.*

Catiline, ae, m. *Catiline, a conspirator.*

conjuratio, ōnis, f. *a conspiracy.*

cōpia, ae, f. *plenty.*

\*cōpiae, arum, f. pl. *forces.*

currus, ūs, m. *a chariot.*

fere, adv. *almost, commonly.*

Hellespontus, i, m. *the Hellespont (now the Dardanelles).*

impērator, ōris, m. *a military commander, a general.*

\* A triumph (triumphus) was a grand procession of a Roman general through the streets of Rome.

in, prep. (with acc.) *into.*

incendium, ii, n. *a fire, conflagration.*

innūmerus, a, um, *innumerable.*

lōcus, i, m., pl. -i, *a place.*

m., and -a, n.

mens, mentis, f. *the mind.*

mundus, i, m. *the world.*

obsidio, ōnis, f. *a siege, blockade.*

oratio, ōnis, f. *oration, speech.*

pallium, ii, n. *a cloak.*

\*pons, ntis, m. *a bridge.*

sīmūl ac (atque), *as soon as.*

or in one word,

sīmūlac, conj.

vix, adv. *scarcely.*

\* Observe the phrase *jungere flumen ponte*, to throw a bridge over a river.

### Vocabulary 28.

custodio, ivi, itum, *I guard, keep*

4. *guard.*

dormio, ivi, itum, 4. *I sleep.*

erudio, ivi, itum, 4. *I train up, educate.*

finio, ivi, itum, 4. *I limit, put an end to.*

mollio, ivi, itum, 4. *I soften, assuage.*

mūnio, ivi, itum, 4. *I fortify.*

nescio, ivi & ii, *I am ignorant*

itum, 4. *of.*

nūtrio, ivi, itum, 4. *I nourish, nurture.*

obedio, ivi, itum, 4. *I obey.*

(with dat.)

pūnio, ivi, itum, 4. *I punish.*

reperio, pēri, per- *I find.*

tum, 4. *I know.*

scio, ivi, itum, 4. *I know.*

sepelio, ivi and } *I bury.*

ii, pultum, 4. }

vēnio, vēni, ven- *I come.*

tum, 4. *I clothe.*

vestio, ivi, itum, 4. *I clothe.*

vincio, nxi, nctum, *I bind.*

4.

Alpēs, Ium, m. *the Alps.*

Cornelia, ae, f. *Cornelia, a Roman matron.*

crūdēlis, e, *cruel.*

|                         |                                                 |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| diligentissimē,<br>adv. | most carefully.                                 |
| dolor, ōris, m.         | pain, grief.                                    |
| etiam, conj.            | also, even.                                     |
| finis, is, m.           | end, limit, in pl.<br>territories.              |
| gnāvītēr, adv.          | actively, vigor-<br>ously.                      |
| Lībŷa, ae, f.           | Africa.                                         |
| lictor, ōris, m.        | a lictor (attend-<br>ant on a ma-<br>gistrate). |
| longinquus, a, um,      | long, distant.                                  |
| longinquitas, atis, f.  | length, distance.                               |
| membrāna, ae, f.        | thin skin, mem-<br>brane.                       |
| mollis, e,              | soft, mellow.                                   |
| mortuus, a, um,         | dead.                                           |
| olim, adv.              | formerly, once<br>upon a time.                  |
| quōquē, conj.           | also, even.                                     |
| tēnūis, e,              | thin, delicate.                                 |
| turpis, e,              | base, disgrace-<br>ful.                         |
| vestimentum, i, n.      | clothing.                                       |
| vinculum, i, n.         | a chain, bond.                                  |
| vox, vōcis, f.          | a voice.                                        |

## Vocabulary 29.

|                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| ēdūco, āvi, ātum, 1.   | I educate.       |
| ēdūco, xi, ctum, 3.    | I lead out.      |
| fūgo, āvi, ātum, 1.    | I put to flight. |
| vulnēro, āvi, ātum, 1. | I wound.         |

|                  |                                                                 |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Antīōchus, i, m. | Antiochus, a<br>name of se-<br>veral kings of<br>Syria. [nent.] |
| ēgrēgius, a, um, | excellent, emi-<br>nently, severely.                            |
| grāvītēr, adv.   | heavily, severely.                                              |
| Lŷcurgus, i, m.  | Lycurgus, the<br>Spartan legis-<br>lator.                       |
| Trōja, ae, f.    | Troy, the city.                                                 |
| Vesta, ae, f.    | Vesta, the god-<br>dess of fire and<br>the hearth.              |

## Vocabulary 30.

|                               |           |
|-------------------------------|-----------|
| māneo, mansi, man-<br>sum, 2. | I remain. |
|-------------------------------|-----------|

|                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| mōvēo, mōvi,<br>mōtum, 2. | I move, disturb. |
| tīmeo, ti, —, 2.          | I fear.          |

|                  |                           |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| adventus, ūs, m. | arrival.                  |
| Nēro, ōnis, m.   | Nero, a Roman<br>emperor. |
| strēnūus, a, um, | vigorous.                 |
| strēnūē, adv.    | vigorously.               |
| stūdŷum, ii, n.  | zeal, pursuit,<br>study.  |
| stūbŷtus, a, um, | sudden.                   |

## Vocabulary 31.

|                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| affligo, xi, ctum, 3.     | I cast down,<br>prostrate.   |
| colō, colūi, cultum, 3.   | I cultivate,<br>cherish, &c. |
| dilīgo, lexi, lectum, 3.  | I esteem, love.              |
| fringo, finxi, fictum, 3. | I frame, feign,<br>invent.   |
| stūdēo, ti, —, 2.         | I am eager,<br>zealous.      |
| vēho, vexi, vectum, 3.    | I carry, in Pass.<br>I ride. |
| vinco, vici, victum, 3.   | I conquer.                   |
| vivo, vixi, victum, 3.    | I live.                      |

|                     |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| olādes, is, f.      | disaster, defeat.             |
| fābŷla, ae, f.      | a fable, story.               |
| nōbŷlis, e,         | distinguished.                |
| perversus, a, um,   | wilful, perverse.             |
| Phāēthon, ōntis, m. | Phaethon, a son<br>of Apollo. |
| prōbē, adv.         | rightly, properly.            |
| quidē, adv.         | indeed.                       |
| rātio, ōnis, f.     | reason.                       |
| Scipio, ōnis, m.    | Scipio, a noble<br>Roman.     |
| vēhēmentēr, adv.    | vehemently,<br>warmly.        |

## Vocabulary 32.

|                            |         |
|----------------------------|---------|
| cādo, cecidi,<br>cāsum, 3. | I fall. |
|----------------------------|---------|

|                |          |
|----------------|----------|
| āēr, āēris, m. | the air. |
|----------------|----------|

|                    |                                      |                    |                           |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| Africānus, i, m.   | Africanus, a surname of the Scipios. | vēnērōr, ātus, 1.  | I reverence, worship.     |
| cognitio, ōnia, f. | inquiry, knowledge.                  | dēmum, adv.        | indeed.*                  |
| ēruditus, a, um,   | trained, educated.                   | pōtēstas, ātis, f. | } power.†                 |
| Gracchus, i, m.    | Gracchus, a noble Roman.             | pōtētia, ae, f.    |                           |
| injustē, adv.      | unjustly.                            | quidam, quaedam,   | } a certain, certain one. |
| justē, adv.        | justly.                              | quoddam or quid-   |                           |
| lāpidēus, a, um,   | of stone.                            | tum, adv.          | then.                     |
| nēgōtium, ii, a.   | business.                            |                    |                           |
| pellis, is, f.     | skin (of an animal).                 |                    |                           |
| prius, adv.        | sooner, before.                      |                    |                           |
| Pūnicus, a, um,    | Punic, Carthaginian.                 |                    |                           |
| Sōcrātēs, is, m.   | Socrates, the sage of Athens.        |                    |                           |
| solum, adv.        | only.                                |                    |                           |
| summus, a, um,     | highest, utmost, greatest.           |                    |                           |
| Tiberius, ii, m.   | Tiberius, a common Roman fore-name.  |                    |                           |
| (Ti.)              |                                      |                    |                           |

## Vocabulary 33.

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| absurdus, a, um,    | absurd.             |
| bōna, ōrum, a. pl.  | goods.              |
| celsus, a, um,      | lofty, tall.        |
| margārita, ae, f.   | a pearl.            |
| nēcessārius, a, um, | necessary, needful. |
| nidus, i, m.        | a nest.             |
| versus, ūs, m.      | a line, a verse.    |

## Vocabulary 34.

|                      |                                   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| admiror, ātus, 1.    | I wonder at, I admire.            |
| aspernor, ātus, 1.   | I reject, despise.                |
| cōnor, ātus, 1.      | I attempt.                        |
| contemplor, ātus, 1. | I observe carefully, contemplate. |
| hortor, ātus, 1.     | I urge, exhort, encourage.        |
| mēdītor, ātus, 1.    | I meditate on, study.             |
| mīror, ātus, 1.      | I wonder at, admire.              |

|                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| dēmum, adv.        | indeed.*                  |
| pōtēstas, ātis, f. | } power.†                 |
| pōtētia, ae, f.    |                           |
| quidam, quaedam,   | } a certain, certain one. |
| quoddam or quid-   |                           |
| tum, adv.          | then.                     |

\* As, tum dēmum, then indeed; then and not till then.

† Potestas is the regular power of a magistrate; Potentia, the power which arises out of personal weight and influence.

## Vocabulary 35.

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| *accipio, cēpi, cep-   | I receive.              |
| tum, 3.                |                         |
| *confiteor, fessus, 1. | I confess.              |
| 2.                     |                         |
| *dēcipio, cēpi, cep-   | I deceive.              |
| tum, 3.                |                         |
| *ējicio, jēci, jec-    | I cast forth.           |
| tum, 3.                |                         |
| fātēor, fessus, 2.     | I confess.              |
| Imitor, ātus, 1.       | I imitate.              |
| intūeor, itus, 2.      | I look upon, into.      |
| mīstēor, itus or       | I pity, have pity       |
| ritus, 2.              | on.                     |
| pollicēor, itus, 2.    | I promise.              |
| rēcōrdor, ātus, 1.     | I call to mind.         |
| tūeor, itus, 2.        | I gaze, guard, protect. |
| vērēor, itus, 2.       | I fear, reverence.      |

\* Observe the change of ā to I when a preposition is prefixed in composition: as, accipio = ad + cāpio; confiteor = con + fātēor, etc.

|                    |                                       |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Āsia, ae, f.       | Asia.                                 |
| Dārius, ii, m.     | Darius, a king of Persia.             |
| ex, ē, prep. (with | out of.                               |
| abl.)              |                                       |
| fācīnus, ōris, n.  | bold or daring deed, crime.           |
| Plīnius, ii, m.    | Pliny, the name of two Roman authors, |

praetēritus, a, um, *past.*  
rēus, i, m. *an accused man,*  
*defendant.*

## Vocabulary 36.

abūtor, ūsus, 3. *I abuse.*  
adhortor, ātus, 1. *I urge, exhort.*  
adīpscoor, adeptus, 1. *I acquire, at-*  
8. *tain to.*  
allōquor, locūtus, 1. *I speak to.*  
3.  
committo, mīsi, { *I send together,*  
missum, 3. { *join (fight)*  
*battle.*  
dēflāgro, āvi, ātum, 1. *to be burnt down.*  
1.  
fruo, fructus and } *I enjoy.*  
fructus, 3. }  
fungor, funotus, 3. *I discharge.*  
gēro, gessi, gēstum, 1. *I carry on (war),*  
3. *wage (war).*  
incūso, āvi, ātum, 1. *I accuse, find*  
1. *fault with.*  
jūbēo, jussi, jus- *I order, bid.*  
sum, 2.  
lōquor, locūtus, 3. *I speak.*  
mōrior, mortuus } *I die.*  
(*fut. part. mōri-*  
tūrus, about to  
die), 3. }  
nascor, nātus, 3. *I am born.*  
obliviscor, litus, 3. *I forget.*  
pātior, passus, 3. *I endure, suffer.*  
prōficiōor, fectus, 1. *I set out.*  
3.  
rēmīniscor, 3. *I remember.*  
sēquor, cūtus, 3. *I follow.*  
ūtōr, ūsus, 3. *I use.*  
vescor, —, 3. *I feed, live on.*

ad, *prep. (with acc.) to, at, near.*  
aliquando, *adv. sometimes.*  
apud, *prep. (with*  
*acc.) at, near.*  
bēnignē, *adv. kindly.*  
cāro, carnis, *f. flesh.*  
cāsēus, i, m. *cheese.*  
consulātus, ūs, m. *office of consul,*  
*consulate.*  
cruciatūs, ūs, m. *torture.*  
Dīāna, ae, *f. Diana.*

Euripides, is, m. *Euripides, an*  
*Athenian tra-*  
*gic poet.*  
immortālitas, ātis, *immortality.*  
*f.*

Labiēnus, i, m. *Labienus, one of*  
*Caesar's lieutenants.*  
lac, lactis, n. *milk.*  
lācus, ūs, m. *a lake.*  
lactīla, ae, *f. joy.*

Mēnapii, ōrum, m. *Menapii, a Gal-*  
*lic tribe.*  
mox, *adv. soon, shortly.*  
mūnus, ēris, n. *a gift, duty,*  
*function.*

nēvē, *conj. (with*  
*subj.) nor, and lest.*

nīmīs, *adv. too, too much.*  
pēr, *prep. (with*  
*acc.) through.*

poena, ae, *f. punishment.*  
Poeni, ōrum, m. *the Carthagi-*  
*nians.*

pristīnus, a, um, *former, olden.*  
rārō, *adv. seldom.*

Rēgulus, i, m. *Regulus, a fu-*  
*mous Roman.*  
Salāmīs, inis, *f. Salamis, an is-*  
*land near*  
*Athens.*

tantum, *adv. only.*  
Trāsīmēnus, i, m. *Lake Trasimene,*  
*in Italy.*

## Vocabulary 37.

blandīor, itus (with *I flatter, win*  
*dat.), 4. upon.*  
expērior, ritus, 4. *I try, experience.*  
mētior, mensus, 4. *I measure.*  
mentior, itus, 4. *I lie, tell a lie.*  
ordior, orsus, 4. *I begin.*  
partior, itus, 4. *I share, divide.*  
pōtior, itus, 4. *I obtain pos-*  
*(with abl.) session of.*

civilis, e, *belonging to a*  
*citizen, civil.*  
Epāminondas, ae, *Epaminondas,*  
*a famous The-*  
*ban.*

|                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| frons, ntis, <i>f.</i> | the forehead,  |
|                        | brow.          |
| nunquam, <i>adv.</i>   | never.         |
| vultus, ūs, <i>m.</i>  | a countenance, |
|                        | looks.         |

## Vocabulary 38.

|                                         |       |
|-----------------------------------------|-------|
| flūo, fluxi, fluxum, <i>I flow.</i>     |       |
| 3.                                      |       |
| migro, āvi, ātum, <i>I migrate, de-</i> |       |
| 1.                                      | part. |

|                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| mētus, ūs, <i>m.</i>      | fear.              |
| occidens, ntis, <i>m.</i> | the west (the set- |
|                           | ting sun).         |
| permulti, ae, <i>a,</i>   | very many.         |
| primo, <i>adv.</i>        | at first.          |

## Vocabulary 39.

|                                             |                |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------|
| dīvido, visi, visum, <i>I divide, sepa-</i> |                |
| 8.                                          | rate.          |
| mitto, misi, mis-                           | <i>I send.</i> |
| sum, 8.                                     |                |

|                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| cēteri (caet.), cē-       | the rest.       |
| tērae, cētera, <i>pl.</i> |                 |
| Germani, ōrum, <i>m.</i>  | the Germans.    |
| Helvētius, a, um,         | Helvetian. (See |
|                           | Voc. 18.)       |
| lēgātus, i, <i>m.</i>     | ambassador,     |
|                           | lieutenant.     |
| ōcēānus, i, <i>m.</i>     | the ocean.      |

## Vocabulary 40.

|                                        |                 |  |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------|--|
| fulgēo, lsi, lsum, 2.                  | <i>I shine.</i> |  |
| profēro, tūli, lātum, <i>I extend.</i> | (See            |  |
| ferre, 3. v. irr.                      | p. 80.)         |  |

|                            |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| Aegyptus, i, <i>f.</i>     | Egypt.            |
| impērium, ii, <i>n.</i>    | empire.           |
| Indi, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>  | Indians, the peo- |
|                            | ple of India.     |
| marmor, ōris, <i>n.</i>    | marble.           |
| servītus, ūtis, <i>f.</i>  | slavery.          |
| tābernāculum, i, <i>n.</i> | a tent.           |
| uxor, ōris, <i>f.</i>      | a wife.           |

## Vocabulary 41.

|                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| accēdo, cessi, ces- | <i>I approach.</i> |
| sum, 3.             |                    |

|                                       |                         |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.                   | <i>I lead, act, do.</i> |
| excēdo, cessi, ces-                   | <i>I depart from.</i>   |
| sum, 3.                               |                         |
| incīpio, cēpi, cep-                   | <i>I begin.</i>         |
| tum, 3.                               |                         |
| perdo, didi, dītum, <i>I destroy.</i> |                         |
| 3.                                    |                         |
| rēsisto, stīti, stī-                  | } <i>I resist.</i>      |
| tum, 3. (with                         |                         |
| dat.)                                 |                         |

|                               |                   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| atque, ac, <i>conj.</i>       | and.              |
| attentē, <i>adv.</i>          | attentively.      |
| audactēr, <i>adv.</i>         | boldly, daringly. |
| Hasdrūbal, ālis, <i>m.</i>    | Hasdrubal, the    |
|                               | brother of        |
|                               | Hannibal.         |
| jūventūs, ūtis, <i>f.</i>     | youth.            |
| lātē, <i>adv.</i>             | widely, wide.     |
| longē, <i>adv.</i>            | far.              |
| Roscius, ii, <i>m.</i>        | Roscius, a Ro-    |
|                               | man name.         |
| sātis, <i>adv.</i>            | enough, suffi-    |
|                               | ciently.          |
| tigris, is or ūdis, <i>c.</i> | a tiger, tigress. |

## Vocabulary 42.

|                                          |        |
|------------------------------------------|--------|
| infringo, frēgi, <i>I break, impair.</i> |        |
| fractum, 3.                              |        |
| obscūro, āvi, ātum, <i>I darken, ob-</i> |        |
| 1.                                       | scure. |
| rēlinquo, liqui, <i>I leave, quit.</i>   |        |
| lictum, 3.                               |        |

|                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| aequus, a, um,            | level, even, just. |
| cur, <i>adv.</i>          | why?               |
| impētus, ūs, <i>m.</i>    | an onset, attack.  |
| invidiā, ae, <i>f.</i>    | envy, ill-will.    |
| splendor, ōris, <i>m.</i> | brightness, bril-  |
|                           | liancy.            |
| tyrannus, i, <i>m.</i>    | a despot, tyrant.  |

## Vocabulary 43.

|                                        |                     |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------|
| cōmītor, ātus, 1.                      | <i>I accompany.</i> |
| immōlo, āvi, ātum, <i>I sacrifice.</i> |                     |
| 1.                                     |                     |
| indulgēo, dulsi, <i>I indulge.</i>     |                     |
| dultum, 2. (with                       |                     |
| dat.)                                  |                     |
| lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, 3.                  | <i>I play.</i>      |
| mētūo, ūi, ūtum, 3.                    | <i>I fear.</i>      |

ōro, āvi, ātum, 1. *I entreat, pray.*  
salto, āvi, ātum, 1. *I dance.*  
sēdēo, sēdi, sessum, *I sit.*

2.

vīdēor, vīsus, 2. *I seem, appear.*

Āpollo, īnis, m. *Apollo, a Roman divinity.*

hostia, ae, f. *a victim.*  
nōbīlis, e, *distinguished, noble.*

Pŷthāgōras, ae, m. *Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher.*

## Vocabulary 44.

sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3. *I plant, sow.*

aerumna, ae, f. *trouble, affliction.*

frūges, um, f. pl. *fruits, a crop.*  
īnops, ōpis, *destitute.*

ōnus, ēris, n. *a load, burden.*

pātientēr, adv. *patiently.*

paupertas, ātis, f. *poverty.*

prudentia, ae, f. *knowledge, prudence.*

Phrase:—

Auxilium ferre, to render assistance.

## Vocabulary 45.

occido, oīdi, oīsum, 3. *I kill, slay.*

stātuo, tui, ūtum, 3. *I fix, determine.*

atrox, ōcis, *stern, sanguinary, cruel.*

fācīlē, adv. *easily.*

fāmēs, is, f. *hunger.*

hīlāris, e, *cheerful.*

ignāvē, adv. *indolently.*

ōrāculum, i, n. *an oracle.*

silentium, ii, n. *silence.*

suprēmus, a, um, *last.*

unquam, adv. *at any time, ever.*

## Vocabulary 46.

adjuvo, jūvi, jūtum, *I assist.*

1.

nēquēo, quīvi and *I am unable,*  
īi, ītum, nēquire *cannot.*  
(like eo), 4.

cāsus, ūs, m. *chance, accident.*

infectus, a, um, *undone.*

grāvis, e, *heavy, severe.*

noxius, a, um, *guilty.*

socius, ii, m. *a partner, ally, companion.*

Thēmistocles, is, m. *Themistocles, a famous Athenian.*

## Vocabulary 47.

addisco, addīdici, *I learn in ad.*  
3. *dition.*

bībo, bībī, bībītum, *I drink.*

3.

conservo, āvi, *I preserve,*  
ātum, 1. *maintain.*

curro, cūcurri, cur- *I run.*

sum, 3.

interficiō, fēcī, *I put to death,*  
fectum, 3. *kill.*

āliquis, quīd, pron. *some one, some-*  
*thing.*

Carthāgīnensis, e, *Carthaginian.*

nāvālis, e, *naval.*

Nilus, i, m. *the river Nile.*

nonnullus, a, um, *some.*

quōtidīē, adv. *every day.*

tam, adv. *so, to such a de-*  
*gree.*

Phrase:—

In legem jurare, to swear to a law.

## Vocabulary 48.

dēplōro, āvi, ātum, *I lament over,*  
1. *deplore.*

īrascor, īrātus, 3, *I am angry.*

dep.

tācēo, tui, ītum, 2. *I am silent.*

tribūo, tui, ūtum, 3. *I give, assign.*

Arīōvistus, i, m. *Ariovistus, a German king.*

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| fortē, <i>adv.</i>       | <i>by chance.</i>           |
| infāmia, <i>ae, f.</i>   | <i>infamy.</i>              |
| mīnīmē, <i>adv.</i>      | <i>in the least degree.</i> |
| nec, <i>nēquē, conj.</i> | <i>neither, nor.</i>        |
| stultitia, <i>ae, f.</i> | <i>folly.</i>               |

## Vocabulary 49.

|                              |                                             |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| cunctus, <i>a, um,</i>       | <i>all, all together.</i>                   |
| dissimilis, <i>e,</i>        | <i>unlike.</i>                              |
| fērox, <i>ōcis,</i>          | <i>fierce, spirited.</i>                    |
| ignorātia, <i>ōnis, f.</i>   | <i>ignorance.</i>                           |
| inferior, <i>ius (comp.)</i> | <i>lower, inferior.</i>                     |
| mālum, <i>i, n.</i>          | <i>an evil.</i>                             |
| perfectus, <i>a, um,</i>     | <i>finished, perfect.</i>                   |
| Phidias, <i>ae, m.</i>       | <i>Phidias, a famous Athenian sculptor.</i> |
| praestabilis, <i>e,</i>      | <i>excellent.</i>                           |
| proximus, <i>a, um,</i>      | <i>nearest, next.</i>                       |
| scientia, <i>ae, f.</i>      | <i>knowledge.</i>                           |
| sēd, <i>conj.</i>            | <i>but.</i>                                 |
| similis, <i>e,</i>           | <i>like.</i>                                |
| simulacrum, <i>i, n.</i>     | <i>an image, statue.</i>                    |
| vilis, <i>e,</i>             | <i>cheap, common.</i>                       |

## Vocabulary 50.

|                                                      |                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| cognosco, <i>nōvi, nītum, 3.</i>                     | <i>I learn, ascertain.</i>              |
| comprehendo, <i>di, sum, 3.</i>                      | <i>I seize.</i>                         |
| conficio, <i>fēci, fecitum, 3.</i>                   | <i>I finish, accomplish.</i>            |
| conscendo, <i>di, sum, 3.</i>                        | <i>I mount, go on board (ship).</i>     |
| contendo, <i>di, sum and tum, 3.</i>                 | <i>I strain, hasten.</i>                |
| convoco, <i>āvi, ātum, 1.</i>                        | <i>I call together.</i>                 |
| effloresco, <i>flōrti, 3.</i>                        | <i>to blossom forth.</i>                |
| expōno, <i>pōtūi, pōsītum, 3.</i>                    | <i>I put forth, disembark (troops).</i> |
| intimesco, <i>tūmūi, 3.</i>                          | <i>I swell.</i>                         |
| lābor, <i>lāpus, 3, v. dep.</i>                      | <i>I glide, pass away, fall.</i>        |
| ōrior, <i>ortus, ōriri, 4, v. dep. : see p. 122.</i> | <i>I rise.</i>                          |
| perlēgo, <i>lēgi, lectum, 3.</i>                     | <i>I read through.</i>                  |

|                                       |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| perrumpo, <i>rūpi, ruptum, 3.</i>     | <i>I burst through.</i>     |
| praemitto, <i>mīsi, missum, 3.</i>    | <i>I send on before.</i>    |
| reōto, <i>āvi, ātum, 1.</i>           | <i>I read aloud.</i>        |
| recupero, <i>āvi, ātum, 1.</i>        | <i>I recover, get back.</i> |
| regno, <i>āvi, ātum, 1.</i>           | <i>I reign, am king.</i>    |
| sentio, <i>si, sum, 4.</i>            | <i>I feel, perceive.</i>    |
| subsequor, <i>sēcūtus, 3, v. dep.</i> | <i>I follow up.</i>         |
| suscipio, <i>cēpi, cepitum, 3.</i>    | <i>I undertake.</i>         |
| vexo, <i>āvi, ātum, 1.</i>            | <i>I vex, harass.</i>       |

|                              |                                         |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| aetas, <i>ātis, f.</i>       | <i>age, time of life.</i>               |
| Arbēla, <i>ae, f.</i>        | <i>Arbela, a town in Assyria.</i>       |
| Cassivelaunus, <i>i, m.</i>  | <i>Cassivelaunus, a British chief.</i>  |
| dēlectus, <i>ūs, m.</i>      | <i>a levy.</i>                          |
| hiberna, <i>orum, n. pl.</i> | <i>winter-quarters.</i>                 |
| infirmus, <i>a, um,</i>      | <i>infirm, feeble.</i>                  |
| Pisistrātus, <i>i, m.</i>    | <i>Pisistratus, a despot of Athens.</i> |
| sēnātus, <i>ūs, m.</i>       | <i>the senate.</i>                      |
| stātīm, <i>adv.</i>          | <i>immediately.</i>                     |

## Phrases:—

|                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| Delectum habere,           | <i>to hold a levy.</i> |
| Maxima itinēra,            | <i>forced marches</i>  |
| Navem (naves) conscendere, | <i>to embark.</i>      |

## Vocabulary 51.

|                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| extrūdo, <i>xi, ctum, 3.</i>     | <i>I heap up.</i>                |
| obsidēo, <i>sēdi, sessum, 2.</i> | <i>I blockade, lay siege to.</i> |
| pōno, <i>pōui, pōsītum, 3.</i>   | <i>I place.</i>                  |
| Āthēnae, <i>ārum, f.</i>         | <i>Athens.</i>                   |
| bestiola, <i>ae, f.</i>          | <i>a small animal, insect.</i>   |
| campus, <i>i, m.</i>             | <i>a plain.</i>                  |
| dōminātus, <i>ūs, m.</i>         | <i>rule, sovereignty.</i>        |
| hōra, <i>ae, f.</i>              | <i>an hour.</i>                  |

|                     |                                               |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Hanno, ōnis, m.     | Hanno, a Carthaginian.                        |
| Mārathon, ōnis, m.  | Marathon, a plain near Athens.                |
| nātus, a, um, part. | born, aged.                                   |
| and adj.            |                                               |
| passus, ūs, m.      | a pace (about five feet).                     |
| Plāto, ōnis, m.     | Plato, a famous Greek philosopher.            |
| Sāguntini, ōrum, m. | Saguntines, the people of Saguntum, in Spain. |

## Phrases:—

|                        |                                                 |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Castra ponere,         | to pitch a camp.                                |
| Murum, aggerem ducere, | to carry a wall or mound along, i.e. construct. |

## Vocabulary 52.

|                                                |                                    |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.                        | I yield, retire.                   |
| confēro, tūli, col-lātum, 3. v. irr.           | I bring together, betake.          |
| oppōno, pōsti, pōsitum, 3.                     | I set against, oppose.             |
| pervēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.                     | I arrive at.                       |
| pēto, īvi and īti, itum, 3.                    | I seek.                            |
| revertō, ti, sum, rēvertor, versus, 3. v. dep. | I turn back, re-turn.              |
| Alcibiādes, is, m.                             | Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian. |
| Aeschines, is, m.                              | Aeschines, an orator.              |
| Cūrius, ii, m.                                 | Curius, a Roman general.           |
| Canusium, ii, n.                               | Canusium, a town in Apulia.        |
| Capta, ae, f.                                  | Capua, a city of Campania.         |
| Crēta, ae, f.                                  | Crete, an island of Greece.        |
| exilium, ii, n.                                | banishment, exile.                 |

|                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ibi, adv. (fr. is, id), there. |                             |
| Lacēdaemon, ōnis, f.           | Lacedaemon or Sparta.       |
| Leōnidas, ae, m.               | Leonidas, a king of Sparta. |
| Lūcēria, ae, f.                | Lupercia, a town in Apulia. |
| Lūcius, ii (L.), m.            | Lucius, a Roman fore-name.  |
| mandātum, i, n.                | a charge, commission.       |
| perpētius, a, um.              | continual.                  |
| Rhōdus, i, f.                  | Rhodes.                     |
| rūs, rūris, n.                 | the country.                |
| Sparta, ae, f.                 | Sparta.                     |

## Phrase:—

Exilium agere, to live in exile.

## Vocabulary 53.

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| constitūto, ti, ūtum, 3.     | I settle, determine.             |
| consūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3. | I consume, waste away.           |
| expello, pūli, pulsum, 3.    | I drive out.                     |
| hiemo, āvi, ātum, 1.         | I winter.                        |
| iacēo, ti, itum, 2.          | I lie.                           |
| Āpollōnia, ae, f.            | Apollonia, a town in Epirus.     |
| Āristides, is, m.            | Aristides, a noble Athenian.     |
| Arpinum, i, n.               | Arpinum, a town in Latium.       |
| Bābylōn, ōnis, f.            | Babylon, a city of Assyria.      |
| Cannae, ārum, f.             | Cannae, a village in Apulia.     |
| Cōnōn, ōnis, m.              | Conon, an Athenian general.      |
| Cūmae, ārum, f.              | Cumae, a city in Campania.       |
| Cyprus, i, f.                | Cyprus, an island off Cilicia.   |
| Delphi, ōrum, m.             | Delphi, a city in Greece.        |
| Dīōnysius, ii, m.            | Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse. |

|                       |                                   |                     |                                     |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Dyrrāchium, ii, n.    | Dyrrachium, a town in Epirus.     | Diana, ae, f.       | Diana, a goddess.                   |
| Fabricius, ii, m.     | Fabricius, a noble Roman.         | flōrens, entis,     | flourishing.                        |
| Hōrātius, ii, m.      | Horace, a Roman poet.             | Hōmērus, i, m.      | Homer.                              |
| Lesbus, i, f.         | Lesbos, an island off Asia Minor. | imprudentia, ae, f. | ignorance, imprudence.              |
| Mārius, ii, m.        | Marius, a Roman general.          | Lātōna, ae, f.      | Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana. |
| quālis, a, pron. adj. | of what sort, as.                 | manifestus, a, um,  | evident, manifest.                  |
| Syrācūsae, ārum, f.   | Syracuse.                         | nisi, conj.         | unless, except.                     |
| tālis, a, pron. adj.  | of that sort, such.               | quondam, adv.       | sometime, formerly.                 |
| Timōthēus, i, m.      | Timothæus, a famous Greek.        | stella, ae, f.      | a star.                             |
| Vēnūsia, ae, f.       | Venusia, a town in Italy.         | Thāles, etia, m.    | Thales, the philosopher.            |
|                       |                                   | Trōjānus, a, um,    | Trojan, of Troy.                    |
|                       |                                   | vērīsimilis, e,     | likely, probable.                   |

## Phrase:—

Morbo constimi, to be carried off by illness.

## Vocabulary 54.

advēnio, vēni, ven- I arrive.  
tum, 4.  
animadverto, ti, I observe.  
sum, 3.  
confugio, ūgi, —, 3. I flee to.  
constat, stitit, it is evident, it  
1. v. impera. is agreed, it is certain.  
continēo, ūi, ten- I hold together.  
tum, 2.  
nego, āvi, ātum, 1. I deny.  
pario, pēperi, par- I bring forth.  
tum, 3.  
prōdo, didi, dītum, I hand down,  
3. betray.  
puto, āvi, ātum, 1. I think.  
trādo, didi, dītum, I hand down,  
3. deliver.  
vidēo, vīdi, visum, I see.  
2.

caecus, a, um, blind.  
causā (abl.), for the sake of.  
crēdibilis, e, credible.  
Dēlos, i, f. Delos, an island  
of Greece.

## Vocabulary 55.

consentio, si, sum, I agree.  
4.  
crēdo, didi, dītum, I believe.  
3.  
diripio, rīpti, rep- I plunder, pil-  
tum, 3. lage.  
intelligo, lexi, lec- I understand.  
tum, 3.  
respondēo, di, sum, I answer.  
2.  
bēnēvolus, a, um, well-wishing, be-  
nevolent.  
bōnum, i, n. a good, a bless-  
ing.  
divinus, a, um, of the gods,  
divine.  
ēlōquens, tis, eloquent. [fire.  
ignēus, a, um, fiery, made of  
Lūcrētius, ii, m. Lucretius, a Ro-  
man poet.  
mālēvolus, a, um, ill-wishing,  
malevolent.  
mendax, ācis, lying, false. Used  
as a subst., a  
liar.  
primārius, a, um, first-rate, emi-  
stultus, a, um, foolish. [nent.  
supērus, a, um, upper.  
(see p. 25)  
turpītudo, inis, f. disgrace.

## Vocabulary 56.

|                                                  |                            |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| abjicō, jēci, jec-                               | <i>I cast away.</i>        |
| tum, 3.                                          |                            |
| antēpono, pōsui, <i>I prefer.</i>                |                            |
| pōsitum, 3.                                      |                            |
| conjicō, jēci, jec-                              | <i>I fling (together).</i> |
| tum, 3.                                          |                            |
| evēnō, vēni, ven-                                | <i>I happen.</i>           |
| tum, 4.                                          |                            |
| nūmēro, āvi, ātum, <i>I count.</i>               |                            |
| 1.                                               |                            |
| quaero, quaesivī, <i>I seek, enquire.</i>        |                            |
| situm, 3.                                        |                            |
| rōgo, āvi, ātum, 1. <i>I ask.</i>                |                            |
| spēcūlor, ātus, 1. <i>I spy out.</i>             |                            |
| viso, visi, vīsum, 3. <i>I go to see, visit.</i> |                            |
| Blaesus, i, m. <i>Blaesus, a Roman name.</i>     |                            |
| Chaerēphon, on-                                  | <i>Chaerephon, a</i>       |
| tis, m. <i>disciple of So-</i>                   |                            |
|                                                  | <i>crates.</i>             |
| Croesus, i, m. <i>Croesus, a king</i>            |                            |
|                                                  | <i>of Lydia.</i>           |
| cur, adv. <i>why? to what</i>                    |                            |
|                                                  | <i>end?</i>                |
| fēliciter, adv. <i>luckily.</i>                  |                            |
| incertus, a, um, <i>uncertain.</i>               |                            |
| infamis, e, <i>infamous.</i>                     |                            |
| injustus, a, um, <i>unjust.</i>                  |                            |
| Laeca, ae, m. <i>Laeca, a Roman.</i>             |                            |
| mortuus, a, um, <i>dead.</i>                     |                            |
| nōvus, a, um, <i>new.</i>                        |                            |
| philōsōphus, i, m. <i>a philosopher.</i>         |                            |
| plānē, adv. <i>altogether.</i>                   |                            |
| quaestio, ōnis, f. <i>a question.</i>            |                            |
| quantus, a, um, <i>how great.</i>                |                            |
| quārē, adv. <i>why, on what</i>                  |                            |
|                                                  | <i>account.</i>            |
| quōt, indec. adj. <i>how many.</i>               |                            |
| saepēnūmēro, adv. <i>oftentimes.</i>             |                            |
| subdifficilis, e, <i>somewhat diffi-</i>         |                            |
|                                                  | <i>cult.</i>               |
| tēlum, i, n. <i>a dart, weapon,</i>              |                            |
|                                                  | <i>missile.</i>            |
| tibi, adv. <i>where.</i>                         |                            |
| Xēnōphon, ontis, <i>Xenophon, an</i>             |                            |
| m. <i>Athenian.</i>                              |                            |

## Vocabulary 57.

|                                      |                        |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| accīdo, idi, —, 3. <i>to happen.</i> |                        |
| eerno, crēvi, crē-                   | <i>I see, discern.</i> |
| tum, 3.                              |                        |

|                                                |                       |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| oōhortor, ātus, 1. <i>I encourage.</i>         |                       |
| *confido, isus                                 | <i>I trust.</i>       |
| sum, 3.                                        |                       |
| dēterreo, ti, itum, <i>I frighten, de-</i>     |                       |
| 2.                                             | <i>ter.</i>           |
| *diffido, isus sum, <i>I distrust.</i>         |                       |
| 3.                                             |                       |
| dimitto, misi, mis-                            | <i>I let go, dis-</i> |
| sum, 3. <i>miss.</i>                           |                       |
| ēnarro, āvi, ātum, 1. <i>I relate.</i>         |                       |
| ēnitor, nisus and <i>I strive hard.</i>        |                       |
| nixus, 3.                                      |                       |
| exclāmo, āvi, ātum, <i>I cry out.</i>          |                       |
| 1.                                             |                       |
| intrōdo, ivi & ii, <i>I enter.</i>             |                       |
| itum, 4.                                       |                       |
| nitor, nisus & nixus, <i>I strive.</i>         |                       |
| 3.                                             |                       |
| *obsto, stiti, sti-                            | <i>I oppose, pre-</i> |
| tum, 1. <i>vent.</i>                           |                       |
| opprīmo, pressi, <i>I press upon,</i>          |                       |
| pressum, 3. <i>overwhelm,</i>                  |                       |
|                                                | <i>crush.</i>         |
| *persuādō, āsi, <i>I persuade.</i>             |                       |
| āsum, 2.                                       |                       |
| praevēnio, vēni, <i>I anticipate.</i>          |                       |
| ventum, 4.                                     |                       |
| prēmo, pressi, <i>I press.</i>                 |                       |
| pressum, 3.                                    |                       |
| prōhibēo, ti, itum, <i>I keep off, pro-</i>    |                       |
| 2. <i>hibit.</i>                               |                       |
| rēcūso, āvi, ātum, 1. <i>I object, refuse.</i> |                       |
| spēro, āvi, ātum, 1. <i>I hope.</i>            |                       |
| sto, stēti, stātum, 1. <i>I stand.</i>         |                       |
| *suādeo, āsi, āsum, <i>I advise.</i>           |                       |
| 2.                                             |                       |
| tēneo, ti, tentum, 2. <i>I hold, retain.</i>   |                       |
| transdūco, duxi, <i>I lead across.</i>         |                       |
| ductum, 3.                                     |                       |
| ventīto, āvi, ātum, <i>I come fre-</i>         |                       |
| 1. <i>quently.</i>                             |                       |
| * With Dative.                                 |                       |
| Bībūlus, i, m. <i>Bibulus, a Ro-</i>           |                       |
|                                                | <i>man.</i>           |
| fōrum, i, n. <i>market-place,</i>              |                       |
|                                                | <i>forum.</i>         |
| impēritus, a, um, <i>unskilful.</i>            |                       |
| impransus, a, um, <i>unbreakfasted.</i>        |                       |
| infirmītas, ātis, f. <i>weakness.</i>          |                       |
| latro, ōnis, m. <i>a robber.</i>               |                       |
| lūdus, i, m. <i>play, game,</i>                |                       |
|                                                | <i>school.</i>        |

magnōpērē, *adv.* greatly, earnestly.  
 mīrus, a, um, wonderful.  
 mōdus, i, m. a measure, manner.  
 moenīa, ium, n. pl. fortifications.  
 Nervīi, ōrum, m. pl. the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.  
 praealtus, a, um, very high.  
 Satrius, ii, m. Satrius, a Roman.  
 signum, i, n. a sign, signal.  
 Trēbōnīus, ii, m. Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

## Phrases:—

Sēquitur (with acc. and inf. or ut and subj.), it follows. Fācērē nōn possum quin, I cannot but. Per me (te) stētīt (quōmīnus), it was owing to me or you (that something did not happen). Mīnīmū ābest quin sim, very little is wanting that I should be; I am very near being.

## Vocabulary 58.

āquor, ātus, 1. I fetch water.  
 bello, āvi, ātum, 1. I wage war.  
 consūlo, stūlī, sul- I consult.  
 tum, 3.  
 convēnio, vēni, I assemble.  
 ventum, 4.  
 gusto, āvi, ātum, 1. I taste.  
 pābulor, ātus, 1. I forage.  
 postūlo, āvi, ātum, I demand.  
 1.  
 progrēdior, gressus, 3. I advance.

Aedūi, ōrum, m. the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.  
 pl.  
 Āgēsīlāus, i, m. Agesilaus, a king of Sparta.  
 Divitiācus, i, m. Divitiacus, a Gaul.  
 Fābius, ii, m. Fabius, a Roman name.  
 Lācēdaemōnii, ōrum, m. pl. the Lacedaemonians.  
 longius, *adv.* farther, too far. (comp.)  
 lūdi, ōrum, m. pl. games.

Maxīmus, i, m. Maximus, (the greatest,) a surname of Fabius.  
 nēfās, indec. n. wickedness, impiety.  
 ōpūs, indec. n. need, necessity.  
 publicus, a, um, public.  
 Vēientes, um, m. the people of pl. Veii, near Rome.  
 quisnam, quānam, etc., like who, what?  
 quis,

## Phrases:—

Nēfās est, it is or would be an impiety.  
 Ōpūs est, there is need of (with abl.).

## Vocabulary 59.

āctio, tui, ūtum, 3. I sharpen.  
 ālo, tui, itum and I nourish.  
 altum, 3.  
 ardēo, arsi, arsum, I burn, am on 2. fire.  
 cōgito, āvi, ātum, I think, meditate.  
 1.  
 collōquor, cūtus, 3. I converse.  
 compāro, āvi, ātum, I get together.  
 1.  
 ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3. I eat.  
 vēnor, ātus, 1. I hunt.

bēātē, *adv.* happily.  
 grātīa, ae, f. favour.  
 grātīa, abl. for the sake of.  
 haud, *adv.* not.  
 libērē, *adv.* freely.  
 mārīnus, a, um, of the sea.  
 ōpēra, ae, f. pains, labour.  
 plūs, ūris, *adj.* n. in sing.; in pl. plūres, -a. (See p. 25.) } more.  
 stūdiōsus, a, um, zealous, eager after.

## Phrases:—

Ōpēram dārē, to give one's whole energies to anything; to devote oneself to it. Intēr bibendum, &c., whilst drinking, &c.

## Vocabulary 60.

adhībō, ti, itum, *I employ.*

2.

obseruo, āvi, ātum, *I observe, re-*  
*spect.*

1.

prōvidēo, vīdi, *I foresee, pro-*  
visum, 2. *vide.*

—

ardūus, a, um, *lofty, steep,*  
*difficult.*

Phrase:—

Agere aetatem, *to spend one's life.*

## Vocabulary 61.

ingredior, gressus, *I enter.*

3.

intercludo, si, sum, *I shut off, inter-*  
cept.

3.

obtempéro, āvi, *I obey, comply*  
ātum, 1. *with.*

—

commētus, ūs, m. *provisions, sup-*  
*plies.*commilito, ōnis, m. *a fellow-soldier,*  
*comrade.*istūc, adv. (*from to-that-place*  
*iste*) *(where you are).*iudicium, ii, n. *judgment.*  
paratus, a, um, *prepared, ready.*  
quisque, quaque, *every one.*  
quodque & quid-  
que, pron.  
quō, adv. *whither.*

Phrase:—

Fieri de aliquo, *to become of one; an,*  
quid factum est de illo, *what has become of*  
*that man?*

## Vocabulary 62.

concedo, cessi, ces- *I yield, retire.*  
sum, 3.incendo, di, sum, *I burn (trans.).*  
3.percipio, cēpi, *I perceive.*  
ceptum, 3.

—

affectus, a, um, *made, disposed.*  
Brutus, i, m. *Brutus, a Ro-*  
*man.*Cassius, ii, m. *Cassius, a Ro-*  
*man.*Campānia, ae, f. *Campania, a*  
*part of Italy.*occupatus, a, um, *engaged, busy.*  
quāsi, adv. *as if.*

Phrases:—

Consilium inire, *to enter on, form, a*  
*design.* In spem venire, *to conceive a hope.*

## INDEX I. TO VOCABULARIES.

## LATIN WORDS.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

|                   |   |                |                |   |                      |
|-------------------|---|----------------|----------------|---|----------------------|
| <i>abl.</i>       | = | ablative.      | <i>interj.</i> | = | interjection.        |
| <i>acc.</i>       | = | accusative.    | <i>inter.</i>  | = | interrogative.       |
| <i>adj.</i>       | = | adjective.     | <i>irr.</i>    | = | irregular.           |
| <i>adv.</i>       | = | adverb.        | <i>m.</i>      | = | masculine.           |
| <i>c. or com.</i> | = | common gender. | <i>n.</i>      | = | neuter.              |
| <i>comp.</i>      | = | comparative.   | <i>p.</i>      | = | page.                |
| <i>conj.</i>      | = | conjunction.   | <i>part.</i>   | = | participle.          |
| <i>dat.</i>       | = | dative.        | <i>pl.</i>     | = | plural.              |
| <i>dep.</i>       | = | deponent.      | <i>prep.</i>   | = | preposition.         |
| <i>f.</i>         | = | feminine.      | <i>pron.</i>   | = | pronoun, pronominal. |
| <i>freq.</i>      | = | frequentative. | <i>rel.</i>    | = | relative.            |
| <i>gen.</i>       | = | genitive.      | <i>sing.</i>   | = | singular.            |
| <i>inaccp.</i>    | = | inceptive.     | <i>sup.</i>    | = | superlative.         |
| <i>indecl.</i>    | = | indeclinable.  | <i>v.</i>      | = | verb.                |
| <i>indef.</i>     | = | indefinite.    |                |   |                      |

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the conjugation of a verb.

| A.                                                                    | ABRUMNA.                                                                       | ALIUS.                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>A</b>                                                              | <b>ĀĀĀ.</b> II, Āum, 4, to go to.                                              | <b>Aeschines,</b> is, m., <i>Aeschines, an orator.</i>                          |
| <b>āb</b> (Ā, abs), <i>prep.</i> with <i>abl.</i> , from, by.         | <b>ābībō,</b> āi, Āum, 2, I <i>employ.</i>                                     | <b>aestas,</b> ātis, f., <i>summer.</i>                                         |
| <b>ābō,</b> II, Āum, ire, 4, to go away.                              | <b>ābhortor,</b> ātus, 1, v. <i>dep.</i> , I urge, exhort.                     | <b>aestas,</b> ātis, f., <i>age, time of life.</i>                              |
| <b>ābfīcō,</b> jēci, jectum, 3, I cast away.                          | <b>ābfīscor,</b> eptus, 3, v. <i>dep.</i> , I acquire, attain to.              | <b>asterus,</b> a, um, <i>adj.</i> , eternal.                                   |
| <b>ābum,</b> ābfui, ābese, I am absent.                               | <b>ābfīvo,</b> jāvi, jātum, 1, I assist.                                       | <b>affectus,</b> a, um, <i>part.</i> , made, disposed.                          |
| <b>ābfūmo,</b> mpsi, mptum, 3, I consume, cut off.                    | <b>ābfīror,</b> ātus, 1, v. <i>dep.</i> , I wonder at, I admire.               | <b>affero,</b> attuli, allātum, afferē, v. <i>irr.</i> , I bring to.            |
| <b>ābsurdus,</b> a, um, <i>adj.</i> , absurd.                         | <b>ābfūm,</b> ābfui, ābese, I am present, stand by, side with.                 | <b>affigo,</b> lixi, lictum, 3, I cast down, prostrate.                         |
| <b>ābfūtor,</b> ātus, 3, v. <i>dep.</i> , I abuse.                    | <b>ābfūlātio,</b> ātis, f., <i>flattery.</i>                                   | <b>Africānus,</b> i, m., <i>Africanus, a surname of the Scipios.</i>            |
| <b>āccōdo,</b> cessi, cēsum, 2, I approach.                           | <b>ābfūlo,</b> vēni, ventum, 4, I arrive.                                      | <b>ager,</b> gri, m., <i>a field, land.</i>                                     |
| <b>āccīdo,</b> idi (no <i>supine</i> ), 3, n. v., to happen.          | <b>ābfūto,</b> āvi, ātum, 1, v. <i>freq.</i> , I am on the point of arriving.  | <b>Agellānus,</b> i, m., <i>Agellanus, a king of Sparta.</i>                    |
| <b>āccīpio,</b> cēpi, ceptum, 3, I receive.                           | <b>ābfūtus,</b> ātis, m., <i>arrival.</i>                                      | <b>agger,</b> ēris, m., <i>a mound.</i>                                         |
| <b>ācer,</b> cris, cre, <i>adj.</i> , keen, sharp.                    | <b>ābfūsus</b> or <b>ūm,</b> <i>prep.</i> with <i>acc.</i> , towards, against. | <b>āgo,</b> ēgi, actum, 3, I lead, act, do. Agere aetatem, to spend one's life. |
| <b>ācies,</b> ēi, f., <i>a line of battle.</i>                        | <b>ābfūcium,</b> īi, n., <i>a building.</i>                                    | <b>agrieōla,</b> ae, m., <i>a husbandman.</i>                                   |
| <b>ācō,</b> āi, ātum, 3, I sharpen.                                   | <b>ābfūleo,</b> āvi, ātum, 1, I build.                                         | <b>āla,</b> ae, f., <i>a wing.</i>                                              |
| <b>ācus,</b> āis, f., <i>a needle.</i>                                | <b>ābfūli,</b> ōrum, m. <i>pl.</i> , the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.                | <b>albus,</b> a, um, <i>adj.</i> , white.                                       |
| <b>āctus,</b> a, um, <i>adj.</i> , sharp.                             | <b>āger,</b> gra, grum, <i>adj.</i> , sick.                                    | <b>Alcibiādes,</b> is, m., <i>Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian.</i>            |
| <b>ād,</b> <i>prep.</i> with <i>acc.</i> , to, at, near.              | <b>āgyptus,</b> i, f., <i>Egypt.</i>                                           | <b>Alexander,</b> dri, m., <i>Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia.</i>        |
| <b>ādictus,</b> a, um, <i>part.</i> , devoted.                        | <b>āquus,</b> a, um, <i>adj.</i> , level, even, just.                          | <b>āliquando,</b> <i>adv.</i> , sometimes.                                      |
| <b>āddico,</b> āddīci (no <i>supine</i> ), 3, I learn in addition to. | <b>āer,</b> āeria, m., <i>the air.</i>                                         | <b>āliquis,</b> quid, <i>pron.</i> , some one, something.                       |
|                                                                       | <b>āerumna,</b> ae, f., <i>trouble, affliction.</i>                            | <b>ālius,</b> a, ud, <i>irr. adj.</i>                                           |

ALLOQUOR.

one of any number, one, another.

alloquor, locutus, 3, v. dep., I speak to.

alo, alii, altum and altum, 3, I nourish.

Alpes, lum, m. pl., the Alps.

alter, tēra, tērum, adj. (gen. sing. ius, dat. i), one of two, the other, second.

altus, a, um, adj., high, deep.

amabilis, e, adj., lovely.

ambulo, āvi, ātum, i, I walk.

amicitia, ae, f., friendship.

amicus, i, m., a friend.

amor, ōris, m., love.

angustus, a, um, adj., narrow.

animadverto, ti, sum, 3, I observe.

animal, alia, n., an animal.

animus, i, m., mind, the soul, courage, temper, the feelings.

annus, i, m., a year.

ante, prep. with acc., before.

antepōno, pōnē, pōnitum, 3, I prefer.

Antiochus, i, m., Antiochus, a name of several kings of Syria.

antiquus, a, um, adj., ancient.

Apollo, Inis, m., Apollo, a Roman divinity.

Apollonia, ae, f., Apollonia, a town in Epirus.

apud, prep. with acc., at, near.

aqua, ae, f., water.

aquila, ae, f., an eagle.

aquor, ātus, i, v. dep., I fetch water.

Arbela, ae, f., Arbela, a town in Assyria.

arbor, ōris, f., a tree.

arcus, ūs, m., a bow.

arcus coelestis, m., a rainbow.

ardē, arē, sum, 2, I burn, am on fire.

ardens, a, um, adj., lofty, steep, difficult.

argentum, i, n., silver.

Ariovistus, i, m., Ariovistus, a German king.

Aristides, in, m., Aristides, a noble Athenian.

Pr. L. I.

BENEVOLUS.

arma, ōrum, n. pl., arms.

Arpinum, i, n., Arpinum, a town in Latium.

ars, artia, f., art, handicraft.

arx, arcia, f., a citadel.

Asia, ae, f., Asia.

asper, ōra, ōrum, adj., rough, rugged.

aspernor, ātus, i, v. dep., I reject, despise.

āter, ātra, ātrum, adj., black.

Āthēnae, ōrum, f. pl., Athens.

Āthēniensis, e, adj., Athenian.

atque, ac, conj., and.

atrox, ōia, adj., stern, sanguinary, cruel.

attēns, adv., attentively.

attentus, a, um, adj., attentive.

authoritas, ātia, f., authority.

autumnus, i, m., autumn.

audacter, adv., boldly, daringly.

audax, ōia, adj., bold.

audē, ausus sum, audēre, 2, I dare, venture.

auditus, ūs, m., a hearing.

aufero, abetōli, ablatum, auferre, I carry away.

Augustus, i, m., Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.

aureus, a, um, adj., golden.

auris, is, f., an ear.

aurum, i, n., gold.

autem, conj., but (placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs).

auxilium, i, n., help, aid.

avis, is, f., bird.

avus, i, m., a grandfather.

B

Babylon, ōnis, f., Babylon, a city of Assyria.

balaena, ae, f., a whale.

beate, adv., happily.

beatus, a, um, adj., happy.

bellicosus, a, um, adj., warlike.

bello, āvi, ātum, i, I wage war.

bellus, ae, f., a great beast.

bellum, i, n., war.

bene, adv., well.

benevolus, a, um, adj., well-wishing, benevolent.

CASTRA.

bēnigns, adv., kindly.

benignus, a, um, adj., kind.

bestia, ae, f., a beast.

bestiola, ae, f., a small animal, insect.

bibo, bibi, bibitum, 3, I drink.

Bibulus, i, m., Bibulus, a Roman.

Blaesus, i, m., Blaesus, a Roman.

blandior, itus, with dat., a, v. dep., I flatter, win upon.

bona, ōrum, n. pl., goods.

bonum, i, n., a good.

bonus, a, um, adj., good.

brevis, e, adj., short.

Britannia, ae, f., Britain.

Brutus, i, m., Brutus, a Roman.

C

cado, cecidi, cecsum, 3, I fall.

caecus, a, um, adj., blind.

Caesar, āria, m., Caesar, a famous Roman.

Calus (C.), Caius, a Roman praenomen.

calcar, āria, n., a spur.

calor, ōris, m., heat.

Camillus, i, m., Camillus, a Roman general.

Campania, ae, f., Campania, a part of Italy.

campus, i, m., a plain.

canis, is, e, a dog.

Cannae, ōrum, f. pl., Cannae, a village in Apulia.

canto, āvi, ātum, i, I sing.

caput, ūs, m., a head.

carmin, Inis, n., a song.

caro, carnis, f., flesh.

Carthaginiensis, e, adj., Carthaginian.

Carthago, Inis, f., Carthage, a city of Africa.

carus, a, um, adj., dear.

caseus, i, m., cheese.

Cassius, i, m., Cassius, a Roman.

Cassivelaunus, i, m., Cassivelaunus, a British chief.

castigo, āvi, ātum, i, I chastise.

castra, ōrum, n. pl., a camp.

L

| CASUS.                                                                      | COESTAT.                                                                                   | CUPIDITAS.                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>cāsus</b> , ūs, m., chance, accident.                                    | <b>cōgito</b> , ūi, ūtum, 1, <i>I think, meditate.</i>                                     | <b>constitutio</b> , ūi, ūtum, 3, <i>I settle, determine.</i>                  |
| <b>Catīlina</b> , ae, m., Catiline, a conspirator.                          | <b>cognitio</b> , ōnis, f., knowledge.                                                     | <b>consuetudo</b> , ūnis, f., habit.                                           |
| <b>Cāto</b> , ōnis, m., Cato, a noble Roman.                                | <b>cognosco</b> , nōvi, nītum, 3, <i>I learn, ascertain.</i>                               | <b>consul</b> , ūlis, m., a consul.                                            |
| <b>causa</b> , ae, f., a cause. In abl., on account of.                     | <b>cōhor</b> , tis, f., a cohort:                                                          | <b>consulatus</b> , ūs, m., office of consul, consulate.                       |
| <b>cautus</b> , a, um, adj. and part., cautious, secured.                   | <b>cōhortor</b> , ūtus, 1, v. dep., <i>I encourage.</i>                                    | <b>consūlo</b> , lūi, ūtum, 3, <i>I consult.</i>                               |
| <b>cēdo</b> , cessi, cessum, 3, <i>I yield, retire.</i>                     | <b>collōquor</b> , cūtus, 3, v. dep., <i>I converse.</i>                                   | <b>consumo</b> , sumpsi, sump-tum, 3, <i>I consume, waste away.</i>            |
| <b>cēler</b> , ēris, ēre, adj., swift.                                      | <b>cōlo</b> , cōlūi, cultum, 3, <i>I cultivate, cherish, dwell.</i>                        | <b>contemno</b> , tempel, temp-tum, 3, <i>I despise.</i>                       |
| <b>celsus</b> , a, um, adj., lofty, tall.                                   | <b>cōlōnia</b> , ae, f., a colony.                                                         | <b>contemplor</b> , ūtus, 1, v. dep., <i>I observe carefully, contemplate.</i> |
| <b>centūria</b> , ae, f., a century.                                        | <b>cōlor</b> , ūris, m., colour.                                                           | <b>contendo</b> , di, sum and tum, 3, <i>I strain, hasten.</i>                 |
| <b>cērasum</b> , i, n., a cherry.                                           | <b>columba</b> , ae, f., a dove.                                                           | <b>contentus</b> , a, um, adj., contented.                                     |
| <b>cērasus</b> , i, f., the cherry-tree.                                    | <b>cōmes</b> , itis, com., a companion.                                                    | <b>continēo</b> , ūi, tentum, 2, <i>I hold together.</i>                       |
| <b>cerno</b> , crēvi, crētum, 3, <i>I see, discern.</i>                     | <b>cōmitor</b> , ūtus, 1, v. dep., <i>I accompany.</i>                                     | <b>contrā</b> , prep. with acc., against, contrary to.                         |
| <b>certus</b> , a, um, adj., certain.                                       | <b>commēstus</b> , ūs, m., provisions, supplies.                                           | <b>contrāho</b> , traxi, tractum, 3, <i>I draw together.</i>                   |
| <b>cervus</b> , i, m., a stag.                                              | <b>commilito</b> , ōnis, m., fellow-soldier, comrade.                                      | <b>convēnio</b> , vēni, ventum, 4, <i>I assemble.</i>                          |
| <b>cēteri</b> (caet.), cēterae, cē-terā, adj. pl., the rest.                | <b>committo</b> , misi, missum, 3, <i>I send together, join (fight) battle.</i>            | <b>convoco</b> , ūvi, ūtum, 1, <i>I call together.</i>                         |
| <b>Chaeirēphōn</b> , ōnis, m., Chaerephon, a disciple of So-crates.         | <b>compāro</b> , ūvi, ūtum, 1, <i>I get together.</i>                                      | <b>cōpia</b> , ae, f., plenty.                                                 |
| <b>Cicēro</b> , ōnis, m., Cicero, a celebrated Roman orator.                | <b>comprēhendo</b> , di, sum, 3, <i>I seize.</i>                                           | <b>cōpias</b> , ūrum, f. pl., forces.                                          |
| <b>Cimbri</b> , ūrum, m. pl., the Cimbrians, a formidable Cel-tic tribe.    | <b>concedo</b> , cessi, cessum, 3, <i>I yield, retire.</i>                                 | <b>cōr</b> , cordis, n., the heart.                                            |
| <b>cingo</b> , xxi, nctum, 3, <i>I sur-round.</i>                           | <b>confēro</b> , tūli, collātum, conferre, 3, v. irr., <i>I bring to-gether, betake.</i>   | <b>cōram</b> , prep. with abl., in the presence of.                            |
| <b>circā</b> , circum, prep. with acc., around.                             | <b>confido</b> , feci, factum, 3, <i>I finish, accomplish.</i>                             | <b>Cōrinthūs</b> , i, f., Corinth.                                             |
| <b>circitēr</b> , prep. with acc., about.                                   | <b>confido</b> , Isus sum, 3, with dat., <i>I trust.</i>                                   | <b>Cornēlia</b> , ae, f., Cornelia, a Roman matron.                            |
| <b>cis</b> , citrā, prep. with acc., on this side of.                       | <b>confitēor</b> , fessus, 2, v. dep., <i>I confess.</i>                                   | <b>cornu</b> , ūs, n., a horn.                                                 |
| <b>civilis</b> , e, adj., belonging to a citizen, civil.                    | <b>confugio</b> , fugi, 3, <i>I flee to.</i>                                               | <b>cōrona</b> , ae, f., a crown.                                               |
| <b>civis</b> , is, com., a citizen.                                         | <b>conficio</b> , jeci, jectum, 3, <i>I fling (together).</i>                              | <b>corpus</b> , ūris, n., a body.                                              |
| <b>civitas</b> , tātis, f., the state, citizenship.                         | <b>coniuratio</b> , ōnis, f., a conspiracy.                                                | <b>corrigo</b> , rexi, rectum, 3, <i>I correct.</i>                            |
| <b>clādes</b> , is, f., slaughter.                                          | <b>Conon</b> , ōnis, m., Conon, an Athenian general.                                       | <b>crēātor</b> , ūris, m., a creator.                                          |
| <b>clam</b> , prep. with acc. or abl., secretly, without the knowl-edge of. | <b>cōnor</b> , ūtus, 1, v. dep., <i>I attempt.</i>                                         | <b>crēdibilis</b> , e, adj., credible.                                         |
| <b>clāmor</b> , ūris, m., a shout.                                          | <b>conscendo</b> , di, sum, 3, <i>I mount, go on board (ship).</i>                         | <b>crēdo</b> , didi, ditum, 3, <i>I be-lieve.</i>                              |
| <b>clārus</b> , a, um, adj., clear, renowned.                               | <b>conscientia</b> , ae, f., con-science.                                                  | <b>crēo</b> , ūvi, ūtum, 1, <i>I create, make.</i>                             |
| <b>classis</b> , is, f., a fleet.                                           | <b>consentio</b> , nsi, nsum, 4, <i>I agree.</i>                                           | <b>Crēta</b> , ae, f., Crete, an island of Greece.                             |
| <b>coelestis</b> , e, adj., belonging to the heavens.                       | <b>conserve</b> , ūvi, ūtum, 1, <i>I preserve, maintain.</i>                               | <b>Croesus</b> , i, m., Croesus, a king of Lydia.                              |
| <b>coelum</b> , i, n., heaven.                                              | <b>consillium</b> , i, n., plan, counsel.                                                  | <b>cruciatūs</b> , ūs, m., tor-ture.                                           |
| <b>coeno</b> , ūvi and ūtus sum, 1, <i>I sup, dine.</i> See p. 85.          | <b>constat</b> , stitit, 1, <i>impers. v., it is evident, it is agreed, it is certain.</i> | <b>crūdēlis</b> , e, adj., cruel.                                              |
| <b>cōeo</b> , ūvi or ūi, ūtum, 4, <i>I join together.</i>                   |                                                                                            | <b>crūs</b> , crūris, n., a leg.                                               |
| <b>cōerēo</b> , ūi, ūtum, 2, <i>I re-strain, curb.</i>                      |                                                                                            | <b>culpa</b> , ae, f., blame, fault.                                           |

## CUPPIO.

**cūpio**, *ivi* or *ii*, *Itum*, 3, *I desire*.  
**cūr**, *adv.*, *why*.  
**cūro**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, *I take care, pains*.  
**curro**, *cūcurri*, *cursum*, 3, *I run*.  
**currus**, *ūs*, *m.*, a chariot.  
**cursus**, *ūs*, *m.*, running.  
**custodio**, *ivi*, *Itum*, 4, *I guard, keep guard*.  
**custos**, *custōdis*, *c.*, a guardian.  
**Cyprus**, *i, f.*, Cyprus, an island off Cilicia.

## D

**Darius**, *i, m.*, Darius, a king of Persia.  
**dē**, *prep.* with *abl.*, down from, concerning.  
**dēa**, *ae, f.*, a goddess.  
**dēbeo**, *ūi*, *Itum*, 2, *I owe, ought*.  
**dēbilis**, *e, adj.*, feeble.  
**dēcēt**, *dēcūt*, *dēcēre*, 2, *impers. v.*, it is seemly, becoming.  
**dēcipio**, *cēpi*, *ceptum*, 3, *I receive*.  
**dēcus**, *ōris*, *n.*, an ornament.  
**dēdēcēt**, *dēcūt*, *dēcēre*, 2, *v. impers.*, it is unseemly, unbecoming.  
**dēfendo**, *di*, *sum*, 3, *I defend*.  
**dēfiagro**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, to be burnt down.  
**dēlecto**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, *I delight, amuse*.  
**dēlectus**, *ūs*, *m.*, a levy.  
**dēleo**, *ēvi*, *Itum*, 2, *I destroy*.  
**Dēlōs**, *i, f.*, Delos, an island of Greece.  
**Delphi**, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*, Delphi, a city in Greece.  
**Dēmōsthēnēs**, *is*, *m.*, Demosthenes, the famous Athenian orator.  
**dēmum**, *adv.*, indeed.  
**dēplōro**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, *I lament over, deplore*.  
**dēsēro**, *ūi*, *tum*, 3, *I abandon*.  
**dēsūm**, *fui*, *esse*, with *dat.*, I am wanting.  
**dētēgo**, *texi*, *tectum*, 3, *I discover*.  
**dētērrēo**, *ūi*, *Itum*, 2, *I frighten, deter*.

## DUM.

**Dēus**, *i, m.*, God.  
**Diana**, *ae, f.*, Diana, a goddess.  
**dico**, *dixi*, *dictum*, 3, *I say, speak*.  
**dies**, *ei, m.* and *f.*, day.  
**difficilis**, *e, adj.*, difficult.  
**diffido**, *leus sum*, 3, with *dat.*, I distrust.  
**diligens**, *ntis*, *adj.*, diligent, careful.  
**diligenter**, *adv.*, carefully.  
**diligentia**, *ae, f.*, diligence.  
**diligentiissimē**, *adv.*, most carefully.  
**diligo**, *lexi*, *lectum*, 3, *I esteem, love*.  
**dimico**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, *I fight (a battle)*.  
**dimitto**, *missi*, *missum*, 3, *I let go, dismiss*.  
**Dionysius**, *ii, m.*, Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse.  
**diripio**, *ripui*, *reptum*, 3, *I plunder, pillage*.  
**discipulus**, *i, m.*, a pupil, scholar.  
**disco**, *didici*, 3, *I learn*.  
**displeo**, *ui*, *Itum* (with *dat.*), 2, *I displease*.  
**dissimilis**, *e, adj.*, unlike. See p. 25.  
**dīu**, *adv.*, a long time.  
**dives**, *itis*, *adj.*, rich.  
**divido**, *vi*, *visum*, 3, *I divide, separate*.  
**divinus**, *a, um, adj.*, belonging to the Gods, divine.  
**Divitiācus**, *i, m.*, Divitiacus, a Gaul.  
**divitiāe**, *arum*, *f. pl.*, riches.  
**do**, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *dāre*, 1, *I give*.  
**dōcēo**, *ui*, *tum*, 2, *I teach*.  
**doctus**, *a, um, adj.*, learned.  
**dolor**, *ōris*, *m.*, pain, grief.  
**domicilium**, *ii, n.*, an abode.  
**dōmina**, *ae, f.*, a mistress.  
**dōminātus**, *ūs*, *m.*, rule, sovereignty.  
**dōminus**, *i, m.*, a lord, master.  
**dōnum**, *i, n.*, a gift.  
**dormio**, *ivi*, *Itum*, 4, *I sleep*.  
**dubito**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, *I doubt*.  
**dubius**, *a, um, adj.*, doubtful.  
**dūco**, *duxi*, *ductum*, 3, *I lead*.  
**dulcis**, *e, adj.*, sweet.  
**dum**, *adv.*, while.

## EXCEDO.

**dūrus**, *a, um, adj.*, hard.  
**dux**, *dūcis*, *com.*, a leader, general.  
**Dyrrachium**, *ii, n.*, Dyrrachium, a town in Epirus.

## E

**ē**, *ex*, *prep.* with *abl.*, out of, from.  
**ēdo**, *ēdi*, *ēsum*, 3, *I eat*.  
**ēdūco**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, *I educate*.  
**ēdūco**, *duxi*, *ductum*, 3, *I lead out*.  
**effero**, *extāli*, *ēlātum*, *efferrē*, 3, *v. irr.*, I carry out.  
**effloresco**, *flōrui*, 3, *I blossom forth*.  
**ēgregius**, *a, um, adj.*, excellent, eminent.  
**ēileio**, *ēci*, *jectum*, 3, *I cast forth*.  
**ēlegans**, *antis*, *adj.*, elegant, exquisite.  
**ēlephantus**, *i, m.*, an elephant.  
**ēloquens**, *entis*, *adj.*, eloquent.  
**ēmendo**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, *I improve*.  
**ēmigro**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, *I depart from*.  
**ēmo**, *ēmi*, *emptum*, 3, *I buy*.  
**ēmaro**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, *I relate*.  
**ēmītor**, *nīsus* or *nīxus*, 3, *v. dep.*, I strive hard.  
**Epaminondas**, *ae, m.*, Epaminondas, a famous Theban.  
**ēques**, *itis*, *m.*, a horse-soldier.  
**ēquitātus**, *ūs*, *m.*, cavalry.  
**ēquus**, *i, m.*, a horse.  
**ergā**, *prep.* with *acc.*, towards (only of the feelings).  
**erro**, *avi*, *Itum*, 1, *I err, make a mistake*.  
**ērūdīo**, *ivi* or *ii*, *Itum*, 4, *I train up, educate*.  
**ērūdītus**, *a, um, adj.*, trained, educated.  
**ētiā**, *conj.*, also, even.  
**Euripides**, *is*, *m.*, Euripides, an Athenian tragic poet.  
**Eurōpa**, *ae, f.*, Europe.  
**ēvenio**, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4, *I happen*.  
**ex** or **ē**, *prep.* with *abl.*, out of, from.  
**exēdo**, *cessi*, *cessum*, 3, *I go out, depart from*.

| EXCLAMO.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | GAUDEO.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | HIEMS.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>exclāmo</b>, āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I cry out.</i><br/><b>excolō</b>, cōlāi, cultum, 2, <i>I cultivate carefully.</i><br/><b>exemplum</b>, i, n., an example.<br/><b>exēō</b>, īvi or īi, itum, 4, <i>I go out.</i><br/><b>exerco</b>, ūi, itum, 2, <i>I exercise.</i><br/><b>exercitus</b>, ūs, m., an army.<br/><b>exhilaro</b>, āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I cheer.</i><br/><b>exilium</b>, ii, n., banishment, exile.<br/><b>expello</b>, pūli, pulsum, 3, <i>I drive out.</i><br/><b>experior</b>, pertus, 4, v. dep., <i>I try, experience.</i><br/><b>expōno</b>, pōtāi, pōsitum, 3, <i>I put forth, disembark (troops).</i><br/><b>expugno</b>, āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I take by storm.</i><br/><b>extrūdo</b>, struxi, structum, 3, <i>I heap up.</i><br/><b>extra</b>, prep. with acc., outside of.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p><b>fringo</b>, fraxi, fectum, 3, <i>I frame, feign, invent.</i><br/><b>finio</b>, īvi, itum, 4, <i>I limit, put an end to.</i><br/><b>finis</b>, is, m., end, limit (in pl. territories).<br/><b>fio</b>, factus sum, fieri, 3, v. irr., <i>I become, am made.</i><br/><b>firmo</b>, āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I strengthen.</i><br/><b>firvus</b>, a, um, adj., strong.<br/><b>fleo</b>, flēvi, flētum, 2, <i>I weep.</i><br/><b>fio</b>, āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I blow.</i><br/><b>flōrens</b>, ntis, adj., flourishing.<br/><b>flōrō</b>, ūi, 2, <i>I bloom, flourish.</i><br/><b>flōs</b>, ōris, m., a flower.<br/><b>flumen</b>, inis, n., a current, river.<br/><b>fluo</b>, fluxi, fluxum, 3, <i>I flow.</i><br/><b>fluvius</b>, ii, m., a river.<br/><b>fodō</b>, fodi, fossum, fodere, 3, <i>I dig.</i><br/><b>fons</b>, ntis, m., a fountain.<br/><b>forte</b>, adv., by chance.<br/><b>fortis</b>, e, adj., strong, brave.<br/><b>fortissimē</b>, adv., very bravely.<br/><b>fortiter</b>, adv., bravely.<br/><b>fortuna</b>, ac, f., fortune.<br/><b>forum</b>, i, n., market-place, forum.<br/><b>fossa</b>, ac, f., a ditch.<br/><b>frāter</b>, tris, m., a brother.<br/><b>fraus</b>, fraudis, f., dishonesty.<br/><b>frigus</b>, ōris, n., cold.<br/><b>frons</b>, ntis, f., the forehead, brow.<br/><b>fructus</b>, ūs, m., fruit.<br/><b>fruges</b>, um, f. pl., fruits, a crop.<br/><b>fruos</b>, frūctus and fructus, 3, v. dep., <i>I enjoy.</i><br/><b>fugio</b>, fugi, fugitum, fugere, 3, <i>I flee, escape.</i><br/><b>fugo</b>, āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I put to flight.</i><br/><b>fulgeo</b>, fulsi, fulsum, 2, <i>I shine.</i><br/><b>fulgur</b>, ūris, n., lightning.<br/><b>fungor</b>, functus, 3, v. dep., <i>I discharge.</i><br/><b>funus</b>, ōris, m., a funeral.<br/><b>furo</b>, ōris, m., madness.</p> | <p><b>gaudium</b>, ii, n., joy.<br/><b>gēner</b>, ēri, m., a son-in-law.<br/><b>genu</b>, ūs, n., a knee.<br/><b>gēns</b>, ēris, n., a race, class.<br/><b>Germāni</b>, ōrum, m. pl., the Germans.<br/><b>gēro</b>, gēsi, gestum, 3, <i>I carry on, wage (war).</i><br/><b>gladius</b>, ii, m., a sword.<br/><b>glōria</b>, ac, f., glory.<br/><b>gnāviter</b>, adv., actively, vigorously.<br/><b>Gracchus</b>, i, m., Gracchus, a noble Roman.<br/><b>gracilis</b>, e, adj., thin.<br/><b>Gracīa</b>, ac, f., Greece.<br/><b>Gracius</b>, a, um, adj., Grecian, Greek.<br/><b>grāmen</b>, inis, n., grass.<br/><b>grandinat</b>, 1, v. impers., it hails.<br/><b>grātia</b>, abt. sing., for the sake of.<br/><b>grātus</b>, a, um, adj., pleasing.<br/><b>grāvis</b>, e, adj., heavy, severe.<br/><b>grāviter</b>, adv., heavily, severely.<br/><b>gusto</b>, āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I taste.</i></p> |
| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>F</b></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p style="text-align: center;"><b>H</b></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <p><b>Fābius</b>, ii, m., a Roman name.<br/><b>Fabriceius</b>, ii, m., Fabricius, a noble Roman.<br/><b>fabula</b>, ac, f., a fable, story.<br/><b>facies</b>, ei, f., countenance.<br/><b>facile</b>, adv., easily.<br/><b>facilis</b>, e, adj., easy.<br/><b>facinus</b>, ōris, n., a bold act, daring deed, crime.<br/><b>facio</b>, feci, factum, facere, 3, <i>I make.</i><br/><b>fāmes</b>, is, f., hunger.<br/><b>fātor</b>, fassus, 2, v. dep., <i>I confess.</i><br/><b>felicitē</b>, adv., luckily.<br/><b>felix</b>, icis, adj., fortunate, successful.<br/><b>fēmina</b>, ac, f., a woman.<br/><b>fērē</b>, adv., almost, commonly.<br/><b>fēro</b>, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. irreg., <i>I bear, carry, endure.</i><br/><b>ferox</b>, ōcis, adj., fierce, pirated.<br/><b>ferrum</b>, i, n., iron.<br/><b>figus</b>, ūs, f., a fig.<br/><b>fidēlis</b>, e, adj., faithful.<br/><b>fides</b>, ei, f., faith, fidelity.<br/><b>fido</b>, fisis sum, fidere, 3, v. n. (usu. with dat.), <i>I trust.</i><br/><b>fidus</b>, a, um, adj., faithful.<br/><b>filia</b>, ac, f., a daughter.<br/><b>filius</b>, ii, m., a son.</p> | <p style="text-align: center;"><b>G</b></p> <p><b>Gallia</b>, ac, f., Gaul.<br/><b>gaudeo</b>, gāvius sum, gaudere, 2, v. n., <i>I rejoice.</i> See p. 85.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p><b>hābo</b>, ūi, itum, 2, <i>I have.</i><br/><b>hābito</b>, āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I dwell.</i><br/><b>Hannibal</b>, ālis, m., Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general.<br/><b>Hanno</b>, ōnis, m., Hanno, a Carthaginian.<br/><b>Hasdrūbal</b>, ālis, m., Hasdrubal, the brother of Hannibal.<br/><b>hasta</b>, ac, f., a spear.<br/><b>haud</b>, adv., not.<br/><b>Hellespontus</b>, i, m., the Hellespont (now the Dardanelles).<br/><b>Helvetia</b>, ac, f., the country of the Helvetii (in Switzerland).<br/><b>Helvētius</b>, a, um, adj., Helvetian.<br/><b>hēri</b>, adv., yesterday.<br/><b>hiberna</b>, ōrum, n. pl., winter quarters.<br/><b>hibernus</b>, a, um, adj., of winter, wintry.<br/><b>hiēma</b>, hiēmis, f., winter.</p>                                                                                                                                                     |

## HIERO.

**hiemo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I winter*.  
**hilaris**, e, adj., *cheerful*.  
**Homerus**, i, m., *Homer, a Greek poet*.  
**homo**, inis, com., *a man, woman*.  
**honor**, ōris, m., *an honour*.  
**hora**, ae, f., *an hour*.  
**Hōrātius**, ii, m., *Horatius, a Roman poet*.  
**hortor**, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I urge, exhort, encourage*.  
**hortus**, i, m., *a garden*.  
**hostia**, ae, f., *a victim*.  
**hostis**, is, com., *an enemy, public enemy*.  
**humānus**, a, um, adj., *human*.  
**humilis**, e, adj., *low*. See p. 25.

## I

**ibi**, adv., *there*.  
**ignāvus**, adv., *indolently*.  
**ignāvia**, ae, f., *cowardice*.  
**ignēus**, a, um, adj., *fery, made of fire*.  
**ignorātio**, ōnis, f., *ignorance*.  
**imāgo**, inis, f., *a likeness, portrait, image*.  
**imitor**, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I imitate*.  
**immōlo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I sacrifice*.  
**immortālis**, e, adj., *immortal*.  
**immortālitas**, ātis, f., *immortality*.  
**impērator**, ōris, m., *a military commander, a general*.  
**impēritus**, a, um, adj., *unskilful*.  
**impērium**, ii, n., *empire*.  
**impēro**, āvi, ātum, 1, with dat., *I command*.  
**impētus**, ūs, m., *an attack, onset*.  
**impransus**, a, um, adj., *unbreakfasted*.  
**imprōbus**, a, um, adj., *dishonest, wicked*.  
**imprudentia**, ae, f., *ignorance, imprudence*.  
**in**, prep. with acc., *into*; with abl., *in*.  
**incendium**, ii, n., *a fire, conflagration*.  
**incendo**, di, sum, 3, *I set fire to, burn*.

## INTER.

**incertus**, a, um, adj., *uncertain*.  
**incipio**, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *I begin*.  
**incola**, ae, com., *an inhabitant*.  
**incuso**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I accuse, find fault with*.  
**Indi**, ōrum, m. pl., *Indians, people of India*.  
**indoctus**, a, um, adj., *unlearned*.  
**indulgēo**, dāsi, dultum, 2, with dat., *I indulge*.  
**industrius**, a, um, adj., *industrious, busy*.  
**inēo**, ii, itum, 4, *I go into, enter*.  
**inērs**, tis, adj., *helpless, sluggish*.  
**infāmia**, ae, f., *infamy*.  
**infāmis**, e, adj., *infamous*.  
**infectus**, a, um, adj., *undone*.  
**inferior**, ius, comp. of inferus, adj., *lower, inferior*.  
**infēro**, intāli, illātum, inferrē, 3, v. irr., *I carry into*.  
**infinītus**, a, um, adj., *unbounded, infinite*.  
**infirmitas**, ātis, f., *weakness*.  
**infirmus**, a, um, adj., *weak, infirm, feeble*. [low.]  
**infrā**, prep. with acc., *below, below, below*.  
**infringo**, frēgi, fractum, 3, *I break, impair*.  
**ingens**, entis, adj., *immense*.  
**ingrēdior**, gressus sum, 3, v. dep., *I enter*.  
**inimicitia**, ae, f., *enmity*.  
**inimicus**, a, um, adj., *unfriendly*.  
**initium**, ii, n., *a beginning*.  
**injūstus**, adv., *unjustly*.  
**injūstus**, a, um, adj., *unjust*.  
**innūmerus**, a, um, adj., *innumerable*.  
**inops**, ōpis, adj., *destitute*.  
**institūo**, ūi, ātum, 3, *I appoint, institute*.  
**instrumentum**, i, n., *an instrument*.  
**instruo**, xi, ctum, 3, *I arrange, draw up in order*.  
**insula**, ae, f., *an island*.  
**insum**, ūi, esse, v. irr., with dat., *I am in or upon*.  
**intelligo**, lexi, lectum, 3, *I understand*.  
**intēr**, prep. with acc., *between, among*.

## JUXTA.

**interfido**, ūsi, āsum, 3, *I shut off, intercept*.  
**interfio**, ii, itum, 4, *I perish*.  
**interficio**, feci, fectum, 3, *I put to death, kill*.  
**interitus**, ūs, m., *destruction*.  
**intersum**, ūi, esse, v. irreg., with dat., *I am among*.  
**intrā**, prep. with acc., *inside of, within*.  
**intro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I enter*.  
**intrōeo**, ii, itum, 4, *I go into, enter*.  
**intūdeor**, itus sum, 2, v. dep., *I look upon, into*.  
**intūmescō**, ūi, 3, v. incep., *I swell*.  
**invidia**, ae, f., *envy, ill-will*.  
**ira**, ae, f., *anger*.  
**irascor**, irātus, 3, v. dep., *I am angry*.  
**istūc**, adv., *to-that-place, thither (where you are)*.  
**itā**, adv., *in that way, thus*.  
**Itālia**, ae, f., *Italy*.  
**iter**, itinēris, n., *a journey*.

## J

**jāto**, ūi, itum, 2, *I lie*.  
**jācto**, jēci, jactum, 3, *I throw*.  
**jān**, adv., *now, already*.  
**jūbeo**, jussī, jussum, 2, *I order, bid*.  
**jūcundus**, a, um, adj., *pleasant*.  
**jūdex**, icis, com., *a judge*.  
**jūdicium**, ii, n., *judgment*.  
**jūdiceo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I judge*.  
**jungo**, junxi, junctum, 3, *I join*.  
**jūno**, ūnis, f., *Juno, a goddess*.  
**jūro**, āvi or ātus sum, 1, *I swear*. See p. 85.  
**jūs**, jūris, n., *right, law*.  
**jūstārandum**, jūstārandi, n., *an oath*.  
**jūstus**, adv., *justly*.  
**jūstus**, a, um, adj., *just*.  
**jūvenis**, is, com., *a young man or woman*.  
**jūventās**, ātis, f., *youth*.  
**juxta**, prep. with acc., *near, hard by, next to*.

## LARIENUS.

## L

**Labiēnus**, *i. m.*, Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**lābor**, *ōis, m.*, labour, hardship.

**lābor**, *lāpus, 3. v. dep.*, I glide, pass away, fall.

**lās**, *lactis, n.*, milk.

**Lācdāemon**, *ōis, f.*, Lacedaemon or Sparta.

**Lācdāemoniū**, *ōrum, m.*, the Lacedaemonians.

**lālo**, *lācēre, 3. i. imper.*, I entice (obsolete). See p. 120.

**lāsons**, *ūs, m.*, a lake.

**Laeca**, *ae, m.*, Laeca, a Roman.

**laetitia**, *ae, f.*, joy.

**laetus**, *a, um, adj.*, joyful.

**lāpis**, *idīs, m.*, a stone.

**lāpidēs**, *a, um, adj.*, of stone.

**lātē**, *adv.*, widely, wide.

**lātīnus**, *a, um, adj.*, Latin.

**Lātōna**, *ae, f.*, Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana.

**latro**, *ōis, m.*, a robber.

**lātus**, *a, um, adj.*, wide, broad.

**lando**, *avi, ātum, 1. i. praise.*

**laus**, *laudis, f.*, praise.

**lēgātus**, *i. m.*, ambassador, lieutenant.

**lēgiō**, *ōis, f.*, a legion.

**lēgo**, *lēgi, lectum, 3. i. gather, read.*

**lēo**, *ōis, m.*, a lion.

**Lēonidas**, *ae, m.*, Leonidas, a king of Sparta.

**lēpus**, *ōis, m.*, a hare.

**Lesbus**, *i. f.*, Lesbos, an island off Asia Minor.

**lēvis**, *e, adj.*, light.

**lex**, *lēgis, f.*, a law.

**liber**, *bri, m.*, a book.

**liber**, *ēra, ērum, adj.*, free.

**libēre**, *adv.*, freely.

**libērī**, *ōrum, m. pl.*, children.

**libēro**, *avi, ātum, 1. i. free, deliver.*

**libertas**, *ātis, f.*, freedom, liberty.

**libet**, *libēt and libitum est, libere, 2. v. imper.*, with dat., it pleases.

**Libya**, *ae, f.*, Africa.

**licet**, *licēt and licitum est, licēre, 2. v. imper.*, with dat., it is lawful, allowed.

## MAGNUS.

**Histor**, *ōis, m.*, a lictor.

**lingua**, *ae, f.*, tongue, language.

**liquet**, *liquēre, 2. v. imper.*, with dat., it is clear, evident.

**littera**, *ae, f.*, a letter of the alphabet.

**litterae**, *ērum, f. pl.*, letters, learning, also an epistle, letter.

**litus**, *ōis, n.*, a shore.

**Livius**, *il, m.*, Livy, a Roman historian.

**locus**, *i. m.*, a place (in pl. loci, single places; loca, places connected with one another, regions).

**longē**, *adv.*, far, far off.

**longinquitās**, *ātis, f.*, length, distance.

**longinquus**, *a, um, adj.*, long, distant.

**longius**, *adv. comp.*, farther, too far.

**longus**, *a, um, adj.*, long.

**loquor**, *lōcūtus, 3. v. dep.*, I speak.

**Lūcēria**, *ae, f.*, Luceria, a town in Apulia.

**lūcescit**, *(illuxit) lūcēscere, 3. v. imper.*, it becomes light.

**Lūcius**, *il, m.*, Lucius, a Roman fore-name.

**Lūcrētius**, *il, m.*, Lucretius, a Roman poet.

**lūdi**, *ōrum, m. pl.*, games.

**lūdo**, *lūai, lūsus, 3. i. play.*

**lūdus**, *i. m.*, play, game, school.

**lūna**, *ae, f.*, the moon.

**lusciniā**, *ae, f.*, nightingale.

**lux**, *lucis, f.*, light.

**Lycurgus**, *i. m.*, Lycurgus, the Spartan legislator.

## M

**Macedo**, *ōis, m.*, a Macedonian.

**māgis**, *adv. (sup. maxime)*, rather, in a higher degree.

**māgister**, *tri, m.*, a master, teacher.

**māgistrātus**, *ūs, m.*, a magistrate.

**magnificus**, *a, um, adj.*, magnificent.

**magnificē**, *earnestly.*

**magnōperē**, *adv.*, greatly.

**magnus**, *a, um, adj.*, great.

## MEUS.

**māiores**, *um, m. pl.*, ancestors.

**mālē**, *adv.*, comp. *pēius*, sup. *peccime*, badly, ill.

**mālōvōlus**, *a, um, adj.*, ill-wishing, malevolent.

**mālo**, *mālūi, mālī, irr. v.*, I am more willing, I prefer, have rather.

**mālum**, *i. n.*, an apple.

**mālum**, *i. n.*, an evil.

**mālus**, *i. f.*, an apple-tree.

**mālus**, *a, um, adj.*, bad, wicked, evil.

**mandātum**, *i. n.*, a charge, commission.

**mānēo**, *manai, mansum, 2. i. remain.*

**mānifestus**, *a, um, adj.*, evident, manifest.

**mānīpūlus**, *i. m.*, a mantle.

**mānus**, *ūs, f.*, a hand.

**Mārāthon**, *ōis, f.*, Marathon, a plain near Athens.

**māre**, *is, n.*, the sea.

**mārgārītā**, *ae, f.*, a pearl.

**mārinus**, *a, um, adj.*, of the sea.

**Mārius**, *il, m.*, Marius, a Roman general.

**marmor**, *ōis, n.*, marble.

**māter**, *tris, f.*, a mother.

**Maximus**, *i. m.*, Maximus, (the greatest,) a surname of Fabius.

**mēdītor**, *ētus, 1. v. dep.*, I meditate on, study.

**membrāna**, *ae, f.*, thin skin, membrane.

**mēmōr**, *ōis, adj.*, mindful.

**mēmōrābilis**, *e, adj.*, to be remembered, memorable.

**mēmōria**, *ae, f.*, memory.

**Mēnāpi**, *ōrum, m. pl.*, Menapi, a Gallic tribe.

**mendax**, *aciis, adj.* and *sube.*, lying, false, a liar.

**mens**, *mentis, f.*, mind.

**mensis**, *is, m.*, a month.

**mentior**, *itus, 4. v. dep.*, I lie, tell a lie.

**mēreō**, *ti, itum, 2. i. deserve.* Also *mēreor*, *itus, 2. v. dep.*

**metallum**, *i. n.*, a metal.

**mētiōr**, *mensus, 4. v. dep.*, I measure.

**mētūo**, *ti, itum, 3. i. fear.*

**mētus**, *ūs, m.*, fear.

**mēus**, *a, um,* <sup>2</sup> *poss. pron.*, my, mine.

MIGRO.

**migro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I migrate, depart.*  
**miles**, militis, m., a soldier.  
**Minerva**, ae, f., *Minerva.*  
**minimē**, adv., *in the least degree.*  
**minister**, tri, m., a servant.  
**miror**, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I wonder at, admire.*  
**mirus**, a, um, adj., *wonderful.*  
**miser**, ēra, ērum, adj., *wretched.*  
**misericōr**, rtus or Itus, 2, v. dep., *I pity, have pity on.*  
**misēret**, ūt & misēritum est, misērēre, v. impers., *it excites pity.*  
**mitis**, e, adj., *mild.*  
**mitto**, misi, missum, 3, *I send.*  
**mōdus**, i, m., a measure, manner.  
**moenia**, ium, n. pl., *fortifications.*  
**molestus**, a, um, adj., *troublesome.*  
**mollio**, ivi, itum, 4, *I soften, assuage.*  
**molli**, e, adj., *soft, mellow.*  
**monēō**, ūi, itum, 2, *I advise, warn.*  
**mons**, tis, m., a mountain.  
**monumentum**, i, n., a monument.  
**morbus**, i, m., a disease.  
**mōrior**, mortūus, 3, v. dep., *I die (fut. part. mōritūus, about to die).*  
**mors**, tis, f., *death.*  
**mortalis**, e, adj., *mortal.*  
**mortuus**, a, um, adj., *dead.*  
**mōs**, mōris, m., *manner, custom.*  
**mōvēō**, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *I move, disturb.*  
**mox**, adv., *soon, shortly.*  
**mūller**, ēris, f., a woman, wife.  
**multitudo**, inis, f., a multitude.  
**multus**, a, um, adj., *much, many.*  
**mundus**, i, m., *the world.*  
**munimentum**, i, n., a fortification. [*tify.*]  
**mūnō**, ivi, itum, 4, *I form.*  
**mūnus**, ōris, n., a gift, duty, function.  
**mūrus**, i, m., a wall.  
**mūto**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I change.*

NONNULLUS.

N

**narro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I relate.*  
**nascor**, nātus, 3, v. dep., *I am born.*  
**nātūra**, ae, f., *nature.*  
**nātus**, a, um, part. and adj., *born, aged.*  
**nauta**, ae, m., a sailor.  
**nāvālis**, e, adj., *naval.*  
**nāvis**, is, f., a ship.  
**nē**, conj., *not, lest, that not.* See p. 97.  
**neō**, nēquē, conj., *neither, nor.*  
**necessārius**, a, um, adj., *necessary, needful.*  
**nēfas**, indecl. n., *wickedness, impiety.*  
**nēgō**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I deny.*  
**nēgōtium**, il, n., *business.*  
**nēmō**, inis, com., *nobody.*  
**Neptūnus**, i, m., *Neptune, the god of the sea.*  
**nēquam**, indecl. adj., *comp. nēquior, sup. nēquissimus, worthless.*  
**nēquēō**, ivi or il, itum, Ire, 4, *I am unable, cannot.*  
**Nēro**, ōnis, m., *Nero, a Roman emperor.*  
**Nervii**, ōrum, m. pl., *the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.*  
**nesciō**, ivi or il, itum, 4, *I am ignorant of.*  
**neuter**, tra, trum, adj. (gen. sing. itūs, dat. i), *neither of two.* See p. 23.  
**nēve**, conj., *and that not, and not, nor.*  
**nīdus**, i, m., a nest.  
**nīger**, gra, grum, adj., *black.*  
**nīhil**, indecl. n., *nothing.*  
**Nīlus**, i, m., *the Nile, a river in Egypt.*  
**nīmis**, adv., *too, too much.*  
**ningit**, nīxit, nīgēr, 3, v. impers., *it snows.*  
**nīsi**, conj., *unless, except.*  
**nītor**, nīsus and nīxus, 3, v. dep., *I strive.*  
**nīx**, nīvis, f., *snow.*  
**nōbīlis**, e, adj., *distinguished, noble.*  
**nōcēō**, ūi, itum, 2, with dat., *I hurt, harm.*  
**nōlō**, nōlūi, nolle, v. irreg., *I am unwilling, I do not wish.*  
**nōmen**, inis, n., a name.  
**nōn**, adv., *not.*  
**nonnullus**, a, um, adj., *some.*

OMNIS.

**noſter**, tra, trum, poss. pron., *our, ours.*  
**nōtus**, a, um, adj., *known.*  
**nōvus**, a, um, adj., *new.*  
**nox**, noctis, f., *night.*  
**noxius**, a, um, adj., *hurtful, injurious.*  
**nūbes**, is, f., a cloud.  
**nullus**, a, um, adj. (gen. sing. itūs, dat. i), *none.*  
**nūmēro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I count.*  
**nūmērus**, i, m., a number.  
**nūno**, adv., *now.*  
**nūquam**, adv., *never.*  
**nūtrio**, ivi, itum, 4, *I nourish, nurture.*

O

**ob**, prep. with acc., *on account of.*  
**ōbēdō**, ivi, itum, 4, with dat., *I obey.*  
**ōbēō**, il, itum, 4, *I meet, esp. meet death, I die.*  
**oblīvīscor**, itus, 3, v. dep., *I forget.*  
**obſcūro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I darken, obscure.*  
**obſervo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I observe, respect.*  
**obſes**, idis, com., a hostage.  
**obſidēō**, ēdī, sessum, 2, *I blockade, lay siege to.*  
**obſidō**, ōis, f., a siege, blockade.  
**obſto**, ſtīti, ſtītum, 1, *I oppose, prevent.*  
**obſum**, obſui or obſui, ob-eſe, v. irreg., with dat., *I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.*  
**obtempēro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I obey, comply with.*  
**occidēs**, tis, m., *the west, the setting sun.*  
**occidō**, idi, iſum, 3, *I slay, kill.*  
**occūpātus**, a, um, adj., *engaged, busy.*  
**occūpo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I seize upon.*  
**ocēānus**, i, m., *the ocean.*  
**ocūlus**, i, m., an eye.  
**odīum**, il, n., *hatred.*  
**ōdor**, ōris, m., a smell, scent.  
**offēro**, obtūli, oblātum, offerre, 3, v. irr., *I present.*  
**ōlim**, adv., *formerly, once upon a time.*  
**omnis**, e, adj., *all, every.*

## OKUS.

**onus**, *ōis*, *n.*, a load, burden.  
**opēra**, *ae, f.*, pains, labour.  
**oportet**, *ūt*, 2, *v. impers.*, it behoves, is necessary.  
**oppidum**, *i, n.*, a town.  
**oppōno**, *pōtūi*, *pōsitum*, 3, *I set against, oppose.*  
**opprimo**, *pressi*, *pressum*, 3, *I press upon, overwhelm.*  
**oppugno**, *āvī*, *ātum*, 1, *I attack, assault.*  
**opto**, *āvī*, *ātum*, 1, *I wish, desire.*  
**opulentus**, *a, um, adj.*, wealthy.  
**opus**, *ōis*, *n.*, a work.  
**opus**, *n.* and *adj.*, indecl., need, necessity; necessary.  
**ora**, *ae, f.*, the coast.  
**oraculum**, *i, n.*, an oracle.  
**oratio**, *ōis*, *f.*, an oration, speech.  
**orator**, *ōis*, *m.*, an orator.  
**ordior**, *orsus*, 4, *v. dep.*, *I begin.*  
**orior**, *ortus*, *ōriri*, 4, *v. dep.*, *I rise.* See p. 122.  
**orno**, *āvī*, *ātum*, 1, *I adorn.*  
**oro**, *āvī*, *ātum*, 1, *I entreat, pray.*  
**os**, *ōis*, *n.*, a mouth.  
**os**, *osis*, *n.*, a bone.

## P

**pābūlor**, *ātus*, 1, *v. dep.*, *I forage.*  
**pallium**, *īl, n.*, a cloak.  
**pārātus**, *a, um, adj.*, prepared, ready.  
**pārens**, *entis*, *c.*, a parent.  
**pārēo**, *ūi*, *ītum*, 2, with *dat.*, *I obey.*  
**pārō**, *pēpēri*, and *partum*, 3, *I bring forth.* *Part. part.*  
**pārītūrus**.  
**pāro**, *āvī*, *ātum*, 1, *I prepare, get, gain.*  
**pars**, *tis*, *f.*, a part.  
**partior**, *ītus*, 4, *v. dep.*, *I share, divide.*  
**parvus**, *a, um, adj.*, small, little.  
**passus**, *ūs*, *m.*, a pace (about 5 feet).  
**pāter**, *tris*, *m.*, a father.  
**pātienter**, *adv.*, patiently.  
**pātior**, *passus*, 3, *v. dep.*, *I endure, suffer.*  
**patria**, *ae, f.*, a native land, country.

## PLACET.

**paucus**, *a, um, adj.*, few.  
**pauper**, *ōis*, *adj.*, poor.  
**paupertas**, *ātis*, *f.*, poverty.  
**pavo**, *ōis*, *m.*, a peacock.  
**pax**, *pācis*, *f.*, peace.  
**pēcūnia**, *ae, f.*, money.  
**pēdes**, *ītis*, *m.*, a foot-soldier.  
**pēditātus**, *ūs*, *m.*, infantry.  
**pellis**, *is*, *f.*, a skin, hide (of an animal).  
**pēnēs**, *prep.* with *acc.*, in the power of.  
**per**, *prep.* with *acc.*, through.  
**percipio**, *cēpi*, *ceptum*, 3, *I perceive.*  
**perdo**, *didi*, *dītum*, 3, *I destroy.*  
**pērō**, *īl, ītum*, 4, *I perish.*  
**perfectus**, *a, um, adj.*, finished, perfect.  
**perfero**, *tūli*, *lātum*, *ferre*, *v. irr.*, *I bear through, endure.*  
**pēricūlum**, *i, n.*, danger.  
**pēritus**, *a, um, adj.*, skillful.  
**perlēgo**, *lēgi*, *lectum*, 3, *I read through.*  
**permulti**, *ae, a, adj. (pl.)*, very many.  
**perniciōsus**, *a, um, adj.*, destructive.  
**perpētūrus**, *a, um, adj.*, continual.  
**perumpo**, *rāpi*, *raptum*, 3, *I burst through.*  
**Persa**, *ae, m.*, a Persian.  
**persuādēo**, *āsī*, *āsūm*, 2, with *dat.*, *I persuade.*  
**pervēnio**, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4, *I arrive at.*  
**perversus**, *a, um, adj.*, wilful, perverse.  
**pēto**, *īvi* and *īl, ītum*, 3, *I seek.*  
**Phaëthon**, *ontis*, *m.*, Phaëthon, a son of Apollo.  
**Phidias**, *as*, *m.*, Phidias, a famous Athenian sculptor.  
**philōsophus**, *i, m.*, a philosopher.  
**pīgēt**, *pīgūt* and *pīgītum* est, *pīgēre*, 2, *v. impers.*, it vexes.  
**pingo**, *pinxi*, *pictum*, 3, *I paint, embroider.*  
**pīrum**, *i, n.*, a pear.  
**pīrus**, *i, f.*, a pear-tree.  
**piscis**, *is*, *m.*, a fish.  
**Pisistrātus**, *i, m.*, Pisistratus, a despot of Athens.  
**placēo**, *ūi*, *ītum*, 2, with *dat.*, *I please.*  
**placēt**, *ūt* or *ītum* est, *īre*, 2, *v. impers.*, it pleases.

## PRAEPO.

**placidus**, *a, um, adj.*, quiet.  
**plānē**, *adv.*, altogether.  
**plānitias**, *ēt*, *f.*, a plain.  
**planta**, *ae, f.*, a sprout, plant.  
**Plato**, *ōis*, *m.*, Plato, a famous Greek philosopher.  
**plēnus**, *a, um, adj.* with *gen.*, full.  
**Plinius**, *īl, m.*, Pliny, the name of two Roman authors.  
**pluit**, *pluit* or *plāvit*, *plūere*, 3, *v. impers.*, it rains.  
**plūis**, *ōis*, *adj.* (in *pl.* *plures*, *plūra*), more.  
**poena**, *ae, f.*, punishment.  
**Poeni**, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians.  
**poenitet**, *nītūt*, *nītēre*, 2, *v. impers.*, it causes sorrow, repents.  
**pōēta**, *ae, m.*, a poet.  
**pollicēor**, *ītus*, 2, *v. dep.*, *I promise.*  
**Pompēius**, *īl, m.*, Pompey, the rival of Caesar.  
**pōnē**, *prep.* with *acc.*, behind.  
**pōno**, *pōtūi*, *pōsitum*, 3, *I place.*  
**pons**, *ntis*, *m.*, a bridge.  
**porta**, *ae, f.*, a gate.  
**porto**, *āvī*, *ātum*, 1, *I carry.*  
**portus**, *ūs*, *m.*, a harbour.  
**possum**, *pōtūi*, *posse*, *v. irreg.*, *I am able, can.* See p. 76.  
**post**, *prep.* with *acc.*, after.  
**postulo**, *āvī*, *ātum*, 1, *I demand.*  
**pōtēs**, *entis*, *adj.*, powerful.  
**pōtentia**, *ae, f.*, power, i.e. power from personal weight, influence.  
**pōtestas**, *ātis*, *f.*, power, i.e. magisterial power.  
**pōtior**, *ītus*, 4, *v. dep.*, with *abl.*, *I take possession of, obtain.*  
**prae**, *prep.* with *abl.*, before, in comparison with.  
**praealtus**, *a, um, adj.*, very high.  
**praebeō**, *ūi*, *ītum*, 2, *I furnish, afford, exhibit.*  
**praeceptor**, *ōis*, *m.*, a teacher.  
**praeceptum**, *i, n.*, precept, instruction, lesson.  
**praeda**, *ae, f.*, booty.  
**praeco**, *īl, ītum*, 4, *I go before.*

PRÆFERO.

**præfêro**, tûli, lâtum, 3, v. *irreg.*, I prefer.  
**præmitto**, mîsi, missum, 3, I send on before.  
**præmium**, ii, n., a reward.  
**præsens**, entis, *adj.*, present.  
**præstâbilis**, e, *adj.*, excellent.  
**præstans**, antis, *adj.*, excellent.  
**præsum**, fûi, esse, v. *irreg.*, with dat., I am before, at the head of.  
**præter**, prep. with acc., beside.  
**præterêro**, ii, itum, 4, v. *irreg.*, I pass by.  
**præteritus**, a, um, *adj.*, past.  
**præveniô**, vëni, ventum, 4, I anticipate.  
**præmo**, pressi, pressum, 3, I press.  
**primârius**, a, um, *adj.*, first-rate, eminent.  
**primo**, adv., at first.  
**pristinus**, a, um, *adj.*, former, olden.  
**prîus**, adv., sooner, before.  
**prô**, prep. with abl., before, for, on behalf of.  
**prôbê**, adv., rightly, properly.  
**prôbitas**, âtis, f., honesty, integrity.  
**prôbus**, a, um, *adj.*, good, upright.  
**prôdo**, didi, dîtum, 3, I hand down, betray.  
**proellum**, ii, n., a battle.  
**prôfêro**, tûli, lâtum, ferre, 3, v. *irreg.*, I extend.  
**prôficiator**, ictus, 3, v. *dep.*, I set out.  
**prôfundus**, a, um, *adj.*, deep.  
**prôgrêdior**, gressus, 3, v. *dep.*, I advance.  
**prôhibeo**, ui, itum, 2, I keep off, prohibit.  
**prôpê**, prep. with acc., near.  
**prôpê**, adv., nearly.  
**prôpinquus**, a, um, *adj.*, near.  
**prôptêr**, prep. with acc., on account of.  
**prôsum**, fûi, prôdesse, v. *irreg.*, I am serviceable to, do good to.  
**prôvidêo**, vidi, visum, 2, I foresee, provide.

QCO.

**proxîmus**, a, um, *sup. adj.*, nearest, next.  
**prûdens**, ntis, *adj.*, prudent, sagacious.  
**prûdentia**, æ, f., knowledge, prudence.  
**prûnum**, i, n., a plum.  
**prûnus**, i, f., a plum-tree.  
**publicus**, a, um, *adj.*, public.  
**pûdet**, ûit or pûditum est, ère, 2, v. *impers.*, it shames.  
**pûella**, æ, f., a girl.  
**pûer**, èri, m., a boy.  
**pugna**, æ, f., a battle.  
**pugno**, âvi, âtum, 1, I fight.  
**puleher**, cra, crum, *adj.*, beautiful.  
**Pûnicus**, a, um, *adj.*, Punic, Carthaginian.  
**pûnio**, ivi, itum, 4, I punish.  
**pûto**, âvi, âtum, 1, I think.  
**Pythâgoras**, æ, m., Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher.

Q

**quæro**, quæsalvi, situm, 3, I seek, enquire.  
**quæstio**, ðnis, f., a question.  
**quâlis**, e, pron. *adj.*, of what sort, as.  
**quam**, adv. and *conj.*, than, as.  
**quantus**, a, um, *adj.*, how great.  
**quârê**, adv., why, on what account.  
**quâsi**, adv., as if.  
**quâtio**, no perf., quassum, 3, I shake.  
**querens**, us, f., an oak.  
**quîa**, *conj.*, because.  
**quidam**, quædam, quoddam and quiddam, pron. *indef.*, a certain, certain one, somebody.  
**quidem**, adv., indeed.  
**quîn**, *conj.*, that not (with subj.). See p. 97.  
**quis**, quæ, quid, pron. *interrog.*, who, which, what?  
**quisnam**, quænam, quidnam, *interrog. pron.*, who, which, what?  
**quisquê**, quæque, quodque (and *subst.* quidque or quicque), *indef. pron.*, every one, whoever.  
**quô**, adv., whither.

RESPONDEO.

**quô**, *conj.* with subj., in order that. See p. 98.  
**quôd**, *conj.*, because.  
**quôminus**, *conj.* with subj., that not. See p. 98.  
**quondam**, adv., some time, formerly.  
**quôquê**, *conj.*, also, even, too.  
**quôt**, indecl. *adj.*, how many?  
**quôtidiê**, adv., every day.  
**quum**, adv. and *conj.*, when.

R

**râdix**, icis, f., a root.  
**râpax**, âcis, *adj.*, rapacious.  
**râpidus**, a, um, *adj.*, rapid.  
**râpio**, ui, raptum, ère, 3, I seize.  
**rârô**, adv., seldom, rarely.  
**rârus**, a, um, *adj.*, rare.  
**râtio**, ðnis, f., reason.  
**rêcito**, âvi, âtum, 1, I read aloud.  
**rêcorder**, âtus, 1, v. *dep.*, I call to mind.  
**rêcôrô**, âvi, âtum, 1, I refresh.  
**rectus**, a, um, *adj.*, straight, right.  
**rêcûpêro**, âvi, âtum, 1, I recover, get back.  
**rêcûso**, âvi, âtum, 1, I object, refuse.  
**rêdâmo**, âvi, âtum, 1, I love in return.  
**rêdêo**, ii, itum, 4, I return.  
**rêfêro**, rêtûli or rettûli, rêtatum, 3, v. *irreg.*, I bring back.  
**rêgina**, æ, f., a queen.  
**regnô**, âvi, âtum, 1, I reign, am king.  
**regnum**, i, n., a kingdom.  
**rêgo**, rex, rectum, 3, I rule.  
**Rêgûlus**, i, m., Regulus, a famous Roman.  
**rêlinquo**, liqui, lictum, 3, I leave, quit.  
**rêminiscor**, 3, I remember.  
**rênovô**, âvi, âtum, 1, I make new again, restore.  
**rêpêrio**, përi, pertum, 4, I find.  
**rês**, rei, f., a thing.  
**rêsito**, silti, siltum, 3, with dat., I resist.  
**respondêo**, di, sum, 2, with dat., I answer.

## RETE.

**rēte**, *is*, *n.*, a net.  
**rēus**, *i*, *m.*, an accused man, defendant.  
**rēvērto**, *ti*, *sum*, 3, *I* turn back, return.  
**rēvertor**, *versus*, 3, *v. dep.*, *I* turn back, return.  
**rēx**, *rēgia*, *m.*, a king.  
**Rhēnus**, *i*, *m.*, the Rhine.  
**Rhōdānus**, *i*, *m.*, the Rhone.  
**Rhōdus**, *i*, *f.*, Rhodes, an island of Greece.  
**ripa**, *ae*, *f.*, a bank, shore.  
**rogō**, *avi*, *ātum*, 1, *I* ask.  
**Rōma**, *ae*, *f.*, Rome (the city).  
**Rōmānus**, *m.*, a Roman.  
**Rōmānus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, Roman.  
**Rōmulus**, *i*, *m.*, Romulus.  
**rosa**, *ae*, *f.*, a rose.  
**Roscius**, *ii*, *m.*, Roscius, a Roman.  
**rūpes**, *is*, *f.*, a rock.  
**rūs**, *rūris*, *a*, the country.

## S

**sacer**, *cra*, *crum*, *adj.*, sacred.  
**saepē**, *adv.*, often.  
**saepēnimēro**, *adv.*, often-times.  
**saepissimē**, *adv.*, very often.  
**sagitta**, *ae*, *f.*, an arrow.  
**Saguntini**, *orum*, *m. pl.*, Saguntines, the people of Saguntum in Spain.  
**Sālamis**, *inis*, *f.*, Salamis, an island near Athens.  
**Sallustius**, *ii*, *m.*, Sallust, a Roman historian.  
**salto**, *avi*, *ātum*, 1, *I* dance.  
**salūs**, *ūtis*, *f.*, safety.  
**salvus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, safe.  
**sanguis**, *inis*, *m.*, blood.  
**sāpiens**, *ntis*, *adj.* and *subst.*, wise, wise-man.  
**sāplantiā**, *ae*, *f.*, wisdom.  
**sāpio**, *ivi* or *ii*, 3, *I* savour of, taste, am wise.  
**sātis**, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently.  
**Satrius**, *ii*, *m.*, Satrius, a Roman.  
**scelus**, *ēris*, *n.*, a crime.  
**scientia**, *ae*, *f.*, knowledge.  
**scio**, *ivi*, *ītum*, 4, *I* know.  
**Scipio**, *ōnis*, *m.*, Scipio, a noble Roman.

## SOLEO.

**scribo**, *psi*, *ptum*, 3, *I* write.  
**scriptor**, *ōris*, *m.*, a writer, author.  
**scutum**, *i*, *n.*, a shield.  
**Scythae**, *arum*, *m. pl.*, the Scythians.  
**secundum**, *prep.* with *acc.*, following, in accordance with.  
**sed**, *conj.*, but.  
**sēdō**, *sēdi*, *cessum*, 2, *I* sit.  
**sēdes**, *is*, *f.*, a seat.  
**segities**, *ēi*, *f.*, slothfulness.  
**semper**, *adv.*, always, ever.  
**senātus**, *ūs*, *m.*, the senate.  
**senectūs**, *ūtis*, *f.*, old age.  
**sensus**, *ūs*, *m.*, a sense.  
**sento**, *si*, *sum*, 4, *I* feel, perceive.  
**sēpello**, *ivi* or *ii*, *pultum*, 4, *I* bury.  
**sēquor**, *sēcūtus*, 3, *v. dep.*, *I* follow.  
**sērēnus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, clear.  
**sermo**, *ōnis*, *m.*, a discourse.  
**sēro**, *sēvi*, *sātum*, 3, *I* plant, sow.  
**servitūs**, *ūtis*, *f.*, slavery.  
**servo**, *avi*, *ātum*, 1, *I* preserve, save.  
**servus**, *i*, *m.*, a slave.  
**sevērus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, severe.  
**si**, *conj.*, if.  
**Sicilia**, *ae*, *f.*, Sicily.  
**sidus**, *ēris*, *n.*, a star, constellation.  
**signum**, *i*, *n.*, a sign, signal.  
**silentium**, *ii*, *n.*, silence.  
**silva**, *ae*, *f.*, a wood.  
**similis**, *e*, *adj.*, like. See p. 25.  
**simul**, *adv.*, at the same time.  
**simulāe**, *simul* *ac*, *adv.*, as soon as.  
**simulācerum**, *i*, *n.*, an image, statue.  
**simulāctio**, *ōnis*, *f.*, a pretence.  
**sinē**, *prep.* with *abl.*, without.  
**socer**, *ēri*, *m.*, a father-in-law.  
**socius**, *ii*, *m.*, a partner, ally, companion.  
**Socratēs**, *is*, *m.*, Socrates, the sage of Athens.  
**soli**, *solia*, *m.*, the sun.  
**solēo**, *ītus* *sum*, *ēre*, 2, *v. n.*, *I* am accustomed.

## SUBTER.

**Sōlon**, *ōnis*, *m.*, Solon, the Athenian legislator.  
**solum**, *adv.*, only.  
**solus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.* (*gen. sing. iūs*, *dat. i*), alone.  
**solvo**, *solvi*, *solutum*, 3, *I* loosen, pay.  
**somnus**, *i*, *m.*, sleep.  
**sonitus**, *ūs*, *m.*, a sound, noise.  
**soror**, *ōris*, *f.*, a sister.  
**sors**, *tis*, *f.*, a lot.  
**Sparta**, *ae*, *f.*, Sparta.  
**specio**, *obi*, *spexi*, *specere*, 3, *I* look.  
**specto**, *avi*, *ātum*, 1, *I* look at, look on, behold.  
**spēdior**, *ātus*, 1, *v. dep.*, *I* spy out.  
**spērātus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, hoped for.  
**spēro**, *avi*, *ātum*, 1, *I* hope.  
**spes**, *ēi*, *f.*, hope.  
**splendidus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, splendid, bright.  
**splendor**, *ōris*, *m.*, brightness, brilliancy.  
**stātim**, *adv.*, immediately.  
**statio**, *ōnis*, *f.*, a post, station.  
**stātuo**, *ti*, *ūtum*, 3, *I* fix, determine.  
**stella**, *ae*, *f.*, a star.  
**sto**, *stēti*, *stātum*, 1, *I* stand.  
**strēnūs**, *adv.*, vigorously.  
**strētus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, vigorous.  
**stūdēo**, *ēi*, 2, *I* am eager, zealous.  
**stūdiōsus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, zealous, eager after.  
**stūdiūm**, *ii*, *n.*, zeal, a pursuit, study.  
**stultitia**, *ae*, *f.*, folly.  
**stultus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, foolish.  
**suādeō**, *suāsi*, *suāsūm*, 2, with *dat.*, *I* advise.  
**suāvis**, *e*, *adj.*, sweet, delightful.  
**sūb**, *prep.* with *abl.* or *acc.*, up to, under; of time, about.  
**subdifficilis**, *e*, *adj.*, somewhat difficult.  
**subēo**, *ii*, *ītum*, 4, *I* go up to, under.  
**sūbitus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, sudden.  
**subsequor**, *cūtus*, 3, *v. dep.*, *I* follow up.  
**subsum**, *no perf.*, *v. irreg.*, *I* am under, amongst.  
**subter**, *prep.* with *acc.* or *abl.*, under.

SUMMUS.

**summus**, a, um, *superl. adj.*, highest, utmost, greatest.  
**super**, prep. with acc. or abl., over.  
**supéro**, ávi, átum, 1, *I overcame*.  
**supersum**, fui, esse, v. *irreg.*, I remain over, survive.  
**superus**, a, um, *adj.* (comp. **superior**, *superl.* **supremus** or **summus**, *upper*).  
**supra**, prep. with acc., above.  
**supremus**, a, um, *adj.*, *superl.* of **superus**, highest; relat. to time, last.  
**suscipio**, cepi, ceptum, 3, *I undertake*.  
**suis**, a, um, *reflec. pron.* poss., his, hers, its, their own.

T

**täbernäculum**, i, n., a tent.  
**täcöo**, tä, itum, 2, *I am silent*.  
**taedät**, düit or pertaesum est, 2, v. *impers.*, it disgusts, wearies.  
**tälis**, e, *pron. adj.*, of that sort, such.  
**tam**, adv., so, to such a degree.  
**tantum**, adv., only.  
**taurns**, i, m., a bull.  
**tägo**, texti, tectum, 3, *I cover*.  
**tälum**, i, n., a dart, weapon, missile.  
**tämörítas**, ätis, f., recklessness, rashness.  
**tempestas**, ätis, f., a tempest.  
**templum**, i, n., a temple.  
**tämpus**, öris, n., time.  
**täneo**, tä, tentum, 2, *I hold, retain*.  
**täner**, ära, ärum, *adj.*, tender, soft.  
**tänüs**, e, *adj.*, thin, delicate.  
**tänüs**, prep. with abl., reaching to, as far as.  
**terra**, ae, f., the earth, land.  
**terreo**, tä, itum, 2, *I terrify, frighten, alarm*.  
**terror**, öris, m., terror, alarm.  
**Thäles**, ätis, m., *Thales, the philosopher*.  
**Thämistöcles**, is, m., *Themistocles, a famous Athenian*.

ULLUS.

**Tibérius**, ii, m., *Tiberius (a common Roman fore-name)*.  
**tigris**, is or idis, com., a tiger, tigress.  
**tímöo**, tä, 2, *I fear*.  
**timidus**, a, um, *adj.*, timid.  
**timor**, öris, m., fear.  
**Timöthéus**, äi, m., *Timotheus, a famous Greek*.  
**Titus** (T.), i, m., *Titus (a common Roman fore-name)*.  
**tönat**, üt, äre, 1, v. *impers.*, it thunders.  
**tötus**, a, um, *adj.*, whole, all.  
**trabs**, träbis, f., a beam.  
**tracto**, ävi, átum, 1, *I handle, deal with*.  
**trädo**, didi, ditum, 3, *I hand down, deliver*.  
**träho**, traxi, tractum, 3, *I draw, drag*.  
**tranquillus**, a, um, *adj.*, calm.  
**trans**, prep. with acc., across.  
**transdüco**, duxi, ductum, 3, *I lead across*.  
**transöo**, ii, itum, 4, v. *irreg.*, I cross over.  
**Träsiménus**, i, m., *the lake Trasimene in Italy*.  
**Tréböníus**, ii, m., *Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants*.  
**tribüo**, tä, átum, 3, *I give, assign*.  
**tristis**, e, *adj.*, sad.  
**triumpho**, ävi, átum, 1, *I triumph*. See Voc. 27.  
**Tröia**, ae, f., *Troy, a city in Asia Minor*.  
**Tröjánus**, a, um, *adj.*, Trojan, of Troy.  
**tücor**, tätus, 2, v. *dep.*, I gape, guard, protect.  
**tum**, adv. and conj., then.  
**turpis**, e, *adj.*, base, disgraceful.  
**turpitüdo**, inis, f., disgrace.  
**turris**, is, f., a tower.  
**tütus**, a, um, *adj.*, safe.  
**tüs**, a, um, *poss. pron.*, thy, thine.  
**tyrannus**, i, m., a despot, tyrant.

U

**ühi**, adv., where.  
**ullus**, a, um, *adj.* (gen. sing. ius, dat. sing. i), any.

VESPERASCIT.

**ultra**, prep. with acc., on the farther side of, beyond.  
**unquam**, adv., at any time, ever.  
**ünus**, a, um, *adj.* (gen. sing. ius, dat. sing. i), one.  
**urbs**, urbis, f., a city.  
**üt**, adv. and conj., as; that, in order that. See p. 97.  
**üter**, rä, rum, *adj.* (gen. sing. ius, dat. sing. i), which of two.  
**ütis**, e, *adj.*, useful.  
**utor**, äsus, 3, v. *dep.*, with abl., I use.  
**uxor**, öris, f., a wife.

V

**välöo**, tä, itum, 2, *I am strong, in good health*.  
**välétüdo**, inis, f., health.  
**vällus**, a, um, *adj.*, strong.  
**vallis**, is, f., a valley.  
**värius**, a, um, *adj.*, different, various.  
**vasto**, ävi, átum, 1, *I lay waste*.  
**vectigäl**, älis, n., a tax.  
**vehementer**, adv., vehemently, warmly.  
**vého**, vexi, vectum, 4, *I carry* (in pass., I ride).  
**Véientes**, um, m. pl., *the Veientes, the people of Iesi, near Rome*.  
**vélöx**, öcis, *adj.*, swift.  
**vénöror**, ätus, 1, v. *dep.*, I reverence, worship.  
**vénio**, vëni, ventum, 4, *I come*.  
**vénör**, ätus, 1, v. *dep.*, I hunt.  
**ventito**, ävi, 1, v. *freq.*, I come frequently.  
**ventus**, i, m., the wind.  
**Vénüsia**, ae, f., *Venuria, a town in Italy*.  
**vër**, veris, n., the spring.  
**véröor**, itus, 2, v. *dep.*, I fear, reverence.  
**vérisimilis**, e, *adj.*, likely, probable.  
**versus**, äs, m., a line, verse.  
**versüs**, prep. with acc., towards (only of place or direction).  
**vërüs**, a, um, *adj.*, true.  
**vescor**, 3, v. *dep.*, with abl., I feed, live on.  
**vespérascit**, ävit, äscire, v. *impers.*, evening approaches.

| VESTA.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | VIX.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | XERXES.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Vesta</b>, <i>ae, f.</i>, <i>Vesta</i>, the goddess of fire and the hearth.<br/> <b>vester</b>, <i>tra, trum, poss. pron.</i>, your, yours.<br/> <b>vestimentum</b>, <i>i, n.</i>, clothing.<br/> <b>vestio</b>, <i>ivi, itum, 4, I clothe</i>.<br/> <b>vestis</b>, <i>is, f.</i>, clothing, a garment.<br/> <b>vētus</b>, <i>vētēris, adj.</i>, old.<br/> <b>vexo</b>, <i>avi, ātum, 1, I vex, harass</i>.<br/> <b>via</b>, <i>ae, f.</i>, a way, road.<br/> <b>victor</b>, <i>ōris, m.</i>, a conqueror.<br/> <b>victōria</b>, <i>ae, f.</i>, victory.<br/> <b>videō</b>, <i>vidi, visum, 2, I see</i>.<br/> <b>videor</b>, <i>visus, 2, I seem, appear</i>.<br/> <b>vigilo</b>, <i>avi, ātum, 1, I watch, I am awake</i>.</p> | <p><b>vilis</b>, <i>e, adj.</i>, cheap, common.<br/> <b>vincio</b>, <i>vinxi, vinctum, 4, I bind</i>.<br/> <b>vinco</b>, <i>vidi, victum, 3, I conquer</i>.<br/> <b>vinculum</b>, <i>i, n.</i>, a chain, bond.<br/> <b>vinum</b>, <i>i, n.</i>, wine.<br/> <b>virgo</b>, <i>inis, f.</i>, a maiden.<br/> <b>vir</b>, <i>virī, m.</i>, a man.<br/> <b>virtus</b>, <i>utis, f.</i>, valour, virtue.<br/> <b>viso</b>, <i>visi, visum, 3, v. freq.</i>, I look at often, view.<br/> <b>visus</b>, <i>us, m.</i>, a seeing, looking, look.<br/> <b>vita</b>, <i>ae, f.</i>, life.<br/> <b>vitupero</b>, <i>avi, ātum, 1, I blame, find fault with</i>.<br/> <b>vivo</b>, <i>vixi, victum, 3, I live</i>.<br/> <b>vix</b>, <i>adv.</i>, scarcely.</p> | <p><b>volo</b>, <i>avi, ātum, 1, I fly</i>.<br/> <b>volo</b>, <i>vōlūi, velle, v. irreg.</i>, I wish, am willing.<br/> <b>vōluntas</b>, <i>utis, f.</i>, a wish, will.<br/> <b>vōluptas</b>, <i>utis, f.</i>, pleasure.<br/> <b>vox</b>, <i>vōcis, f.</i>, a voice.<br/> <b>vulnero</b>, <i>avi, ātum, 1, I wound</i>.<br/> <b>vulnus</b>, <i>eris, n.</i>, a wound.<br/> <b>vultur</b>, <i>utis, m.</i>, a vulture.<br/> <b>vultus</b>, <i>us, m.</i>, countenance, looks.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>X</b></p> <p><b>Xenophōn</b>, <i>ontis, m.</i>, Xenophon, an Athenian.<br/> <b>Xerxes</b>, <i>is, m.</i>, Xerxes, a famous king of Persia.</p> |

## INDEX II. TO VOCABULARIES.

## ENGLISH WORDS.

| ABANDON.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | ALPS.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | APPLE.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>A</b></p> <p><b>abandon</b>, <i>relinquo, liqui, lictum, 3</i>.<br/> <b>able</b>, <i>be, possum, p. 76</i>.<br/> <b>abode</b>, <i>domicilium, ii, n.</i><br/> <b>about</b>, <i>circā, circum, circiter, adv. and prep. with acc.</i><br/> <b>above</b>, <i>sūper, sūprā, prep. with acc.</i><br/> <b>abuse</b>, <i>abūtor, ūsus, 3, with abl.</i><br/> <b>accident</b>, <i>cāsus, ūs, m.</i><br/> <b>accompany</b>, <i>cōmitor, ātus, 1</i>.<br/> <b>accomplish</b>, <i>conficio, fēci, fectum, 3</i>.<br/> <b>according to</b>, <i>secundum, prep. with acc.</i><br/> <b>account of</b>, <i>on, ūb, proptēr, prep. with acc.</i><br/> <b>accuse</b>, <i>accuso, avi, ātum, 1</i>.<br/> <b>accused man</b>, <i>rēus, i, m.</i><br/> <b>accustomed to</b>, <i>be, solēo, itus sum, 2</i>.<br/> <b>acquire</b>, <i>adipiscor, eptus, 3</i>.<br/> <b>across</b>, <i>trans, prep. with acc.</i><br/> <b>act</b>, <i>āgo, ēgi, actum, 3</i>.</p> | <p><b>actively</b>, <i>gnāvitēr, adv.</i><br/> <b>admire</b>, <i>miror, admiror, ātus, 1</i>.<br/> <b>adorn</b>, <i>orno, avi, ātum, 1</i>.<br/> <b>advice</b>, <i>consellum, ii, n.</i><br/> <b>advise</b>, <i>suādēo, si, sum, 2, with dat. ; mōnēo, ūi, itum, 2</i>.<br/> <b>affliction</b>, <i>aerumna, ae, f.</i><br/> <b>afford</b>, <i>præbēo, ūi, itum, 2</i>.<br/> <b>after</b>, <i>post, prep. with acc.</i><br/> <b>against</b>, <i>contrā, prep. with acc.</i><br/> <b>age</b>, <i>ætās, utis, f.</i><br/> <b>—, old</b>, <i>sēnectūs, utis, f.</i><br/> <b>aged</b>, <i>part. and adj.</i>, <i>nātus, a, um</i>.<br/> <b>agree</b>, <i>consentio, si, sum, 2</i>.<br/> <b>agreed</b>, <i>it is, constat, stitit, aid, auxillum, ii, n.</i> [1].<br/> <b>air</b>, <i>āer, āeris, m.</i><br/> <b>alarm</b>, <i>to, terrēo, ūi, itum</i>.<br/> <b>all</b>, <i>omnis, e, adj.</i> [2].<br/> <b>all, together</b>, <i>cunctus, a, um, adj.</i><br/> <b>allowed</b>, <i>it is, licet, p. 86</i>.<br/> <b>ally</b>, <i>socius, ii, m.</i><br/> <b>almost</b>, <i>prōpē, paenē, adv.</i><br/> <b>alone</b>, <i>solus, a, um, adj.</i><br/> <b>Alps</b>, <i>Alpes, tum, m.</i></p> | <p><b>already</b>, <i>jam, adv.</i><br/> <b>also</b>, <i>etiam, adv.</i><br/> <b>altogether</b>, <i>plānē, adv.</i><br/> <b>always</b>, <i>semper, adv.</i><br/> <b>ambassador</b>, <i>légatus, i, m.</i><br/> <b>amongst</b>, <i>intēr, prep. with acc.</i><br/> <b>—, to be</b>, <i>intersum, p. 31.</i> [1].<br/> <b>amuse</b>, <i>dēlecto, avi, ātum</i>.<br/> <b>ancestors</b>, <i>mājōres, m. pl.</i><br/> <b>ancient</b>, <i>antiquus, a, um, adj.</i><br/> <b>and</b>, <i>et, atque, ac, quē, conj.</i><br/> <b>anger</b>, <i>ira, ae, f.</i> [tus, 3].<br/> <b>angry</b>, <i>to be</i>, <i>irascor, irā-</i><br/> <b>animal</b>, <i>animal, alis, n.</i><br/> <b>—, small</b>, <i>bestiola, ae, f.</i><br/> <b>another</b>, <i>of several</i>, <i>alius, ā, ūd, indef. pron.</i><br/> <b>another</b>, <i>of two</i>, <i>altēr, ā, um, indef. pron.</i> [2].<br/> <b>answer</b>, <i>respondēo, di, sum</i>.<br/> <b>any</b>, <i>ullus, a, um, indef. pron.</i><br/> <b>any time</b>, <i>at, unquam, adv.</i><br/> <b>appear</b>, <i>videor, visus, 2</i>.<br/> <b>apple</b>, <i>mālum, i, n.</i></p> |

APPLE-TREE.

apple-tree, mālus, i, f.  
 appoint, institū, ūl, ātum,  
 3.  
 approach, to, appropin-  
 quo, advento, āvi, ātum, i.  
 arms, arma, ōrum, n. pl.  
 army, exercitus, ūs, m.  
 around, circā, circum, adv.  
 and prep. with acc.; circiter,  
 adv. [3].  
 arrange, instrūo, xi, ctum,  
 arrive, advēnio, pervēnio,  
 vēni, ventum, 4.  
 arrival, adventus, ūs, m.  
 arriving, to be on the point  
 of, advento, āvi, ātum, i.  
 arrow, sāgitta, ae, f.  
 art, ars, rtis, f.  
 as, tam, adv.  
 as . . . as, tam . . . quam,  
 adv.  
 as (conj.), ut, conj.  
 as if, quāsi, conj.  
 as far as, tēntis, prep. with  
 abl. and gen. [(ac).  
 as soon as, simlī atque  
 ascertain, cognosco, nōvi,  
 nītum, 3.  
 ask, rōgo, āvi, ātum, i.  
 assault, oppugno, āvi,  
 ātum, i.  
 assign, tribūo, ūi, ātum, 3.  
 assist, adjūvo, jūvi, jūtum, i.  
 assistance, auxiliū, ūi, n.  
 assuage, mollio, ūvi, ātum,  
 at, ād, prep. with acc. [4].  
 Athenian, Athēnensis, e,  
 adj.  
 Athens, Athēnae, ārum, f.  
 pl.  
 attack (subs.), impētus, ūs,  
 m.  
 attack (verb), oppugno, āvi,  
 ātum, i. [3].  
 attain to, ādipiscor, eptus,  
 attempt, cōnor, ātus, i.  
 attentive, attentus, a, um,  
 adj.  
 attentively, attentā, adv.  
 author, scriptor, ōris, m. [f].  
 authority, auctōritas, ātis,  
 autumn, autūmnus, i, m.  
 awake, to be, vīgilo, āvi,  
 ātum, i.

B

bad, mālus, a, um, adj.  
 bank, ripa, ae, f.  
 base, turpis, e, adj.  
 battle, pugna, ae, f.; proe-  
 lium, ūi, n.

BRIDGE.

be, to, sum, fūl, esse, p. 29.  
 — in, among, &c. see com-  
 pounds of sum, p. 31.  
 beam, traba, trābia, f.  
 bear, fēro, tūli, lātum, p. 80.  
 — through, perfēro, etc.  
 beast, bestia, ae, f.  
 —, great, bellūa, ae, f.  
 —, small, bestiōla, ae, f.  
 beautiful, pulcher, cra,  
 crum, adj.  
 because, quā, quōd, conj.  
 because of, ōb, propter,  
 prepp. with acc.  
 become, fio, p. 84.  
 becomes, it, dēcet, p. 86.  
 before; antē, prep. with  
 acc.; prae, prep. with abl.  
 beg, pēto, ūvi and ūi, ātum,  
 3.  
 begin, incipio, cēpi, cep-  
 tum, 3.  
 beginning, initium, ūi, n.  
 behalf of, on, pro, prep.  
 with abl.  
 behind, pōnē, prep. with  
 acc.  
 behoves, it, ōportet, p. 86.  
 believe, crēdo, didi, dītum,  
 3.  
 beneath, sub, subtēr, prep.  
 with acc. and abl.  
 beside, praetēr, prep. with  
 acc.  
 besiege, obsidēo, sēdi, ses-  
 sum, 2.  
 between, inter, prep. with  
 acc. [acc].  
 beyond, ultrā, prep. with  
 bind, vincio, xi, nctum, 4.  
 bird, āvis, is, f.  
 black, nīger, gra, grum;  
 āter, ātra, ātrum.  
 blame, culpo, āvi, ātum, i.  
 —, subs., culpa, ae, f.  
 blockade, obsidio, ōnis, f.  
 blood, sanguis, inis, m.  
 bloom, flōreo, ūi, —, 2.  
 blossom forth, efflōresco,  
 flōrti, 3.  
 blow, fio, āvi, ātum, i.  
 body, corpus, ōris, n.  
 bold, audax, ācis, adj.  
 bond, vincūlum, i, n.  
 bone, ōs, ossis, n.  
 book, liber, bri, m.  
 booty, praeda, ae, f.  
 born, be, nascor, nātus, 3.  
 boundary, finis, is, m.  
 boy, pōter, ēri, m.  
 bow, arcus, ūs, m.  
 brave, fortis, e, adj.  
 bravely, fortitēr, adv.  
 bridge, pons, tis, m.

CAST FORTH.

bright, splendīdus, a, um,  
 bring, fēro, p. 80. [adj].  
 — in, &c. see com-  
 pounds of fero, p. 81.  
 bring to an end, finio,  
 ūvi, ātum, 4; conficio, fēci, fec-  
 tum, 3.  
 bring forth, pario, pēperi,  
 partum, 3.  
 Britain, Britannia, ae, f.  
 Briton, Britannus, i, m.  
 broad, lātus, a, um, adj.  
 brother, frāter, tris, m. [1].  
 build, aedifico, āvi, ātum,  
 building, aedificium, ūi, n.  
 bull, taurus, i, m. [4].  
 bury, sēpelio, ūvi, pultum,  
 burden, ōnus, ōris, n.  
 burn, trans., incendio, di,  
 sum, 3.  
 burn, intrans., ardēo, si,  
 sum, 2.  
 burnt down, to be, dē-  
 flagro, āvi, ātum, i.  
 business, nēgōtium, ūi, n.  
 busy, occupātus, a, um, adj.  
 but, sēd, autem; see Vocab.  
 21.  
 buy, ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3.  
 by, ā, ab, abe, prep. with abl.

C

Call, vōco, āvi, ātum, i.  
 — together, convōco, āvi,  
 ātum, i. [1].  
 call to mind, rēcor, ātus,  
 calm, tranquillus, a, um,  
 adj.  
 camp, castra, ōrum, n. pl.  
 can, possum, p. 76.  
 cannot, nēqueo, ūvi or ūi,  
 ātum, 4.  
 cannot but, I, facēre nōn  
 possum quā. [1].  
 care, take, cūro, āvi, ātum,  
 careful, diligens, ntis, adj.  
 carefully, diligenter, adv.  
 carry, porto, āvi, ātum, i.  
 carry on (war), gēro, gessi,  
 gestum, 3.  
 carry a wall, mūrum  
 dūco, xi, ctum, 3.  
 Carthage, Carthāgo, ūlis, f.  
 Carthaginian, subs., Poe-  
 nus, i, m.  
 Carthaginian, adj., Car-  
 thāginiensis, e.  
 cast away, abjicio, jēci,  
 jectum, 3.  
 cast forth, out, abjicio, jēci,  
 jectum, 3.

## CAST DOWN.

**cast down**, *dēficio*, *jēci*, *jectum*; *affligo*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3.  
**catch**, *cāpio*, *cēpi*, *captum*, 3.

**Catiline**, *Cātilīna*, *ae*, *m*.  
**cause**, *causa*, *ae*, *f*.  
**cavalry**, *ēquitātus*, *ūs*, *m*.  
**celebrated**, *clārus*, *a*, *um*, *adj*.

**century**, *centūria*, *ae*, *f*.  
**certain**, *certus*, *a*, *um*, *adj*.  
**chain**, *vinculum*, *i*, *n*.  
**chance**, *cāsus*, *ūs*, *m*.  
—, *by*, *fortē*, *cāsū*.

**change**, *mūto*, *avi*, *ātum*, 1.  
**charge**, *mando*, *avi*, *ātum*, 1.  
**chariot**, *currus*, *ūs*, *m*.  
**chastise**, *castigo*, *avi*, *ātum*,

1. **cheap**, *vīlis*, *e*, *adj*. [1.  
**cheer**, *exhilaro*, *avi*, *ātum*,  
**cheerful**, *hilaris*, *e*, *adj*.  
**cheese**, *cāseus*, *i*, *m*.  
**cherish**, *cōlo*, *ūi*, *cultum*, 3.  
**cherry**, *cērāsum*, *i*, *n*.  
**cherry-tree**, *cērāsus*, *i*, *f*.  
**children**, *liberi*, *ōrum*, *m*.

*pl*. **Cimbrians**, *Cimbri*, *ōrum*, *m*. *pl*.  
**citadel**, *arx*, *arcis*, *f*.  
**citizen**, *civis*, *is*, *c*.  
**citizenship**, *civitas*, *ātis*, *f*.  
**city**, *urbs*, *urbis*, *f*.  
**civil**, *belonging to a citizen*,  
*civilis*, *e*, *adj*.

**clear**, *clārus*, *a*, *um*, *adj*.  
**cloak**, *pallium*, *il*, *n*.  
**clothe**, *vestio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 4.  
**clothing**, *vestis*, *is*, *f*;  
*vestimentum*, *i*, *n*.

**cloud**, *nūbēs*, *is*, *f*.  
**coast**, *ōra*, *ae*, *f*.  
**cohort**, *cōhōr*, *rtis*, *f*.  
**cold**, *frigus*, *ōris*, *n*.  
**colony**, *cōlōnia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**colour**, *cōlor*, *ōris*, *m*. [4.  
**come**, *vēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*,  
— frequently, *ventito*,

*avi*, *ātum*, 1.  
**come to pass**, *fio*, *factus*,  
*fieri*.

**commander**, *impērātor*,  
*ōris*, *m*; see p. 84.  
**commission**, *mandātum*,  
*i*, *n*.

**common**, *vīlis*, *e*; *commū-*  
*nis*, *e*, *adj*.

**commonly**, *ferē*, *adv*.  
**commonwealth**, *repub-*  
*lica*, *f*; see p. 22.

**companion**, *cōmēs*, *itis*, *c*.  
**comparison**, *in*, *prae*,  
*prep*. with *acc*.

## CUT OFF.

**comrade**, *sōcius*, *il*, *m*.  
**concerning**, *dē*, *prep*. with  
*abl*.

**confess**, *fātēor*, *fessus*;  
*confiteor*, *fessus*, 2.  
**conflagration**, *incendium*,  
*il*, *n*.

**conquer**, *vinco*, *vici*, *victum*, 3.

**conqueror**, *victor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
**conscience**, *conscientia*,  
*ae*, *f*.

**conspiracy**, *conjuratio*, *ō-*  
*nis*, *f*. [n.

**constellation**, *sidus*, *ēris*,  
*consul*, *consul*, *itis*, *m*.

—, *office of*, *consti-*  
*tus*, *ūs*, *m*.

**consult**, *consūlo*, *lūi*,  
*ltum*, 3.

**consume**, *absumo*, *sumpei*,  
*sumptum*, 3.

**contemplate**, *contemplor*,  
*ātus*, 1.

**contented**, *contentus*, *a*,  
*um*, *adj*.

**continual**, *perpētūus*, *a*,  
*um*, *adj*.

**contrary to**, *contrā*, *prep*.  
with *acc*.

**converse**, *collōquor*, *lōcū-*  
*tus*, 3.

**Corinth**, *Cōrinthus*, *i*, *f*.  
**correct**, *corrigo*, *rexi*, *rec-*  
*tum*, 3.

**counsel**, *conāllium*, *il*, *n*.  
**count**, *nūmēro*, *avi*, *ātum*, 1.

**countenance**, *vultus*, *ūs*, *m*.  
**country**, *rūs*, *rūris*, *n*.

—, *one's*, *patria*, *ae*, *f*.  
**cover**, *tēgo*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3.

**cowardice**, *ignāvia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**create**, *crēo*, *avi*, *ātum*, 1.

**creator**, *creātor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
**credible**, *crēdibilis*, *e*, *adj*.

**Crete**, *Crēta*, *ae*, *f*.  
**crime**, *scēlus*, *ēris*, *n*.

**crop**, *messis*, *is*, *f*.  
**cross over**, *transēo*, 4, p. 83.

**crown**, *cōrōna*, *ae*, *f*.  
**crual**, *crūdēlis*, *e*, *adj*.

**crush**, *opprimo*, *pressi*,  
*pressum*, 3.

**cry out**, *clāmo*, *exclāmo*,  
*avi*, *ātum*, 1.

**cultivate**, *cōlo*, *cōlūi*, *cult-*  
*tum*, 3.

**cultivate carefully**, *ex-*  
*cōlo*, *cōlūi*, *cultum*, 3.

**curb**, *cōercēo*, *ūi*, *itum*, 2.  
**current**, *flūmen*, *inis*, *n*.

**custom**, *consuetudo*, *inis*, *f*.  
**cut off**, *interclūdo*, *si*,  
*sum*, 3.

## DIE.

## D

**dance**, *salto*, *avi*, *ātum*, 1.  
**danger**, *pericūlum*, *i*, *n*.  
**dangerous**, *pericūlosus*, *a*,  
*um*, *adj*.

**dare**, *audēo*, *ausus*, p. 86.  
**daring**, *audax*, *ācis*, *adj*.

**daringly**, *audacitē*, *adv*.  
**darken**, *obsuro*, *avi*, *ātum*,  
**dart**, *tēlum*, *i*, *n*. [1.

**daughter**, *filia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**day**, *dies*, *ei*, *m*. and *f*.

**dead**, *mortuus*, *a*, *um*, *adj*.  
**deal with**, *tracto*, *avi*, *ā-*  
*tum*, 1.

**dear**, *cārus*, *a*, *um*, *adj*.  
**death**, *mors*, *rtis*, *f*.

**deceive**, *dēcipio*, *cēpi*, *cep-*  
*tum*, 3.

**deed**, *a bold*, *daring*, *fāci-*  
*nus*, *ōris*, *n*.

**deep**, *altus*, *a*, *um*, *adj*.  
**defeat**, *clādēs*, *is*, *f*.

**defend**, *dēfēdo*, *i*, *sum*, 3.  
**defendant**, *rēus*, *i*, *m*.

**delicate**, *tēnūis*, *e*, *adj*.  
**delight**, *dēlecto*, *avi*, *ā-*  
*tum*, 1.

**delightful**, *dulcis*, *suāvis*,  
*e*, *adj*.

**delightfully**, *jūcundē*, *adv*.  
**deliver**, *libēro*, *avi*, *ātum*, 1.

**demand**, *postūlo*, *avi*, *ā-*  
*tum*, 1.

**deny**, *nēgo*, *avi*, *ātum*, 1.  
**depart**, *exēdo*, *cessi*, *ces-*  
*sum*, 3; *migro*, *ēmigro*, *avi*,  
*ātum*, 1.

**deplete**, *dēplōro*, *avi*, *ā-*  
*tum*, 1.

**deserve**, *mēreor*, *itus*, 2.  
**desire**, *cūpio*, *ivi* and *il*,  
*itum*, 3.

**desire**, *subis*, *stūdiūm*, *il*,  
*n*; *cūpiditas*, *ātis*, *f*.

**despise**, *contemno*, *mpei*,  
*mpium*, 3; *aspornor*, *ātus*, 1.

**despot**, *tyrannus*, *i*, *m*.  
**destitute**, *inops*, *ōpis*, *adj*.

**destroy**, *perdo*, *didi*, *dī-*  
*tum*, 3.

**destruction**, *exitium*, *il*, *n*.  
**destructive**, *perniciōsus*,  
*a*, *um*, *adj*.

**deter**, *dēterrēo*, *ūi*, *itum*, 2.  
**determine**, *constitūo*, *ūi*,  
*itum*, 3.

**devote oneself**, *ōpēram*  
*do*, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *dāre*, 1.

**devoted to**, *addictus*, *a*,  
*um*, *adj*.

**die**, *mōrior*, *mortuus*, 2.

## DIFFICULT.

**difficult**, difficilis, *a. adj.*  
**difficult**, somewhat, sub-  
 difficultis, *e. adj.*  
**dig**, fodio, fodi, fossum, 3.  
**diligence**, diligentia, *ae. f.*  
**diligent**, diligens, ntis, *adj.*  
**dine**, coeno, avi, atum, 1,  
 p. 88.  
**disaster**, clādē, is, *f.*  
**discern**, cerno, crēvi, crē-  
 tum, 3.  
**discharge**, fungor, notus, 3,  
 with *abl.*, p. 71.  
**discourse**, sermo, ōnis, *m.*  
**discover**, dētēgo, texi, tec-  
 tum, 3.  
**disease**, morbus, 1, *m.*  
**disembark**, trans., expōno,  
 pōui, pōitum, 3.  
**disgrace**, turpitudo, inis, *f.*  
**disgraceful**, turpis, *e. adj.*  
**disgust**, it, taedet, 2, p. 86.  
**dishonest**, imprōbus, *a.*  
 um, *adj.*  
**dishonesty**, fraus, dis, *f.*  
**dismiss**, dimitto, misi, mis-  
 sum, 3.  
**displease**, displicēo, ūi,  
 itum, 2, with *dat.*  
**disposed**, affectus, *a. um,*  
*adj.*  
**distance**, longinquitas, tā-  
 tis, *f.*  
**distant**, longinquus, *a. um,*  
*adj.*  
**distant**, to be, absum, p.  
 81.  
**distinguished**, insignis, *e;*  
 ēgrēgius, *a. um, adj.*  
**distrust**, diffido, isus sum,  
 3, p. 88.  
**disturb**, turbo, avi, atum,  
 1; mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.  
**ditoh**, fossa, *ae. f.*  
**divide**, sēpāro, avi, atum,  
 1; divido, lei, leum, 3.  
**divine**, divinus, *a. um, adj.*  
**do**, facio, feci, factum, 3.  
**dog**, canis, is, *c.*  
**doubt**, dubito, avi, atum, 1.  
**doubtful**, dubius, *a. um,*  
*adj.*  
**dove**, cōlumba, *ae. f.*  
**drag**, draw, trāho, traxi,  
 tractum, 3.  
**draw together**, contrāho,  
 traxi, tractum, 3.  
**draw up in order**, in-  
 strō, xi, ctum, 3.  
**drink**, bibo, i, itum, 3.  
**drive out**, expello, pūli,  
 pulsum, 3.  
**duty**, mūnus, ōris, *m.*  
**dwell**, hābito, avi, atum, 1.

## EVERY ONE.

## E

**eager after**, stūdiōsus, *a.*  
 um, *adj.* with *gen.*  
**eager**, be, stūdiō, ūi, —, 2.  
**eagle**, āquila, *ae. f.*  
**ear**, auris, is, *f.*  
**earnestly**, vēmētēr,  
 magnōpērē, *adv.*  
**earth**, terra, *ae. f.*  
**easily**, fācilis, *adv.*  
**easy**, fācilis, *e. adj.*  
**eat**, ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3.  
**educate**, ēduco, avi, atum, 1.  
**elegant**, ēlēgans, ntis, *adj.*  
**elephant**, ēlēphantus, 1, *m.*  
**eloquent**, ēlēquens, ntis,  
*adj.*  
**embark**, nāvem (naves)  
 conscendo, di, sum, 3.  
**embroider**, pingo, pinxi,  
 pictum, 3.  
**eminent**, eximius, ēgrē-  
 gius, *a. um, adj.*  
**empire**, impērium, ii, *m.*  
**employ**, ādhībēo, ūi, itum, 2.  
**encourage**, hortor, atus, 1.  
**end**, finis, is, *m.*  
 —, put an end to, finio,  
 ivi, itum, 4.  
**endure**, patiōr, passus, 3;  
 fēro, p. 80.  
**enemy** (public), hostis, is, *c.*  
 — (personal), inimicus,  
 1, *m.* [*adj.*]  
**engaged**, occūpātus, *a. um,*  
**enjoy**, frōr, itus and ctus,  
 3, with *abl.*  
**enmity**, inimicitia, *ae. f.*  
**enough**, sātis, *adv.*  
**enquire**, quaero, quaesivi,  
 quaesitum, 3.  
**enter**, intro, avi, atum, 1.  
**entice**, lācio, 3 (obs.), p. 120.  
**entreat**, ōro, avi, atum, 1.  
**envy**, invidia, *ae. f.*  
**epistle**, epistōla, *ae. f.* [3.  
**esteem**, diligo, lexi, lectum,  
 eternal, aeternus, *a. um,*  
*adj.*  
**Europe**, Eurōpa, *ae. f.*  
**even**, *adj.*, aequus, *a. um.*  
 —, *conj.*, etiam.  
**evening comes on**, ves-  
 pērascit, 3, *impers.*, p. 87.  
**ever** = at any time, un-  
 quam, *adv.*  
**ever** = always, semper,  
*adv.*  
**every**, omnis, *e. adj.*  
**every day**, quōtidis, *adv.*  
**every one**, quisque, quae-

## FIGHT.

que, quodque, and *subst.* quic-  
 que (quidque), *pron.*  
**evident**, it is, constat, stit-  
 tit, 1.  
**evil**, *subs.*, mālum, ii, *m.*  
**example**, exemplum, i, *m.*  
**excellent**, praestans, ntis;  
 praestābilis, *e. adj.*  
**except**, praeter, *prep.* with  
 acc.  
**exercise**, to, exerceo, ūi,  
 itum, 2. [2.  
**exhibit**, praebēo, ūi, itum,  
**exhort**, hortor, ādhortor,  
 atus, 1.  
**exile**, exilium, ii, *m.*  
 —, live in, exilium  
 ago, ēgi, actum, 3.  
**experienced**, pēritus, *a.*  
 um, *adj.*  
**extend**, prōfero, tūli, lātum,  
 ferre, 3.  
**eye**, ōculus, i, *m.*

## F

**fable**, fabula, *ae. f.*  
**fall**, cādo, cecidi, cāsum, 3.  
**faith**, fides, ūi, *f.*  
**faithful**, fidēlis, *e;* fidus,  
*a. um, adj.*  
**far**, longē, *adv.*  
 — and wide, longē  
 lātēquē.  
**farther**, too far, longius,  
*adv. comp.*  
**father**, pater, tris, *m.*  
**father-in-law**, sōcer, ōris,  
**fault**, culpa, *ae. f.* [*m.*]  
**fault**, find, vitupēro, culpo,  
 avi, atum, 1.  
**favour**, grātia, *ae. f.*  
**fear**, mētus, ūi; timor,  
 ōris, *m.*  
**fear**, to, mētūo, i, atum, 3;  
 timēo, ūi, —, 2; vēreor, itus,  
**feeble**, debilis, *e. adj.* [2.  
**feed on**, vescor, with *abl.*,  
 3.  
**feel**, sentio, ei, sum, 4.  
**feign**, simūlo, avi, atum, 1.  
**fellow-citizen**, civis, is, *c.*  
**fellow-soldier**, commilitō,  
 ōnis, *m.*  
**few**, paucus, *a. um, adj.*  
**fidelity**, fides, ūi, *f.*  
**field**, āger, gri, *m.*  
**ferce**, ferox, ōcis, *adj.*  
**fiery**, made of fire, igneus,  
*a. um, adj.*  
**fig**, fig-tree, ficus, i, *f.*  
**fight**, pugno, avi, atum, 1.

## FIGHT.

**fight** (*a battle*), committō, mīst, missum, 3.  
**find**, repēro, pēri, pertum, 4; invēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.  
**find fault with**, culpo, vitāpēro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**finish**, conficō, feci, secutum, 3. [*adj.*]  
**finished**, perfectus, a, um, āre, ignis, la, m.  
 — = *conflagration*, incendium, 1, a.  
**fire**, be on, ardēo, ai, sum, 2.  
**first** (*adv.*), primo, primum, *adv.*  
**first-rate**, primārius, a, um, *adj.*  
**fish**, pisces, la, m.  
**fix**, figo, fixi, fixum, 3.  
**flatter**, ādūlor, ātus, 1.  
**flattery**, ādūlatiō, ōris, f.  
 **flee**, fugio, fugi, fugitum, 3.  
 **flee to**, confugio, fugi, 3.  
 **fleet**, classis, la, f.  
 **flesh**, caro, carnis, f.  
 **flower**, flos, ōris, m.  
 **follow**, sequor, secutus, 3.  
 **follow up**, subsequor, catus, 3.  
 **folly**, stultitia, ae, f.  
 **foolish**, stultus, a, um, *adj.*  
 **foot-soldier**, pēdēs, itis, m. for (*prep.*), pro, *prep.* with *abl.*  
 **for** (*conj.*), nam, enim, *conj.*  
 **forage**, pābulor, ātus, 1.  
 **forced marches**, maxima itinera, n. pl.  
 **forces**, cōpias, ārum, f. pl.  
 **forehead**, frons, tis, f.  
 **foresee**, prōvidēo, vidi, visum, 2.  
 **forget**, obliviscor, itus, 3, with *gen.* [p. 83.]  
 **form** (*a plan*), inēo, 4, irr., *former*, pristinus, a, um; *prior*, us, *adj.* [*adv.*]  
 **formerly**, olim, quondam, *fortification*, munimentum, 1, a.; moenia, um, n. pl.  
 **fortify**, mūnio, ūvi, itum, 4.  
 **fortune**, fortūna, ae, f.  
 **fortunate**, felix, icis, *adj.*  
 **fountain**, fons, ntis, m.  
 **frame**, to, fabrico, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 **free**, liber, ēra, ōrum, *adj.*  
 **freedom**, libertas, itis, f.  
 **freely**, libērā, *adv.*  
 **friend**, amicus, 1, m.  
 **friendship**, amicitia, ae, f.  
 **frighten**, terrēo, ūi, itum, 2.  
 **from**, ā (*Ab*), dē, *prep.* with *abl.*

## GRIEVOUSLY.

**fruit**, fructus, ūs, m.  
 **full**, plenus, a, um, *adj.*  
 **function**, mōnus, ēris, n.  
 **funeral**, funus, ēris, n.  
 **furnish** = *supply*, praebēo, ūi, itum, 2.

## G

**gain** = *get, obtain*, pāro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 **game**, lūdus, 1, m.  
 **garden**, hortus, 1, m.  
 **garment**, vestis, la, f.; vestimentum, 1, n.  
 **gate**, porta, ae, f.  
 **gather**, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.  
 — *together*, contrāho, traxi, tractum, 3.  
 **Gaul**, Gallia, ae, f.  
 **gaze**, thēor, itus, 2, v. *dep.*  
 **general**, impērator, ōris, m.  
 **get**, gain, pāro, āvi, ātum, 1; ādipiscor, eptus, 3, v. *dep.*  
 **get back**, recāpēro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 **get together**, cōgo, cōegi, cōactum, 3.  
 **gift**, dōnum, 1, n.  
 **girl**, puella, ae, f. [1.  
 **give**, do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, glide, lābor, lapsus, 3, v. *dep.*  
 **glory**, glōria, ae, f.  
 **go**, eo, ūvi or ūi, irē, itum, 4, v. irr.  
 **go in, out, &c.**, see *compe.* of *eo*, p. 83. [3.]  
 **go to see**, viso, visi, visum, God, Deus, 1, m.  
 **goddess**, dēa, ae, f.  
 **gods**, of the, divinus, a, um, *adj.*  
 **gold**, aurum, 1, n.  
 **golden**, aurēus, a, um, *adj.*  
 **good**, bonus, prōbus, a, um, *adj.*  
 **good**, subs., dōnum, 1, n.  
 **good**, do, to, prōsum, p. 31.  
 **goods**, bona, ōrum, n. pl. [1.  
 **govern**, gūberno, āvi, ātum, grandfather, āvus, 1, m.  
 **grass**, grāmen, inis, n.  
 **great**, magnus, a, um, *adj.*  
 **great**, how, quantus, a, um, *rel. adj.*  
 **greatly**, magnōpēre, *adv.*  
 **Greece**, Graecia, ae, f.  
 **Greek**, Grecian, Graecus, a, um, *adj.*  
 **grief**, dolor, ōris, m.  
 **grieves**, it, piget, piguit & pigitum est, pigere, v. *impers.*  
 **grievously**, grāviter, *adv.*

## HOPE.

**ground**, hūmus, 1, f.  
 **guard**, to, custōdio, ūvi, itum, 4; thēor, itus, 2.  
 **guardian**, custos, ōdis, m.  
 **guilt**, scēlus, ēris, n.  
 **guilty**, noxius, a, um, *adj.*

## H

**habit**, consuetudo, inis, f.  
 **hail**, it, grandinat, āvit, v. *impers.*  
 **hand**, mōnus, ūs, f.  
 **hand down**, trādo, prōdo, didi, dītum, 3.  
 **handle**, tracto, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 **happen**, fio, factus sum, fieri, v. irr.  
 **happy**, beātus, a, um, *adj.*  
 **happily**, beātē, *adv.*  
 **harass**, vexo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 **harbour**, portus, ūs, m.  
 **hard**, dūrus, a, um, *adj.*  
 **hardship**, lābor, ōris, m.  
 **hare**, lepūs, ōris, m.  
 **hasten**, contendo, di, sum & tum, 3.  
 **hatred**, ōdium, ūi, n.  
 **have**, habēo, ūi, itum, 2.  
 — *rather, prefer*, mālō, ūi, malle, irr. v.  
 **head**, cāpitā, itis, n.  
 — *be at the*, praesum, fui, with *dat.*, irr. v.  
 **health**, vālētudo, inis, f.  
 **health**, be in, vālēo, ūi, itum, 2. [3.]  
 **heap up**, extrūo, xi, ctum, hear, audio, ūvi, itum, 4.  
 **hearing**, auditus, ūs, m.  
 **heart**, cōr, dis, n.  
 **heat**, calor, ōris, m.  
 **heaven**, coelum, 1, n.  
 **heavenly**, coelestis, e, *adj.*  
 **heavily**, grāviter, *adv.*  
 **heavy**, grāvis, e, *adj.* [1.  
 **help**, adiūvo, ūvi, jūtum, helpless, iners, eris, *adj.*  
 **high**, altus, a, um, *adj.*  
 — *very*, praecaltus, a, um, *adj.*  
 **highest**, summus, a, um, *adj. sup.*  
 **his**, hers, *gen.* of *is*, ēa: when referring to subject, sūus, a, um, *poss. pron.*  
 **hold** a levy, dēlectum habēo, ūi, itum, 2.  
 **hold together**, continēo, ūi, entum, 2.  
 **honesty**, prōbitas, itis, f.  
 **honour**, hōnor, ōris, m.  
 **hope**, spēro, āvi, ātum, 1.

## HOPE.

hope, *subs.*, spē, *sl. f.*  
 hoped for, spēritus, a, um,  
*adj.*  
 horn, cornu, ūs, n.  
 horse, ēquus, i, m.  
 horse-soldier, ēquēs, itis,  
*m.*  
 hostage, obēs, idis, c.  
 hour, hōra, ae, *f.*  
 house, dōmus, ūs; see p. 23.  
 how great, quantus, a, um,  
*rel. adj.*  
 how many, quōt, *indecl.*  
*rel. adj.*  
 human, hūmānus, a, um,  
*adj.*  
 hunger, fāmēs, is, *f.*  
 hunt, vēnor, ātus, i.  
 hurt, harm, nōcō, ūi,  
 itum, 2, with *dat.*; obsum, 2,  
 with *dat.*, p. 31.  
 hurtful, noxiūs, a, um,  
*adj.*  
 hurtful, to be, obsum, ūi,  
 esse, with *dat.*, *irr. v.*  
 husbandman, agrīcōla, ae,  
*m.*

## I

if, si, *conj.*  
 if, as, quāsi, *conj.* [*f.*  
 ignorance, ignōrātio, ōnis,  
 ignorant of (be), ignōro,  
 āvi, ātum, i.  
 ill, *adj.*, mālus, a, um, *adj.*  
 —, *adv.*, mālē, *adv.*  
 illness, morbus, i, m.  
 ill-will, invidia, ae, *f.*  
 ill-wishing, mālēvōlus, a,  
 um, *adj.*  
 image, imāgo, inis, *f.*;  
 imitāscrum, i, n.  
 imitate, imitor, ātus, i,  
*dep. v.*  
 immediately, stātīm, *adv.*  
 immense, ingens, tis, *adj.*  
 immortal, immortālis, e,  
*adj.*  
 immortality, immortālī-  
 tas, ātis, *f.*  
 impair, infringo, frēgi,  
 fractum, 3.  
 impiety, impious, nēfas,  
*indec. subs.*  
 improve, smendo, āvi, ā-  
 tum, i.  
 imprudence, imprudentia,  
 ae, *f.*  
 in, into, in, *prep.* with acc.  
 and *abl.*  
 indeed, quidem, *conj.*  
 indolence, ignāvia, ae;  
 segnitās, *sl. f.*  
 indolently, ignāvē, *adv.*  
 PR. L. I.

## KIND.

indulge, indulgēo, si, tum,  
 2, with *dat.*  
 industrious, industrius, a,  
 um, *adj.*  
 infamous, infāmis, e, *adj.*  
 infamy, infāmia, ae, *f.*  
 infantry, pēditātus, ūs, m.  
 inferior, inferior, ius, *adj.*  
*comp.*  
 infinite, infinitus, a, um,  
*adj.*  
 infirm, dēbilis, e, *adj.*  
 inhabitant, incōla, ae, c.  
 injure, obsum, obūi or of-  
 fūi, obesse, *irr. v.*; nōceo, ūi,  
 itum, 2, with *dat.*  
 injurious, noxiūs, a, um,  
*adj.*  
 innumerable, innūmēras,  
 a, um, *adj.*  
 inquire, rōgo, āvi, ātum, i;  
 quaero, quāsevi, quāseitum, 3.  
 insect, bestīōla, ae, *f.*  
 institute, institūo, ūi, ū-  
 tum, 3.  
 instrument, instrūmen-  
 tum, i, n.  
 integrity, prōbitas, ātis, *f.*  
 intellect, mens, tis, *f.*  
 intercept, interclādo, si,  
 sum, 3.  
 invent, repērio, pēri, per-  
 tum, 4.  
 iron, ferrum, i, n.  
 island, insūla, ae, *f.*  
 Italy, Itālia, ae, *f.*  
 its, ūsus, a, um, *poss. pron.*

## J

join, jungo, xi, ctum, 3.  
 — (battle), proelium com-  
 mitto, misi, misum, 3.  
 journey, iter, itinēris, n.  
 joy, gaudium, ii, n.  
 joyful, laetus, a, um, *adj.*  
 judge, iudex, icis, m.  
 —, to, iudico, āvi, ā-  
 tum, i.  
 judgment, iudicium, ii, n.  
 just, justus, a, um, *adj.*  
 justly, justē, *adv.*

## K

keen, ācer, cris, cre, *adj.*  
 keep off, prōhibeo, ūi,  
 itum, 2.  
 keep guard, vigilo, āvi,  
 ātum, i.  
 kill, interficio, feci, sectum,  
 3.  
 kind, bēnignus, a, um, *adj.*

## LIKE.

kindly, bēnignē, *adv.*  
 king, rex, regis, m.  
 —, to be, regno, āvi, ā-  
 tum, i.  
 kingdom, regnum, i, n.  
 knee, genu, ūs, m.  
 know, scio, ivi and ii,  
 itum, 4.  
 know not, nescio, ivi and  
 ii, itum, 4.  
 knowledge, scientia, prī-  
 dentia, ae, *f.*  
 knowledge, without,  
 clam, *prep.* with acc. and *abl.*  
 known, nōtus, a, um, *adj.*

## L

labour, labor, ōris, m.  
 lake, lacus, ūs, m.  
 lament over, dēplōro, āvi,  
 ātum, i.  
 land, terra, ae, *f.*; āger,  
 gri, m.  
 language, lingua, ae, *f.*  
 large, magnus, a, um, *adj.*  
 last day, sup̄remus diēs, m.  
 last, at, dēnum, *adv.*  
 Latin, Lātīnus, a, um, *adj.*  
 law, lex, legis, *f.*  
 lay waste, vasto, āvi,  
 ātum, i.  
 lay siege to, obsidēo, sēdi,  
 sessum, 2.  
 lead, dāco, xi, ctum, 3.  
 — across, transdūco, xi,  
 ctum, 3.  
 lead out, edūco, xi, ctum, 3.  
 leader, dux, dūcis, c.  
 learn, disco, didici, —, 3.  
 learn in addition, ad-  
 disco, didici, 3.  
 learn = ascertain, cognos-  
 co, ōvi, itum, 3.  
 learned, doctus, a, um, *adj.*  
 leave, relīquo, liqui, lic-  
 tum, 3.  
 leg, crūs, ōris, n.  
 legion, lēgio, ōnis, *f.*  
 length, longitūdo, inis, *f.*  
 lest, nē, p. 97.  
 lest, and, nēvē.  
 letter of the alphabet,  
 littēra, ae, *f.*  
 letter (an epistle), littērae,  
 ārum; epistōla, ae, *f.*  
 letters, literature, littē-  
 rae, ārum, *f.*  
 levy, dēlectus, ūs, m.  
 liar, lying, mendax, ācis,  
 subs. and *adj.*  
 licitor, licitor, ōris, m.  
 lie (on the ground), iāco, ō-  
 si, —, 2.

## LIE.

**lie** (*to speak falsely*), mentior, itum, 4.  
**lieutenant**, legatus, i, m.  
**life**, vita, ae, f.  
**light** (*adj.*), levis, e, *adj.*  
**light** (*subst.*), lux, lūcis, f.  
**light**, it becomes, lūcescit, 3, *impers. v.*, p. 87.  
**lightning**, fulmen, inis, n.  
**like**, similis, e, *adj.*  
**likely**, verisimilis, e, *adj.*  
**likeness**, imago, inis, f.  
**limit**, finis, m.  
 —, to, finio, ivi, itum, 4.  
**line of battle**, acies, ei, f.  
**lion**, leo, ōnis, m.  
**little**, parvus, a, um, *adj.*  
**live**, vivo, vixi, victum, 3.  
**live on**, vescor, with *abl.*, 3, v. *dep.*  
**live in exile**, exilium ago, *gerl. actum*, 3.  
**Livy**, Līvius, ii, m.  
**load**, ōnus, ōris, n.  
**lofty**, celsus, a, um, *adj.*  
**long** (*adj.*), longus, a, um,  
**long** (*adv.*), diū, *adv.* [*adj.*]  
**look at**, specto, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 — upon or into, intueor, tultus and tūtus, 2.  
**looks**, vultus, ūs, m.  
**loosen**, solvo, solvi, solūtum, 3.  
**lord**, dōminus, i, m.  
**lot**, sors, rtis, f.  
**love**, amo, āvi, ātum, 1;  
 diligo, lexi, lectum, 3.  
**love in return**, rēdāmo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**lovely**, amābilis, e, *adj.*  
**low**, hūmilis, e, *adj.*  
**lower**, inferior, ius, *adj.*  
*comp.*  
**luckily**, feliciter, *adv.*  
**lucky**, felix, icis, *adj.*

## M

**Macedonian**, Mācedō, dōnis, m.  
**made**, factus, affectus, a, um, *part. and adj.*  
**madness**, furor, ōris, m.  
**magistrate**, māgistrātus, ūs, m.  
**magnificent**, magnificus, a, um, *adj.*  
**maiden**, virgo, inis, f.  
**maintain**, servo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**make**, faciō, feci, factum, 3.  
**man**, hōmo, inis, c.; vir, *adj.*

## NARROW.

**manage**, gēro, gēsi, gēturum, 3.  
**manifest**, manifestus, a, um, *adj.*  
**maniple**, manipulus, i, m.  
**manner**, mos, mōris, m.  
**many**, multus, a, um, *adj.*  
**many**, how, quā, *indec. rel. adj.*  
**many**, very, permulti, ae, a, *adj.*  
**marble**, marmōr, ōris, n.  
**market-place**, fōrum, i, n.  
**master**, dōminus, i, m.; māgister, tri, m.  
**measure**, to, mētior, mēsus, 4.  
**meditate**, mēdītor, ātus, 1.  
**meet**, to, ōbeo, ivi and ii, itum, 4.  
**mellow**, mollis, e, *adj.*  
**membrane**, membrāna, ae, f.  
**memorable**, mēmōrābilis, e, *adj.*  
**memory**, mēmōria, ae, f.  
**metal**, mētallum, i, n. [1].  
**migrate**, migro, āvi, ātum,  
**mild**, mitis, e, *adj.*  
**milk**, lac, lactis, n.  
**mind**, mens, ntis, f.  
**mindful**, mēmōr, ōris, *adj.*  
**miserable**, miser, ēri, ērum, *adj.*  
**mistake**, error, ōris, m.  
 —, make a, erro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**mistress**, dōmīna, ae, f.  
**money**, pēcūnia, ae, f.  
**month**, mensis, is, m.  
**monument**, mōnūmentum,  
**moon**, lūna, ae, f. [1, n.  
**more**, plus, plūria, *neut. adj.*; in *pl.* plūres, a  
**mortal**, mortālis, e, *adj.*  
**mother**, māter, tris, f.  
**mound**, agger, ōris, m.  
**mount**, to, conscendo, di, sum, 3.  
**mountain**, mons, ntis, m.  
**mouth**, ōs, ōris, n.  
**move**, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.  
**much**, multus, a, um, *adj.*  
**multitude**, multitudo, inis, f.  
**my** (*mine*), meus, a, um, *poss. pron.*

## N

## OLD.

**native-land**, patria, ae, f.  
**nature**, nātūra, ae, f.  
**naval**, nāvilis, e, *adj.*  
**near** to (*prep.*), propē, *adv.*  
**near** (*adj.*), propinquus, a, um, *adj.*  
**necessary**, nēcēssārius, a, um, *adj.*  
**necessity**, nēcēssitas, itis, f.  
**need**, ōpus, *indec. subs.*, with *abl.* and *adj.*  
**needful**, nēcēssārius, a, um, *adj.*  
**needle**, ācus, ūs, f.  
**neither**, neuter, tra, trum, *indec. pron.*  
**neither**, nor, nēquē, nēc, *conj.*  
**nest**, nidus, i, m.  
**net**, rēte, is, n.  
**never**, nunquam, *adv.*  
**new**, nōvus, a, um, *adj.*  
**next**, proximus, a, um, *adj.*  
*sup.*  
**night**, nox, noctis, f.  
**nightingale**, luscīnia, ae, f.  
**no**, none, nullus, a, um, *indec. pron.*  
**noble**, nobilis, e, *adj.*  
**nobody**, no one, nēmō, inis, c.  
**not**, nōn, haud, *adv.*  
**nothing**, nīhil, *indec. subs.*  
**nourish**, nūtrio, ivi, itum, 4.  
**now**, nunc, jam, *adv.*  
**number**, nūmērus, i, m.  
**nurture**, nūtrio, ivi, itum, 4.  
 0  
**oak**, quercus, ūs, f.  
**oath**, iurāndum, n.; see p. 22.  
**obey**, pāreo, ūi, itum, 2;  
 ōbēdio, ivi, itum, 4, with *dat.*  
**object**, rēctus, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**obscure**, obscūrus, a, um, *adj.*  
**observe** (*carefully*), contemplor, ātus, v. *dep.*, 1.  
**obtain**, pāro, āvi, ātum, 1;  
 ādipscoor, adeptus, 3.  
**obtain**, possession of, pōtior, itus, 4, with *abl.*  
**ocean**, ōcēānus, i, m.  
**often**, saepē, *adv.*  
 —, very, saepissimē, *adv.*  
**oftentimes**, saepēntimēro, *adv.*  
**old**, sēnex, sēnis (of persons only); vētus, ōris, *adj.*

## OLD AGE.

old age, senectūs, ſtis, *f.*  
 olden, antiquus, a, um, *adj.*  
 one, unus, a, um, *adj.*  
 one of the two, alter, a, um, *indef. pron.*  
 only, solum, *adv.*  
 onset, impetus, ſis, *m.*  
 oppose, resisto, stitū, stitum, 3, with *dat.*; oppugno, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 oracle, oraculum, i, n.  
 oration, oratio, ōnis, *f.*  
 orator, orator, ōris, *m.*  
 order, jūbō, jussī, jussum, 2.  
 ornament, ornāmentum, i, n.; decus, ōris, n.  
 other, of two, alter, ā, um, *indef. pron.*  
 overcome, sup̄ero, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 owe, ought, debēo, ſi, itum, 2.  
 owing, it is, per(te) stat.  
 ox, bōs, bōvis, c.

## P

page, passus, ſis, *m.*  
 pain, dolor, ōris, *m.*  
 pains, to take, curo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 paint, pingō, nxi, ctum, 3.  
 parent, pater, entis, c.  
 part, pars, tis, *f.*  
 partner, socius, i, m.  
 pass by, over, practēro, ſi, itum, 4.  
 pass away, labor, lapsus, 3.  
 — through, transeo, ſi, itum, 4.  
 pass (come to), fio, factus, fieri, v. *irr.*  
 passion, cupiditas, ſtis, *f.*  
 past, practēritus, a, um, *adj.*  
 path, via, ae, *f.*  
 patience, patientia, ae, *f.*  
 patiently, patienter, *adv.*  
 peace, pax, pacis, *f.*  
 peacock, pavo, ōnis, *m.*  
 pear, pirum, i, n.  
 pear-tree, pirus, i, *f.*  
 pearl, margarita, ae, *f.*  
 perceive, sentio, si, sum, 4.  
 perfect, perfectus, a, um, *adj.*  
 perish, p̄ro, int̄ro, ſi, itum, 4.  
 persuade, persuadēo, si, sum, 2, with *dat.*  
 perverse, perversus, a, um, *adj.*

## PREVENT.

philosopher, philosophus, i, m.  
 pillage, diripio, ſi, itum, 3.  
 pitch a camp, castra pono, pōsi, pōsitum, 3.  
 pity, misereor, itus and ritus, 2, v. *dep.*; misereor, miseritum est, v. *impers.*, with place, locus, i, m. [*gen.* —, to, colloco, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 plain, planities, ſi, *f.*  
 plan, consilium, ii, n.  
 plant, planta, ae, *f.*  
 play, ludō, si, sum, 3.  
 pleasant, jucundus, a, um, *adj.*  
 please, placeo, ſi, itum, 2, with *dat.*  
 pleasures, it, placet, ult, v. *impers.*, p. *ss.*  
 pleasing, gratus, a, um, *adj.*  
 pleasure, voluptas, ſtis, *f.*  
 plenty, copia, ae, *f.*  
 plum, prunum, i, n.  
 plum-tree, prunus, i, *f.*  
 plunder (*subs.*), praeda, ae, *f.* —, to, diripio, ſi, itum, 3.  
 poem, carmen, inis, n.  
 poet, poeta, ae, m.  
 Pompey, Pompeius, ii, m.  
 poor, pauper, ſis, *adj.*  
 portrait, imago, inis, *f.*  
 post, statio, ōnis, *f.*  
 poverty, paupertas, ſtis, *f.*  
 power, potentia, ae, *f.*; potestas, ſtis, *f.*  
 powerful, potens, tis, *adj.*  
 praise (*subs.*), laus, dis, *f.* —, to, laudo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 precious, carus, a, um, *adj.*  
 prefer, praefero, thli, latum, v. *irr.*; malo, malui, malle, v. *irr.*  
 prepare, paro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 prepared, paratus, a, um, *part. and adj.*  
 presence of, in, coram, *prep.* with *abl.*  
 present, praesens, tis, *adj.* —, to be, adsum, afui, adesse, v. *irr.*  
 preserve, servo, conservo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 press, premo, pressi, pressum, 3.  
 press upon, opprimo, pressi, pressum, 3.  
 pretence, simulatio, ōnis, *f.*  
 prevent, obsto, stiti, stitum, 1.

## REASON.

probable, verisimilis, e, *adj.*  
 prohibit, prohibeo, ſi, itum, 2.  
 promise, promitto, misi, missum, 3; polliceor, itus, 2.  
 properly, probē, rectē, *adv.*  
 prostrate, to, amigo, xi, ctum, 3.  
 protect, tuor, itus and tatus, v. *dep.*, 2.  
 provide, providēo, vidi, visum, 2.  
 provisions, comestus, ſis, m. *pl.*  
 prudence, prudentia, ae, *f.*  
 prudent, prudens, tis, *adj.*  
 public, publicus, a, um, *adj.*  
 punish, punio, ſi, itum, 4.  
 punishment, poena, ae, *f.*  
 pupil, discipulus, i, m.  
 pursuit, studium, ii, n.  
 put an end to, finio, ſi, itum, 4.  
 put to death, interficio, ſeci, lectum, 3.  
 put to flight, fugo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 power of, in the, p̄nes, *prep.* with *acc.*

## Q

quality, good, virtus, ſtis, *f.*  
 queen, regina, ae, *f.*  
 quiet, tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*  
 quit, excedo, censi, cessum, 3.

## R

race, genus, ſis, n.  
 rainbow, arcus coelestis, m.  
 rains, it, pluit, pluit or pluvit, pluvē, 3, v. *impers.*  
 raise (*forces*), comparo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 rapacious, rapax, ſtis, *adj.*  
 rapid, rapidus, a, um, *adj.*  
 rare, rarus, a, um, *adj.*  
 rashness, temeritas, ſtis, *f.*  
 rather, have, malo, ſi, v. *irr.*  
 read, lego, legi, lectum, 3.  
 read aloud, recito, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 read through, perlēgo, legi, lectum, 3.  
 ready, paratus, a, um, *part. and adj.*  
 reason, ratio, ōnis, *f.*

## RECEIVE.

receive, accipio, cēpi, cep-  
tum, 3.  
recklessness, tēmēritas,  
ātis, *f.*  
recover, rēcūpēro, āvi,  
ātum, 1.  
refresh, rēcrō, āvi, ātum, 1.  
refuse, rēctō, āvi, ātum, 1.  
reign, regno, āvi, ātum, 1.  
rejoice, aspernor, ātus, 1.  
rejoice, gaudēo, gāvissus  
sum, 2, *a. pass. v.*  
relate, narro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
remain, mēnēo, mansi,  
mansum, 2.  
remain over, sūpersum,  
fui, esse, *irr. v.*  
remember, rēminiscor,  
—, 3.  
remembered, to be, mē-  
mōribilis, *e. adj.*  
render assistance, auxi-  
lium fēro, tāli, lātum, fēre,  
3, *irr. v.*  
renowned, cīarus, *a. um,*  
*adj.*  
repents, it, poenitet, *p. 86.*  
resist, rēstō, stitī, stitum,  
3, with *dat.*  
resolve, constitto, ūi,  
ūtum, 3.  
respect, to, observo, āvi,  
ātum, 1.  
rest, the, cētēri, ērae, ēra,  
*adj. pl.* [2]  
restrain, cōrēō, ūi, ūtum,  
retire, cēdo, concēdo, cessi,  
cessum, 3.  
return, rēdeo, *p. 83*; rē-  
verto, ūi, sum; rēvertor, sus, 3.  
reverence, to, vērēor,  
ātus, 1.  
reward, praeſum, ūi, *a.*  
Rhine, Rhēnus, *i. m.*  
Rhodes, Rhōdus, *i. f.*  
Rhone, Rhōdānus, *i. m.*  
rich, dives, itis, *adj.*  
riches, divitiāe, ārum, *pl. f.*  
ride, to, vēhor, vectus, 3.  
right, rectus, *a. um. adj.*  
rightly, prōbē, rectē, *adv.*  
rise, to, ōrior, ortus, ōriti, *a.*  
river, flūvius, *i. m.*; flūmen,  
inis, *n.*  
robber, lātō, ōnis, *m.*  
rock, rūpes, *is, f.*  
Roman, Rōmānus, *a. um,*  
Rōmē, Rōma, *ae, f.* [*adj.*]  
root, rādix, icis, *f.*  
rose, rōs, *ae, f.*  
rough, rugged, asper, ēra,  
ērum, *adj.*  
round, circum, *prep. with*  
*acc.*

## SERVICEABLE.

rule, rēgo, xi, ctum, 3.  
run, curro, cūcurri, cur-  
sum, 3.  
rush together, convōlo,  
āvi, ātum, 1.

## S

sacred, sacer, cra, crum, *adj.*  
sacrifice, to, immōlo, āvi,  
ātum, 1.  
sad, tristis, *e. adj.*  
safe, tūtus, *a. um. adj.*  
safety, silitis, ūtis, *f.*  
sagacious, prudēs, tis,  
*adj.*  
sailor, nauta, *ae, m.*  
sake of, for the, grātīa,  
causā, with *gen.*  
Sallust, Sallustius, ūi, *m.*  
same, idem, eādem, idem,  
*adj. pron.*  
sanguinary, ātrox, ōcis,  
*adj.*  
save, servo, conservo, āvi,  
ātum, 1.  
savour of, sūpio, ūi, 3.  
say, dico, xi, ctum, 3.  
scarcely, vix, *adv.*  
scent, ōdor, ōris, *m.*  
scholar, discipulus, *i. m.*  
school, schōla, *ae, f.*  
Scythian, Scythia, *ae, m.*  
sea, mārē, is, *n.*  
— of the, mārinus, *a.*  
*um. adj.*  
seat, eēdes, is, *f.*  
second, sēcundus, *a. um;*  
alter, *a. um. adj.*  
secretly, clam, *adv.*  
see, vidēo, vidi, visum, 2;  
cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3.  
see, go to, viso, visi, visum.  
seeing, visus, ūis, *m.* [3]  
seek, quaero, quaeſivi,  
quaeſitum, 3.  
seem, vidēor, visus, 2.  
seize, comprēhendo, di,  
sum, 3; rēpio, ūi, tum, 3.  
seize on, arripio, ūi, rep-  
tum, 3.  
seldom, rāro, *adv.*  
senate, sēnātus, ūis, *m.*  
send, mitto, misi, mis-  
sum, 3. [*etc.*]  
send on before, praeſumitto,  
— together, committo,  
sense, sensus, ūis, *m.* [*etc.*]  
separate, sēpāro, āvi, ātum,  
1; divido, visi, visum, 3.  
servant, minister, tri, *m.*  
serviceable, ūtilis, *e. adj.*  
— to be, prōsum, *p. 31.*

## SOME ONE.

set out, prōfiscor, feci-  
tus, 3.  
set (as example), praebēo,  
ūi, tum, 2.  
severe, sēvērus, *a. um;*  
grāvis, *e. adj.*  
severely, grāviter, *adv.*  
shake, quatio, quassum, 3.  
shames, it, pōdet, *p. 86.*  
share, to, paritor, itus, *a.*  
sharp, acutus, *a. um. adj.*  
sharpen, acūo, ūi, ātum, 3.  
shield, scūtum, *i. n.*  
shine, fulgēo, si, sum, 2.  
ship, nāvis, is, *f.*  
shore, litus, ōris, *n.*  
short, brēvis, *e. adj.*  
shortly, mox, *adv.*  
shout, clamor, ōris, *m.* [1].  
—, to, clāmo, āvi, ātum,  
shut off, intercūdo, si,  
sum, 3.  
Sicily, Sicilia, *ae, f.*  
sick, aeger, gra, grum, *adj.*  
side with, adsum, *p. 31.*  
side, on this, cis, citrā,  
*prep. with acc.*  
siege, obsidio, ōnis, *f.*  
sign, signum, *i. n.*  
silence, silentium, *i. n.*  
silent, to be, taceo, ūi,  
tum, 2.  
silver, argentum, *i. n.*  
sing, canto, āvi, ātum, 1;  
cāno, cēcini, cantum, 3.  
sister, sōror, ōris, *f.*  
sit, sēdeo, sēdi, sēsum, 2.  
skilful, skilled in, pē-  
tus, *a. um*; solēris, rtis, *adj.*  
skin (of animal), pellis, is, *f.*  
slaughter, caedes, is, *f.*;  
clādes, is, *f.*  
slave, servus, *i. m.*  
slavery, servitū, ūtis, *f.*  
slay, interficio, fēci, fectum;  
occido, cidi, cisum, 3.  
sleep (subs.), somnus, *i. m.*  
—, to, dormio, ūvi, ūtum,  
tum, 4.  
slender, tēnuis, *e. adj.* [*f.*]  
slowness, cōgnitās, *ei.*  
sluggish, sēgnis, *e*; ignā-  
vus, *a. um. adj.*  
small, parvus, *a. um. adj.*  
smell, ōdor, ōris, *m.*  
snow, nix, nivis, *f.*  
snows, it, ningit, *p. 87.*  
so, itā, tam, *adv.*  
soft, mollis, *e. adj.*  
soften, mollio, ūvi, tum, 4.  
soldier, miles, itis, *c.*  
some, nongullus, *a. um. adj.*  
some one, some thing,  
āliquis, āliquid, *indef. pron.*

SOMETIME.

**sometime**, quondam, *adv.*  
**sometimes**, nonnunquam, *adv.*  
**son**, filius, li, m.; voc. fili.  
**son-in-law**, gener, eri, m.  
**song**, carmen, inis, n.; cantus, ūs, m.  
**soon**, mox, *adv.*  
**soon as**, simul atque (ac), *conj.*  
**sorrow**, dolor, ōris, m.  
**soul**, animus, i, m.  
**sound**, sonitus, ūs, m.  
**sovereignty**, dominātus, ūs, m.  
**sow**, sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.  
**speak**, loquor, locūtus, 3.  
**to**, alioquor, ūtus, 3.  
**speech**, oratio, ōnis, f.  
**spend one's life**, to, actātem agere.  
**spirited**, ferox, ōcis, *adj.*  
**splendid**, splendidus, a, um, *adj.*  
**spring**, vēr, vēris, n.  
**sprout**, planta, ae, f.  
**spur**, calcār, āris, n.  
**spy out**, spectātor, ūtus, 1.  
**stag**, cervus, i, m.  
**stand**, sto, stēti, stātum, 1.  
**star**, stella, ae, f.  
**state**, civitas, ātis, f.  
**station**, statio, ōnis, f.  
**statue**, imāgo, inis, f.  
**steep**, arduus, a, um, *adj.*  
**stern**, atrox, ōcis, *adj.*  
**stone**, lapis, idis, m.  
**stone**, ol, lapideus, a, um, *adj.*  
**storm**, tempestas, ātis, f.  
**to**, take by, expugno, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**story**, fabula, ae, f.  
**straight**, rectus, a, um, *adj.*  
**strength**, vis, f.: see p. 22.  
**strengthen**, firmo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**strive**, nitor, nixus, 3.  
**hard**, ōntor, etc.  
**strong**, vālidus, a, um, *adj.*  
**make**, firmo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**study**, studium, li, n.  
**to**, studēo, ūi, —, 2, with dat.  
**successful**, felix, icis, *adj.*  
**sudden**, subitūs, a, um, *adj.*  
**suddenly**, subito, *adv.*  
**sufer**, pātor, passus, 3.  
**sufficiently**, sātis, *adv.*  
**summer**, aestas, ātis, f.  
**sun**, sol, solis, m.  
**sup**, coeno, āvi, and coenātus sum, 1: see p. 85.

TONGUE.

**supplies**, commētūs, ūm, m.  
**surround**, cingo, xi, ctum, 3.  
**survive**, supersum, p. 31.  
**swear**, jūro, āvi, ātum, 1: see p. 85.  
**sweet**, dulcis, suāvis, e, *adj.*  
**swell**, intumesco, tūmū, 3.  
**swift**, celer, ōris, ōre, *adj.*  
**sword**, gladius, i, m.  
**Syracuse**, Syracūsae, ārum, f.

T

**table**, mensa, ae, f.  
**take**, capio, cepi, captum, 3.  
**by storm**, expugno, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**tall**, celsus, a, um, *adj.* [1.  
**taste**, to, gusto, āvi, ātum, 3.  
**tax**, vectigal, ālis, n.  
**teach**, doceo, ūi, ctum, 2.  
**teacher**, māgister, tri, m.  
**tell**, dico, xi, ctum, 3.  
**tempest**, tempestas, ātis, f.  
**temple**, templum, i, n.  
**tender**, tener, a, um, *adj.*  
**tent**, tabernaculum, i, n.  
**terrify**, terrēo, ūi, ctum, 2.  
**territories**, fines, ūm, m.  
**terror**, terror, ōris, m.  
**that** (pron.), istē, illē, is, p. 34.  
**that** (conj.), ūt, p. 97.  
**not**, nē, quin, p. 97.  
**their own**, gen. pl. of is, ēa, id; when referring to subject, suus, a, um, poss. pron.  
**then**, tum, *adv.*  
**then indeed**, tum dēnum.  
**there**, ibi, *adv.*  
**thin**, tenuis, e, *adj.*  
**thing**, rēs, ūi, f.  
**think**, puto, cogito, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**thither**, ūd, *adv.*  
**through**, pēr, prep. with acc.  
**throw**, jacio, jeci, jactum, conficio, feci, jectum, 3.  
**throw a bridge over a river**, ūmen ponte jungo, junxi, actum, 3. [n.  
**thunderbolt**, fulmen, inis.  
**thunders**, it, tōnāt, p. 87.  
**thus**, ita, *adv.*  
**tiger**, tigris, is and idis, c.  
**time**, tempus, ōris, n.  
**timid**, timidus, a, um, *adj.*  
**to**, ad, prep. with acc.  
**too**, too much, nimis, *adv.*  
**tongue**, lingua, ae, f.

UPRIGHT.

**torture**, cruciātus, ūs, m.  
**towards**, versus, adversus, prep. with acc.  
**tower**, turris, is, f.  
**town**, oppidum, i, n. [4.  
**train up**, erudio, ūvi, ctum, 3.  
**trained**, eruditus, a, um, part. and *adj.*  
**tree**, arbor, ōris, f.  
**triumph**, triumpho, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**trouble**, to, mōvērō, mōvi, mōtum, 2.  
**trouble** (sub.), aerumna, ae, f.  
**troublesome**, molestus, a, um, *adj.*  
**Troy**, Trāja, ae, f.  
**true**, vērus, a, um, *adj.*  
**trust**, fido, p. 85.  
**try**, expōior, ritus, 4.  
**turn back**, rēvērto, ti, sum, and tor, sus, 3, dep.  
**tyrant**, tyrannus, i, m.

U

**unable**, to be, nēquō, ūvi and ūi, ctum, 4.  
**unbecoming**, it is, dēdēcēt, p. 86.  
**unbounded**, infinitus, a, um, *adj.*  
**unbreakfasted**, impransus, a, um, *adj.*  
**uncertain**, incertus, a, um, *adj.*  
**under**, sub, subter, prep. with acc. and *abl.*  
**undergo**, subēo, ūvi and ūi, ctum, 4.  
**understand**, intelligo, lexi, lectum, 3.  
**undertake**, suscipio, cepi, ceptum, 3.  
**undone**, infectus, a, um, *adj.*  
**unfriendly**, inimicus, a, um, *adj.*  
**unjust**, injustus, a, um, *adj.*  
**unjustly**, injuste, *adv.*  
**unlearned**, indoctus, a, um, *adj.*  
**unless**, nisi, *conj.*  
**unlike**, dissimilis, e, *adj.*  
**unsafer**, impēritus, a, um, *adj.* [77.  
**unwilling**, to be, nōlo, p.  
**upper**, supērior, ūs, *adj.*  
**upright**, prōbus, a, um, *adj.*

## USE.

**use, to**, ūtor, ūsus, 3, *dep.*,  
with *abl.*  
**useful**, ūtilis, *e. adj.*  
**utmost**, summus, *a. um.*  
*sup. adj.*

## V

**valley**, vallis, *is. f.*  
**valour**, virtus, ūtis, *f.*  
**various**, vārius, *a. um. adj.*  
**vehemently**, vēhementēr,  
*adv.*

**verse**, versus, ūs, *m.*  
**vex**, vexo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**vexes**, it, piget, p. 86. [*f.*  
**victim**, hostia, victima, *ae.*  
**victory**, victōria, *ae. f.*  
**vigorous**, strēnūus, *a. um.*  
*adj.*

**vigorously**, strēnūē, *adv.*  
**virtue**, virtus, ūtis, *f.*  
**visit**, to, viso, si, sum, 3.  
**voice**, vox, vōcis, *f.*  
**vulture**, vultūr, ūris, *m.*

## W

**wage (war)**, to, gēro, gessi,  
gestum, 3.

**wake** (*intrans.*), vīgīlo, āvi,  
ātum, 1.

**walk, take a walk**, ambūlo, āvi, ātum, 1.

**wall**, mūrus, *i. m.*  
**wanting, to be**, dēsum,  
p. 31.

**war**, bellum, *i. n.*  
**warlike**, bellicōsus, *a. um.*  
*adj.*

**warm**, cālidus, *a. um. adj.*  
**waste, to lay**, vasto, āvi,  
ātum, 1.

**watch**, to, vīgīlo, āvi, ātum,  
**water**, aqua, *ae. f.* [1.

**—, to fetch**, āquor, ātus,  
**way, in that**, itā, *adv.*

**—, to be in the**, obscum,  
p. 31. [*f.*

**weakness**, infirmitas, ātis, *ae. f.*

## WINTER.

**wealthy**, ōpulentus, *a. um.*  
**weapon**, telum, *i. n.* [*adj.*  
**wearies**, it, taedet, p. 86.  
**weep**, flēo, ēvi, ētum, 2.  
**well**, bēnē, *adv.* [2.

**—, to be**, vālēo, ūi, itum,  
**wellwishing**, bēnēvōlus,  
*a. um. adj.*

**west**, occidens, entis, *m.*  
**whale**, bālæna, *ae. f.*

**what**, quis, quæ, quid and  
quod, *interrog. and indef. pron.*

**what sort**, of, quālis, *e. rel. adj.*

**when**, quando, *interr. adv.*;  
quum, *adv. and conj.*

**whether**, utrum; *conj.*  
**which of two**, ūter, tra,  
trum, *adj. pron.*

**while**, dum, *adv.*  
**whilst drinking**, inter  
bibendum.

**white**, albus, *a. um. adj.*  
**whither**, quō, *rel. adv.*

**who**, qui, quæ, quod, *rel. pron.*;  
quis, quæ, quid or quod,  
*inter. pron.*

**whole**, tōtus, *a. um. adj.*  
**why**, cūr, quārē, *adv.*

**wicked**, imprōbus, *a. um.*;  
nēquam, *indec. adj.*

**wickedness**, scēlus, ēris, *n.*  
**wide**, lātus, *a. um. adj.*

**widely**, latē, *adv.*  
**wife**, uxor, ēris, *f.* ; mūllēr,  
ēris, *f.*

**wilful**, perversus, *a. um.*  
*adj.*

**willing, to be**, vōlo, p. 77.  
**—, to be more**, mālō,  
p. 77.

**win**, ādipiscor, adeptus, 3 ;  
pāro, āvi, ātum, 1.

**win upon**, blandior, itus, 4.  
**wind**, ventus, *i. m.*

**wine**, vinum, *i. n.*  
**wing**, ala, *ae. f.*

**winter**, hiems, ēmis, *f.*  
**—, of**, hibernus, *a. um.*  
*adj.*

## ZEALOUS.

**winter, to**, hiēmo, āvi,  
ātum, 1.

**winter quarters**, hiberna,  
ōrum, *n. pl.*

**wisdom**, sapiētia, *ae. f.*  
**wise**, sapiens, entis, *adj.*

**wish** (*sub.*), vōluntās,  
ātis, *f.*

**wish, to**, opto, āvi, ātum,  
1 ; vōlo, p. 77.

**within**, intrā, *prep.* with  
*acc.*

**woman**, fēmina, *ae. f.* ;  
mūllēr, ēris, *f.*

**wonder at**, miror, ātus, 1.  
**wonderful**, mirus, mirā-  
bilis, *e. adj.*

**wood**, silva, *ae. f.*  
**work**, ōpus, ēris, *n.*

**world**, mundus, *i. m.* [1.  
**worship**, to, vēnērō, ātus,  
**wound**, vulnus, ēris, *n.*

**—, to**, vulnēro, āvi,  
ātum, 1.

**wretched**, mīser, ērā, ē-  
rum, *adj.*

**write, to**, scribo, psi,  
ptum, 3.

**writer**, scriptor, ēris, *m.*

## Y

**year**, annus, *i. m.*  
**yesterday**, hērī, *adv.*

**yield**, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.  
**your**, tūus, *a. um.* ; vester,  
tra, trum, *poss. pron.*

**youth**, iuventūs, tātis, *f.*  
**—** (*a young man or*  
*woman*), iuvenis, *is. c.*

## Z

**zeal**, stūdium, *ii. n.*  
**zealous**, stūdiōsus, *a. um.*  
*adj.*

**zealous, to be**, stūdēo, ūi,  
2, with *dat.*

ALBEMARLE STREET, LONDON.  
July, 1874.

## MR. MURRAY'S LIST OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

### THE STUDENT'S MANUALS:

#### *Historical Class-books for advanced Scholars.*

"The 'STUDENT'S MANUALS,' edited for the most part by DR. WM. SMITH, possess several distinctive features which render them singularly valuable as educational works. While there is an utter absence of flippancy in them, there is thought in every page, which cannot fail to excite thought in those who study them, and we are glad of an opportunity of directing the attention of teachers to these admirable school-books."—*The Museum.*

**THE STUDENT'S HUME; A HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE REVOLUTION IN 1688.** By DAVID HUME. Incorporating the Corrections and Researches of recent Historians, and continued to 1688. With 70 Woodcuts. (780 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.  
\* \* \* Questions on the "Student's Hume." 12mo. 2s.

**THE STUDENT'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND. FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII. TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE II.** By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. (680 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF EUROPE DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.** By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. (650 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF FRANCE. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE SECOND EMPIRE, 1852.** With Notes and Illustrations on the Institutions of the Country. By REV. W. H. JERVIS, M.A. With Woodcuts. (724 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE EAST.** From the Earliest Times to the Conquests of Alexander the Great, including Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Media, Persia, Asia Minor, and Phœnicia. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 70 Woodcuts. (608 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF GREECE. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ROMAN CONQUEST.** With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 100 Woodcuts. (640 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.  
\* \* \* Questions on the "Student's Greece." 12mo. 2s.

## MURRAY'S STUDENT'S MANUALS

### THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF ROME.

FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By DEAN LIDDELL. With 80 Woodcuts. (636 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### THE STUDENT'S GIBBON; AN EPITOME OF

THE HISTORY OF THE DECLINE AND FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE. By EDWARD GIBBON. Incorporating the researches of recent historians. With 200 Woodcuts. (700 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### THE STUDENT'S OLD TESTAMENT HIS-

TORY. FROM THE CREATION OF THE WORLD TO THE RETURN OF THE JEWS FROM CAPTIVITY. With an Introduction to the Books of the Old Testament. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 40 Maps and Woodcuts. (630 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### THE STUDENT'S NEW TESTAMENT HIS-

TORY. With an Introduction, containing the connection of the Old and New Testaments. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 30 Maps and Woodcuts. (680 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ANCIENT

GEOGRAPHY. By REV. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. With 150 Woodcuts. (710 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MODERN

GEOGRAPHY, MATHEMATICAL, PHYSICAL, AND DESCRIPTIVE. By REV. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. With 120 Woodcuts. (684 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF THE ENG-

LISH LANGUAGE. By GEORGE P. MARSH. (538 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH

LITERATURE. By T. B. SHAW, M.A. (510 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### THE STUDENT'S SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH

LITERATURE. Selected from the BEST WRITERS. By THOS. B. SHAW, M.A. (560 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### THE STUDENT'S ELEMENTS OF GEOLOGY.

By SIR CHARLES LYELL, F.R.S. With 600 Woodcuts. (692 pp.) Post 8vo. 9s.

### THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MORAL

PHILOSOPHY. With Quotations and References. By WILLIAM FLEMING, D.D. (440 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### THE STUDENT'S BLACKSTONE. AN ABRIDG-

MENT OF THE ENTIRE COMMENTARIES, ADAPTED TO THE PRESENT STATE OF THE LAW. By R. MALCOLM KERR, LL.D. (670 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

## DR. WM. SMITH'S SMALLER SERIES.

*These Works have been drawn up under the superintendence of Dr. Wm. Smith, chiefly for the lower forms, at the request of several teachers, who require for their pupils more elementary books than the STUDENT'S HISTORICAL MANUALS.*

### A SMALLER SCRIPTURE HISTORY OF THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENTS. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 40 Woodcuts. (370 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

"Students well know the value of Dr. Wm. Smith's larger Scripture History. This abridgment omits nothing of vital importance, and is presented in such a handy form that it cannot fail to become a valuable aid to the less learned Bible Student. Dr. Wm. Smith has produced the *best modern book* on the *best book* of all days and all time."—*People's Magazine*.

### A SMALLER HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

From the EARLIEST TIMES to the year 1868. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 68 Woodcuts. (408 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SMALLER HISTORY OF ENGLISH

LITERATURE; giving a sketch of the lives of our chief writers. By JAMES ROWLEY. (276 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### SHORT SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH

LITERATURE. Selected from the chief authors and arranged chronologically. By JAMES ROWLEY. With Notes. (368 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SMALLER ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE

EAST, from the EARLIEST TIMES to the CONQUEST OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 70 Woodcuts. (310 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SMALLER HISTORY OF GREECE, from

the EARLIEST TIMES to the ROMAN CONQUEST. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 74 Woodcuts. (268 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SMALLER HISTORY OF ROME, from the

EARLIEST TIMES to the ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 70 Woodcuts. (324 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SMALLER CLASSICAL MYTHOLOGY.

With Translations from the Ancient Poets, and Questions on the Work. By H. R. LOCKWOOD. With 90 Woodcuts. (300 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SMALLER MANUAL OF ANCIENT

GEOGRAPHY. By Rev. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. With 36 Woodcuts. (240 pp.) 16mo. 6d.

### A SMALLER MANUAL OF MODERN

GEOGRAPHY. 16mo. *[In the press.]*

## DR. WM. SMITH'S DICTIONARIES.

"Dr. Smith's admirable Dictionaries."—*Dr. Hawtrey*.  
 "Dr. Smith's Dictionaries are extremely valuable."—*Dr. Moberly*.  
 "Dr. Smith's Dictionaries have conferred a great and lasting service."—*Denn Liddell*.  
 "Dr. Smith's works are extensively used in all public schools."—*Dr. Vaughan*.

- A DICTIONARY OF THE BIBLE; ITS ANTIQUITIES, BIOGRAPHY, GEOGRAPHY, & NATURAL HISTORY. With Illustrations. 3 vols. Medium 8vo. 5*l.* 5*s.*
- A CONCISE BIBLE DICTIONARY. Condensed from the above. With Maps and 300 Illustrations. (1030 pp.) Medium 8vo. 2*1s.*
- A SMALLER BIBLE DICTIONARY. Abridged from the above. With Maps and 40 Illustrations. (620 pp.) Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*
- A DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. Including the Laws, Institutions, Domestic Usages, Painting, Sculpture, Music, the Drama, &c. With 500 Illustrations. (1300 pp.) Medium 8vo. 28*s.*
- A DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY. Containing a History of the Ancient World, civil, literary, and ecclesiastical. With 564 Illustrations. (3720 pp.) 3 Vols. Medium 8vo. 84*s.*
- A DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN GEOGRAPHY. Including the political history of both countries and cities, as well as their geography. With 530 Illustrations. (2512 pp.) 2 Vols. Medium 8vo. 56*s.*
- A CLASSICAL DICTIONARY OF MYTHOLOGY, BIOGRAPHY, AND GEOGRAPHY. With 750 Woodcuts. (840 pp.) 8vo. 18*s.*
- A SMALLER CLASSICAL DICTIONARY. Abridged from the above. With 200 Woodcuts. (472 pp.) Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*
- A SMALLER DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. Abridged from the larger Work. With 200 Woodcuts. (474 pp.) Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*
- A LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. Based on the works of Forcellini and Freund. With Tables of the Roman Calendar, Measures, Weights, and Monies. (1220 pp.) Medium 8vo. 2*1s.*
- A SMALLER LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY: with Dictionary of Proper Names and Tables of Roman Calendar, etc. Abridged from the above. (672 pp.) Square 12mo. 7*s.* 6*d.*
- A COPIOUS AND CRITICAL ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY. (976 pp.) Medium 8vo. 2*1s.*
- A SMALLER ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY. Abridged from the above. (720 pp.) Square 12mo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

## •DR. WM. SMITH'S LATIN COURSE

*Undertaken with the view of facilitating the study of the Latin language, and combining the advantages of the older and more modern Methods of Instruction. Each volume contains subjects usually distributed over two or more separate works.*

---

**PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART I. A FIRST LATIN COURSE.** A Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise Book with Vocabularies. (200 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

\* \* This work contains the Accidence arranged as in the "Public School Latin Primer."

**PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART II. LATIN READING BOOK.** An Introduction to Ancient Mythology, Geography, Roman Antiquities, and History. With Notes and a Dictionary. (268 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART III. LATIN POETRY.**  
1. Easy Hexameters and Pentameters. 2. Eclogæ Ovidianæ.  
3. Prosody and Metre. 4. First Latin Verse Book. (160 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART IV. LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.** Rules of Syntax, with Examples, Explanations of Synonyms, and Exercises on the Syntax. (194 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART V. SHORT TALES AND ANECDOTES FROM ANCIENT HISTORY, FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE.** (140 pp.) 12mo. 3s.

**A LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY,** arranged according to Subjects and Etymology; with a Latin-English Dictionary to Phædrus, Cornelius Nepos, and Cæsar's "Gallic War." (190 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

This work is designed to assist beginners in acquiring a copious vocabulary of the Latin language, and in learning the derivation and formation of Latin words.

**THE STUDENT'S LATIN GRAMMAR.** (406 pp.) Post 8vo. 6s.

**A SMALLER LATIN GRAMMAR.** Abridged from the above. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**TACITUS. GERMANIA, AGRICOLA, AND FIRST BOOK OF THE ANNALS.** With English Notes. (378 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

---

**A CHILD'S FIRST LATIN BOOK,** Including a Systematic Treatment of the NEW PRONUNCIATION; and PRAXIS OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, and PRONOUNS. By T. D. HALL, M.A. (68 pp.) 16mo. 1s. 6d.

## DR. WM. SMITH'S GREEK COURSE.

*This Series has been prepared on the same plan as the 'Principia Latina.' The great object is to make the study of the Greek language as easy and simple as possible, by giving the grammatical forms only as they are wanted, and by enabling the pupil to translate from Greek into English and from English into Greek as soon as he has learned the Greek characters and the First Declension.*

INITIA GRÆCA, PART I. A FIRST GREEK COURSE, containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercise Book, and Vocabularies. (194 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

INITIA GRÆCA, PART II. A READING BOOK; containing short Tales, Anecdotes, Fables, Mythology, and Grecian History. With a Lexicon. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

INITIA GRÆCA, PART III. GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION; containing the Rules of Syntax, with copious Examples and Exercises. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S GREEK GRAMMAR. (386 pp.) Post 8vo. 6s.

A SMALLER GREEK GRAMMAR. Abridged from the above work. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

THE GREEK ACCIDENCE. Extracted from the above work. (125 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

PLATO. THE APOLOGY OF SOCRATES, THE CRITO, AND PART OF THE PHÆDO; with Notes in English from STALLBAUM, and SCHLEIERMACHER's Introductions. (242 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

## DR. WM. SMITH'S FRENCH COURSE.

FRENCH PRINCIPIA, PART I. A FIRST FRENCH COURSE, containing GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, EXERCISE BOOK, and VOCABULARIES. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

"This work has been compiled at the repeated request of numerous teachers who, finding the 'Principia Latina' *the easiest book for beginners in Latin*, are anxious to obtain an equally elementary French work on the same plan. The main object is to enable a beginner to acquire an accurate knowledge of the chief grammatical forms, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of words useful in conversation as well as in reading."

FRENCH PRINCIPIA, PART II. A READING-BOOK, with NOTES, and a DICTIONARY. 12mo.

[*Nearly ready.*]

FRENCH PRINCIPIA, PART III. An Introduction to French Prose Composition, containing a systematic Course of Exercises on the Syntax, with the Principal Rules of Syntax. 12mo.

[*In preparation.*]

## Dr.WM. SMITH'S ENGLISH COURSE.

**A PRIMARY HISTORY OF BRITAIN. FOR**  
ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. (368 pp.)  
12mo. 2s. 6d.

"The modest title of this history scarcely indicates its real value. While the style is very plain and simple, it does not attempt to write down to the comprehension of children. It is an admirable work, one of the best short school histories of England we have seen, and is throughout remarkably free from bias."—*Educational Times*.

**A SCHOOL MANUAL OF ENGLISH**  
GRAMMAR; with Copious Exercises. By WM. SMITH,  
D.C.L., and T. D. HALL, M.A. (256 pp.) Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"This Grammar, while it treats the language with sufficient fullness, is yet a good introduction to a larger treatment of the subject. For the information of teachers, the use of this book will render unnecessary that of many others, since it contains the grammar, analysis, and exercises. It is really a serviceable school-book."—*Nonconformist*.

**A PRIMARY ENGLISH GRAMMAR FOR**  
ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. With Exercises and Questions. By  
T. D. HALL, M.A. (76 pp.) 16mo. 1s.

"This little book is very carefully done. We doubt whether any grammar of equal size could give an introduction to the English language more clear, concise, and full than this does. The eye is constantly called to the help of the memory, each rule and illustration being distinguished by a change of type."—*Watchman*.

---

## STANDARD SCHOOL BOOKS.

---

**HUTTON'S PRINCIPIA GRÆCA. AN INTRO-**  
DUCTION TO THE STUDY OF GREEK. A Grammar, Delectus,  
and Exercise Book, with Vocabularies. (154 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**MATTHIÆ'S GREEK GRAMMAR. Abridged**  
by BLOMFIELD. Revised by E. S. CROOKE, B.A. (412 pp.)  
Post 8vo. 4s.

**LEATHES' HEBREW GRAMMAR. With the**  
Hebrew text of Genesis i.—vi., and Psalms i.—vi. Grammatical  
Analysis and Vocabulary. (252 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**KING EDWARD VI'S LATIN GRAMMAR;**  
or, An Introduction to the Latin Tongue. (324 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**KING EDWARD VI'S FIRST LATIN BOOK.**  
THE LATIN ACCIDENCE; Syntax and Prosody, with an ENGLISH  
TRANSLATION. (220 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

**OXENHAM'S ENGLISH NOTES FOR LATIN**  
ELEGIACS, designed for early proficient in the art of Latin  
Versification. (156 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

## MRS. MARKHAM'S HISTORIES.

"Mrs. Markham's Histories are constructed on a plan which is novel and we think well chosen, and we are glad to find that they are deservedly popular, for they cannot be too strongly recommended."—*Journal of Education*.

**A HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE FIRST INVASION BY THE ROMANS.** Continued down to 1867. With Conversations at the end of each Chapter. With 100 Woodcuts. (528 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**A HISTORY OF FRANCE, FROM THE CONQUEST BY THE GAULS.** Continued down to 1861. With Conversations at the end of each Chapter. With 70 Woodcuts. (550 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**A HISTORY OF GERMANY, FROM THE INVASION OF THE KINGDOM BY THE ROMANS UNDER MARIUS.** Continued down to 1867. With 50 Woodcuts. (460 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**LITTLE ARTHUR'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND.**

By LADY CALLCOTT. Continued down to the year 1872. With 36 Woodcuts. (286 pp.) 16mo. 2s. 6d.

"I never met with a history so well adapted to the capacities of children or their entertainment, so philosophical, and written with such simplicity."—*Mrs. Marcett*.

**ÆSOP'S FABLES. A New Version.** By REV. THOMAS JAMES. With 100 Woodcuts. (168 pp.) Post 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"Of ÆSOP'S FABLES there ought to be in every school many copies, full of pictures."—*Fraser's Magazine*.

**THE BIBLE IN THE HOLY LAND: BEING EXTRACTS FOR SCHOOLS FROM DEAN STANLEY'S SINAI AND PALESTINE.** With Woodcuts. (210 pp.) 16mo. 2s. 6d.

## NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

**NEWTH'S FIRST BOOK OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY;** an Introduction to the Study of Statics, Dynamics, Hydrostatics, Optics and Acoustics, with numerous Examples. (142 pp.) Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**NEWTH'S ELEMENTS OF MECHANICS,** including Hydrostatics, with numerous Examples. (374 pp.) Small 8vo. 8s. 6d.

**NEWTH'S MATHEMATICAL EXAMPLES.** A Graduated Series of Elementary Examples in Arithmetic, Algebra, Logarithms, Trigonometry, and Mechanics. (378 pp.) Small 8vo. 8s. 6d.

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET;  
EDINBURGH: OLIVER & BOYD;—DUBLIN: SMITH & SON.

